

*the day-by-day method*



# **Japanese with Ease**

## **Volume Two**

by **Catherine Garnier**  
and **Mori Toshiko**

adapted for English-speakers  
by **Lucas Klein** and **Kiril Savino**

*Illustrated by J.-L. Goussé*



B.P. 25  
94431 Chennevières-sur-Marne Cedex  
FRANCE

AIL 2007

ISBN 978-2-7005-0354-8

*Other Assimil titles available in handy book format with cassettes and CDs*

**“With Ease” series**

Arabic with Ease  
*Armenian with Ease\**  
Chinese with Ease vol. 1  
Chinese with Ease vol. 2  
Writing Chinese with Ease  
Dutch with Ease  
German with Ease  
Hungarian with Ease  
Italian with Ease  
Japanese with Ease vol. 1  
Japanese with Ease vol. 2  
Writing Japanese with Ease  
New French with Ease  
Spanish with Ease

**For travelling**

Dutch from the Word Go!  
French from the Word Go!  
German from the Word Go!

**Advanced language skills**

Using French  
Using Spanish

**“Business”**

Business French

**For children**

Sing your way to French!

*\* Available soon*

# CONTENTS

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Introduction.....                          | IV  |
| Lessons 50 – 99                            |     |
| 50: The Museum .....                       | 1   |
| 51: Taxi .....                             | 7   |
| 52: Sports .....                           | 15  |
| 53: The Visit.....                         | 21  |
| 54: At the Seashore .....                  | 29  |
| 55: Going to Japan .....                   | 35  |
| 56: Revision and Notes .....               | 42  |
| 57: The Road of History .....              | 51  |
| 58: Elections .....                        | 61  |
| 59: Breakdowns .....                       | 67  |
| 60: The Shinkansen (The Bullet Train)..... | 77  |
| 61: Reply.....                             | 85  |
| 62: The Public Baths.....                  | 93  |
| 63: Revision and Notes .....               | 100 |
| 64: The Magazine .....                     | 107 |
| 65: Choosing a Camera.....                 | 115 |
| 66: Building a House .....                 | 125 |
| 67: Mount Fuji .....                       | 135 |
| 68: The Imperial Family .....              | 143 |
| 69: The Arranged Marriage (Part One).....  | 155 |
| 70: Revision and Notes .....               | 162 |
| 71: The Arranged Marriage (Part Two) ..... | 169 |
| 72: Skiing.....                            | 179 |
| 73: A Quiet Night.....                     | 189 |
| 74: Misunderstanding .....                 | 199 |
| 75: Camping.....                           | 209 |
| 76: If I had money.....                    | 219 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| 77: Revision and Notes.....                             | 227 |
| 78: The New Year's Visit.....                           | 235 |
| 79: Shinjuku Station .....                              | 245 |
| 80: A Student's Room.....                               | 255 |
| 81: A Cold.....   | 265 |
| 82: Pets.....   | 273 |
| 83: Literature.....                                     | 283 |
| 84: Revision and Notes.....                             | 293 |
| 85: The Kinkakuji.....                                  | 299 |
| 86: Visiting the Capital (Part One) .....               | 311 |
| 87: Visiting the Capital (Part Two).....                | 321 |
| 88: Money.....  | 331 |
| 89: Cherry-tree Viewing .....                           | 343 |
| 90: School .....  | 355 |
| 91: Revision and Notes.....                             | 365 |
| 92: Japanese Television.....                            | 373 |
| 93: The Excursion.....                                  | 385 |
| 94: An Ordinary Conversation.....                       | 395 |
| 95: The Eras.....                                       | 405 |
| 96: Buying a Piano.....                                 | 415 |
| 97: Jobs .....  | 425 |
| 98: Revision and Notes.....                             | 435 |
| 99: To Finish .....                                     | 445 |
| <br>  |     |
| Appendix I: Transcription of answers to Exercise 2..... | 447 |
| Appendix II: Index .....                                | 461 |
| Appendix III: Recapitulation of Revision Lessons.....   | 513 |
| Appendix IV: Bibliography.....                          | 516 |

# INTRODUCTION

Welcome to volume 2 of *Japanese with Ease*.

And welcome to the second phase of your study of Japanese, which we call “**the Active Phase**”. As they say in Japanese in times like this, *がんばって* **ganbatte**, which means: *hang on, keep going, you're on the right path!*<sup>1</sup>

Studying the 49 lessons of volume 1, you began to assimilate the words, phrases, and grammar of the language. In volume 2, you get to continue for the next 50 lessons what you have been doing from the start: reading the dialogue aloud several times, repeating after the recordings; understanding, with help from the translation and notes, and doing the exercises as before. In this respect, nothing has changed: you just continue your assimilation based on the “passive” phase.

But at the same time, you will begin the **active phase**, which has two main components:

- After studying each lesson in volume 2, you will go back to a lesson from volume 1. After lesson 50, revisit lesson 1; after Lesson 51, go back to Lesson 2, etc. And in case you lose track, we've included the lesson to go back to, beneath the title: **Second Wave**. When you go back to the lessons from volume 1, listen again and read along to the text, and then, this time without looking at the text, reconstruct the Japanese dialogue based on the accompanying English word-for-word translation. This way you will solidify what you know of the basics of the language and vocabulary, and you will develop an active knowledge of Japanese: you will no longer be limited to listening and understanding, but will now be speaking, forming your own sentences for yourself. And don't neglect this important revision step: your progress depends on it.

<sup>1</sup> Please note that the character *ん*, which we transliterate as **n**, will take on a pronunciation closer to *m* when followed by a *p*, *b*, or *m*. Here, this word is pronounced, more literally, *gam'bat'té*.

- We will also learn, in this second volume, how to write the characters of the syllabaries, hiragana and katakana. Our progress here will be methodical and calm: 5 characters per chapter, beginning with Lesson 57. To be sure, you can already recognize almost all of them by now, but this time you'll find out all you need to know to write the characters and not forget them, including stroke order, which will prove endlessly helpful in memorizing the characters. We have also added a dictation to our exercises. After all, how else can you be sure to coordinate what you can understand with what you can write?

So by the end of volume 2 you will have a great number of words under your belt (take another look at the index to volume 1... it's already piling up!), will have already encountered nearly every sentence structure to be found in Japanese, and will know how to write all the hiragana and katakana. Not a bad bit of knowledge! All that's left are the kanji, which will necessarily require some supplementary work. But we'll talk more about that at the end of this volume.

But be sure to keep our principles at the front of your mind: don't rush! Take each step in its own time, and all will fall into place.

So now let's move on to Lesson 50, and to the Second Wave revision of Lesson 1. がんばってね **ganbatte ne!**





50 <sup>だいごじゅつか</sup> 第五十課 dai go juk ka

<sup>びじゅつかん</sup> 美術館

bi jutsu kan

- 1 - <sup>あたら</sup>新しい <sup>げん だい</sup>現代 <sup>びじゅつかん</sup>美術館 <sup>に</sup>に  
to ko ro de atara shi i gen dai bi jutsu kan ni  
<sup>い</sup>行った <sup>こと</sup>ことが <sup>あり</sup>あります <sup>か。</sup>か。①  
i t ta ko to ga a ri ma su ka.
- 2 - <sup>い</sup>いいえ、<sup>まだ</sup>まだ <sup>です。</sup>です。  
i i e, ma da de su.
- 3 - <sup>あした</sup>明日 <sup>また</sup>また <sup>は</sup>は <sup>あ</sup>あさ <sup>つ</sup>つて <sup>いっしょ</sup>一緒に <sup>に</sup>に  
ashita ma ta wa a sa t te is sho ni  
<sup>み</sup>見 <sup>に</sup>に <sup>い</sup>いき <sup>ま</sup>ましよう。  
mi ni i ki ma shō.
- 4 - <sup>はい</sup>はい、<sup>では</sup>では <sup>さ</sup>さ <sup>っ</sup>っ <sup>そ</sup>そ <sup>く</sup>く <sup>あした</sup>明日 <sup>の</sup>の  
ha i, dewa sa s so ku ashita no  
<sup>ご</sup>午後 <sup>ご</sup>ご <sup>い</sup>いき <sup>ま</sup>ましよう。  
go go i ki ma shō.

<sup>びじゅつかん</sup> 美術館 <sup>なか</sup> の 中 で  
bi jutsu kan no naka de

- 5 - <sup>なに</sup>何 <sup>を</sup>を <sup>み</sup>見て <sup>い</sup>いま <sup>す</sup>す <sup>か。</sup>か。  
nani o mi te i ma su ka.
- 6 - <sup>この</sup>この <sup>みどりいろ</sup>緑色 <sup>の</sup>の <sup>え</sup>絵 <sup>を</sup>を <sup>み</sup>見て <sup>い</sup>いま <sup>す。</sup>す。  
ko no midori iro no e o mi te i ma su.

Notes

- ① ...こと が あります koto ga arimasu, cf. Lesson 42, paragraph 3.



## The Museum

(art museum)

- 1 – By the way, have you visited the new Modern Art Museum?  
(by the way / be new / modern-art museum / [place] / went / fact of / [subject] / exist / [question])
- 2 – No, not yet.
- 3 – Let's go together tomorrow or the day after.  
(tomorrow / or else / day after tomorrow / together / [adverbial] / look / [goal] / let's go)
- 4 – All right, let's go right away, tomorrow afternoon.  
(yes / so / at once / tomorrow / [relation] / afternoon / let's go)

### In the museum

(art museum / [relation] / inside / [place])

- 5 – What are you looking at?  
(what / [object] / be looking / [question])
- 6 – I'm looking at this green painting.  
(this / green color / [relation] / painting / [object] / be looking)

来月 まで に は できあがらない と 思います。



- 7- 何 <sup>なん</sup> ですか、これ <sup>ひじょう</sup> は? 非常 <sup>に</sup> に  
 nan de su ka, ko re wa? hi jō ni  
 不思議 <sup>ふしぎ</sup> な <sup>え</sup> 絵 <sup>です</sup> ですね。②  
 fu shi gi na e de su ne.
- 8- 顔 <sup>かお</sup> だ <sup>おも</sup> と <sup>おも</sup> 思います。③  
 kao da to omo i ma su.
- 9- あ、<sup>わたくし</sup> そうですね。私 <sup>わたし</sup> に <sup>は</sup> は、  
 a, sō de su ka. watashi ni wa,  
 猫 <sup>ねこ</sup> に <sup>み</sup> 見えます。  
 neko ni mi e ma su.
- 10 これ <sup>あし</sup> が <sup>あたま</sup> 足 <sup>で</sup> で、これ <sup>あたま</sup> が <sup>あたま</sup> 頭 <sup>で</sup> でしょう。④⑤⑥  
 ko re ga ashi de, ko re ga atama  
 de shō.
- 11- いいえ、<sup>い</sup> そうですね。これは <sup>い</sup> は  
 i i e, sō de wa a ri ma se n. ko re wa  
 人 <sup>ひと</sup> の <sup>め</sup> 目で、これは <sup>はな</sup> 鼻 <sup>です</sup> ですよ。⑤  
 hito no me de, ko re wa hana de su. yo.
- 12 猫 <sup>ねこ</sup> の <sup>あたま</sup> 頭 <sup>で</sup> ではない <sup>おも</sup> と <sup>おも</sup> 思います。⑦  
 neko no atama de wa na i to omo i ma su.

## Notes

- ② 不思議 <sup>ふしぎ</sup> な <sup>え</sup> 絵 **fushigi na e**, cf. Lesson 33, note 1.
- ③ <sup>だ</sup> **da**, low degree of **です desu**, *it is*. Obligatory before **と** <sup>おも</sup> **おもいます to omoimasu**, when coming after a noun.
- ④ **でしょう deshō** comes from **です desu**, *it is*. It is used when you don't want to be too definite, or else when you are not sure of what you're saying, or even when you want to be polite and deferential with the person to whom you're speaking. It's the same as "this must be" or "this seems to be" in English.
- ⑤ Here we meet for the first time *the* base construction for a sentence with many clauses. Imagine two sentences. The first: **これが <sup>あし</sup> 足 <sup>で</sup> でしょう kore ga ashi deshō**, *this must be a paw* (this / [subject] / foot / this must be). The second sentence: ▶

- 7 – What is it? It sure is a strange painting!  
*(what / it is / [question] / this / [announce]) (extremely / [adverbial] / strange / it is / painting / it is / [agreement])*
- 8 – I think it's a face.  
*(face / it is / [quotation] / think)*
- 9 – Really? I see a cat.  
*(really) (me / [attribution] / [emphasis] / cat / [goal] / be visible)*
- 10 This is a paw, and this must be the head.  
*(this / [subject] / foot / it is // this / [subject] / head / this must be)*
- 11 – No, that's not it! This is someone's eye, and this is the nose.  
*(no / so / it's not) (this / [announce] / person / [relation] / eye / it is // this / [announce] / nose / it is / [engagement])*
- 12 I don't think that's the head of a cat.  
*(cat / [relation] / head / it's not / [quotation] / think)*

- ▶ あたまこれが頭 でしょう **kore ga atama deshō**, *this must be the head* (this / [subject] / head / this must be). And now we want to combine the sentences instead of having two. In English, we keep the sentences as they are and add an “and” between them. That means that we have to repeat the verb with all its various tenses and conjugations: “This must be..., and this must be...”. But the Japanese, always economic, devised a very simple method. As you know, the verb is always at the end of the phrase. So if there are many clauses in one sentence, each clause has its own verb at the end. But what's more, we've seen (cf. Lesson 28, paragraph 4) that some forms of verbs only work at the end of the sentence. That's the case with でしょう **deshō**. When we create a single sentence out of two clauses with a repeated verb, the first でしょう **deshō** cannot be used in the first clause. Instead, we give the first clause's verb a special form that means: “look out, this is the end of the clause, but not of the sentence”. This form is constant, and does not change no matter the tense. For です **desu** (だ **da**, でしょう **deshō**...), the form is で **de**.
- ⑥ あし足 **ashi** means *foot*, but, as you see, it can also mean *leg*, and even *paws* for animals. In Japanese, there is no distinction between body parts on animals and humans.
- ⑦ ではない **de wa nai**, low degree version of ではありません **de wa arimasen** (middle degree), the negative form of です **desu**.

13 - 絵 の 題 を 見ましょう。何 と  
 e no dai o mi ma shō. nan to  
 書いて あります か。  
 ka i te a ri ma su ka.

14 「夢 の 森」  
 yume no mori

\*\*\*

れん しゅう  
 練習

## Exercise 1

- ① 後ろ の 大きい 建物 は 現代 美術館  
 ushiro no ookii tatemono wa gendai bijutsukan  
 で は ない よ。駅 だ よ。  
 de wa nai yo. eki da yo.
- ② 来月 まで に は できあがらない  
 raigetsu made ni wa dekiagaranai  
 と 思います。  
 to omoimasu.
- ③ この 新しい ビル は 銀行 で、その  
 kono atarashii biru wa ginkō de, sono  
 隣 の 白い 建物 は 病院 です。  
 tonari no shiroi tatemono wa byōin desu.
- ④ この 新しい ビル は 銀行 で、  
 kono atarashii biru wa ginkō de,  
 その 隣 の 白い 建物 は 病院  
 sono tonari no shiroi tatemono wa byōin  
 だ と 聞きました。  
 da to kikimashita.

- 13 – Let's look at the title of the painting. What's it say?  
 (painting / [relation] / title / [object] / let's look) (what /  
 [quotation] / be written / [question])
- 14 *The Forest of Dreams.*  
 (dream / [relation] / forest)

\*\*\*

- ⑤ げつようび に いもうと と さいふ を か  
 getsuyōbi ni imōto to saifu o kai  
 に 行きました。  
 ni ikimashita.

### Answers to Exercise 1

- ① The big building in the back isn't the modern art museum. It's the train station! ② I don't think that it will be done by next month. ③ This new building is a bank and the white building next door is a hospital. ④ I heard that this new building was a bank and that the white building next door was a hospital. ⑤ Monday I went with my little sister to buy a wallet.

51 Exercise 2

...に<sup>ことば</sup>言葉<sup>い</sup>を入れなさい

- ① The day before yesterday I met a strange person.  
 ..... hito .....
- ② This machine is extremely cheap.  
 .....
- ③ I don't think that he will lend me his new car.  
 ..... wa kashite kure. ....
- ④ My husband is a singer and my son is a composer.  
 ..... , .....

51 <sup>だいごじゅういつか</sup>第五十一課 dai go jū ik ka

タクシー  
 ta ku shī

- 1 - レストラン・ナポレオン まで  
 re su to ra n na po re o n ma de  
<sup>いそ</sup>急いで おねがい します。  
 iso i de o ne ga i shi ma su.
- 2 - えっ、何<sup>なん</sup> ですか。  
 e', nan de su ka.
- 3 - ナポレオン と いう <sup>なまえ</sup>名前の  
 na po re o n to i u namae no  
<sup>りょうり</sup>フランス料理 の レストラン です。  
 fu ra n su ryō ri no re su to ra n de su.

- ⑤ It seems that he writes letters the whole day.

ichinichijū . . . . .

## Answers to Exercise 2

- ① ototoi fushigi na – ni aimashita. ② kono kikai wa hijō ni yasui desu. ③ atarashii kuruma – nai to omoimasu. ④ shujin wa kashu de, musuko wa sakkyokuka desu. ⑤ – tegami o kaite iru sō desu.

## Second Wave: 第一課 (Lesson 1)

---

# Lesson Fifty-One 51

## Taxi (taxi)

- 1 – To the Restaurant Napoléon, and hurry, please.  
(restaurant-Napoléon / up to / hurry / please)
- 2 – What's that?
- 3 – It's a French restaurant called "Le Napoléon".  
(Napoléon / [quotation] / say / name / [relation] / France-cuisine / [relation] / restaurant / it is)

4- どの <sup>へん</sup> 辺 に ある の です か。  
do no hen ni a ru no de su ka.

5- サントリー <sup>びじゅつかん</sup> 美術館 の すぐ そば  
sa n to rī bi jutsu kan no su gu so ba  
にある と <sup>き</sup> 聞きました。  
ni a ru to ki ki ma shi ta.

6- あ、<sup>みなとく</sup> 港区 に ある <sup>びじゅつかん</sup> 美術館 です ね。①  
a, minato ku ni a ru bi jutsu kan de su ne.

<sup>びじゅつかん</sup> 美術館 の <sup>まえ</sup> 前  
bi jutsu kan no mae

7 ここ が サントリー <sup>びじゅつかん</sup> 美術館 です。  
ko ko ga sa n to rī bi jutsu kan de su.

これ から どう <sup>い</sup> 行きます か。  
ko re ka ra dō i ki ma su ka.

8- これ が <sup>じゅうしょ</sup> 住所 です。  
ko re ga jū sho de su.

9- <sup>じゅうしょ</sup> 住所 だけ で は わからない な。  
jū sho da ke de wa wa ka ra na i na.

## Notes

- ① <sup>みなとく</sup> 港区 **minato-ku**. The city of Tōkyō is divided into districts or quarters, called <sup>く</sup> **ku**. They usually are named after the ancient function of the neighborhood, such as <sup>みなとく</sup> 港区 **minato-ku** here, which means *Port District*. Don't forget that Tōkyō is a city built by the sea!



- 4 – Which area is that in?  
(*which / area / [place] / exist / it's that / [question]*)
- 5 – I've heard that it was just next to the Suntory Museum.  
(*Suntory-Museum / [relation] / immediately / side / [place] / exist / [quotation] / have heard*)
- 6 – Ah, is that the museum in the Minato-ku?  
(*ah / Minato-ku / [place] / exist / museum / it is / [agreement]*)

### In front of the museum

(*museum / [relation] / before*)

- 7 Here's the Suntory Museum. Where to from here?  
(*here / [subject] / Suntory-Museum / it is*) (*this / from / how / go / [question]*)
- 8 – Here's the address.  
(*this / [subject] / address / it is*)
- 9 – I can't do much with just the address.  
(*address / only / [means] / [emphasis] / not be understandable / [reflection]*)



- 10 - あそこ の にぎやかな 所 に 公衆  
 a soko no ni gi ya ka na tokoro ni kō shū  
 電話 がある と 思います から、電話  
 den wa ga a ru to omo i ma su ka ra, den wa  
 で くわしい 道 を 聞いて みます。②  
 de ku washi i michi o ki i te mi masu.
- 11 - こまかい お金 を 持っています か。  
 ko maka i o kane o mo t te i ma su ka.
- 12 - 十円玉 を たくさん 持っています  
 jū en dama o ta ku sa n mo t te i ru  
 から、大丈夫 です。  
 ka ra, dai jō bu de su.

電話 を かけて から  
 den wa o ka ke te ka ra

- 13 友達 が 迎え に 来ます から、  
 tomo dachi ga muka e ni ki ma su ka ra,  
 ここで 降りる ことに します。  
 ko ko de o ri ru ko to ni shi ma su.

## Notes

- ② 聞いて みます **kiite mimasu**. We often come across two verbs following each other, the first of which always ends in て **te**. What we have come across most frequently is a て **te**-form verb with います **imasu** (or いる **iru**), いました **imashita** (or いた **ita**); this combination, for the majority of verbs, indicates that the action is viewed while taking place (cf. Lesson 11, note 2). But there are other combinations as well, which allow different points of view of the action in question. For example, we've ▶

- 10 – I think there's a pay phone over in that busy area over there, I'll call for specific directions.  
*(over there / [relation] / busy / it is / place / [place] / public-telephone / [subject] / exist / [quotation] / think / because // telephone / [means] / be detailed / way / [object] / go ask)*
- 11 – Do you have change?  
*(be small / [familiarity]-money / [object] / have / [question])*
- 12 – I have plenty of 10 yen coins, it'll be fine.  
*(ten-yen-coin / [object] / many / have / because // no problem / it is)*

### After having phoned

*(telephone / [object] / make function / after that)*

- 13 My friend is coming to meet me, so I'll get out here.  
*(friend / [subject] / come meet / [goal] / come / because // here / [place] / get out / fact of / [goal] / do)*



- ▶ seen Lesson 31, item 14: 使<sup>つか</sup>って しま<sup>しま</sup>いました **tsukatte shimaimashita**. 使<sup>つか</sup>う **tsukau** means *to use*. To add しま<sup>しま</sup>う **shimau** to it, means that something has been used up, used to completion. Here the second verb is 見<sup>み</sup>ます **mimasu** (or 見<sup>み</sup>る **miru**). We know this well. Alone, it means *to look*, but here, as the second verb, it implies readiness to perform the action indicated by the first verb, “see what happens”. 聞<sup>き</sup>きます **kikimasu**, *I ask*. 聞<sup>き</sup>いて 見<sup>み</sup>ます **kiite mimasu**, *I will try asking*.

## Exercise 1

- ① 電話<sup>でんわ</sup> を かけたい と 思<sup>おも</sup>いました  
denwa o kaketai to omoimashita  
が、こまかい お金<sup>かね</sup> が なかった  
ga, komakai o kane ga nakatta  
ので、できません でした。  
node, dekimasen deshita.
- ② どこ で 降<sup>お</sup>りる の です か。  
doko de oriru no desu ka.
- ③ タクシー に 乗<sup>の</sup>って 行<sup>い</sup>きました  
takushī ni notte ikimashita  
けれども、遅<sup>おく</sup>れて しまいました。  
keredomo, okurete shimaimashita.

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

...に言葉<sup>ことば</sup>を 入<sup>い</sup>れなさい

- ① I'm going to talk to him.  
hanashi . . . . .
- ② I'm sorry but I've completely forgotten the address.  
sumimasen ga, . . . . .
- ③ The blue car next to the old truck is a taxi and the red car behind  
is also a taxi.  
. . . . . aoi . . . . .  
. . . . . , sono . . . . . ni aru . . . . .  
. . . . .

④ ちょっと 待<sup>ま</sup>って 下<sup>くだ</sup>さい。すぐ  
chotto matte kudasai. sugu

調<sup>しら</sup>べて みます。  
shirabete mimasu.

⑤ この 有<sup>ゆう</sup>名<sup>めい</sup> な 村<sup>むら</sup> は にぎやか  
kono yūmei na mura wa nigiyaka

で、とても きれい です。  
de, totemo kirei desu.

### Answers to Exercise 1

- ① I wanted to call, but I didn't have any change, so I couldn't.  
② Where are you getting out? ③ I went by taxi, but I was still late.  
④ Wait a minute. I will see if I can find it. ⑤ This famous village is very lively and really magnificent.

\*\*\*

④ When I lived in Shizuoka, I worked in an Australian company called Plaza.

....., .....

⑤ With only ten thousand yen, it's unthinkable.

....., muri desu

### Answers to Exercise 2

① -te mimasu. ② -jūsho o wasurete shimaimashita. ③ furui torakku no soba ni aru - jidōsha wa takushī de, - ushiro - akai jidōsha mo takushī desu. ④ shizuoka ni sunde ita toki, puraza to iu ōsutoraria no kaisha de hataraitte imashita. ⑤ ichi man en dake de wa, -.

### Second Wave: 第二課 (Lesson 2)

52 第五十二課 dai go jū ni ka

スポーツ  
su pō tsu

- 1 - 電車 から 見える あの 巨大 な  
den sha ka ra mi e ru a no kyo dai na  
網 は 何 です か。  
ami wa nan de su ka.
- 2 - ああ、あれ？ あれ は ゴルフ  
a a, a re? a re wa go ru fu  
練習場 です。  
ren shū jō de su.
- 3 - あれ が、ゴルフ 練習場 です か。  
a re ga, go ru fu ren shū jō de su ka.
- 4 - 日本 の サラリーマン は ゴルフ  
nihon no sa ra rī ma n wa go ru fu  
を よく します が、なかなか 町  
o yo ku shi ma su ga, na ka na ka machi  
の 中 では、練習 する 場所  
no naka de wa, ren shū su ru ba sho  
が ありません。①  
ga a ri ma se n.

Notes

- ① サラリーマン **sararī.man**, from *salary-man* in English, has become one of the key words of Japanese society, where it designates employees and businessmen in large enterprises and usually evokes a certain style of life where work is king and spare time is occupied with other male colleagues.

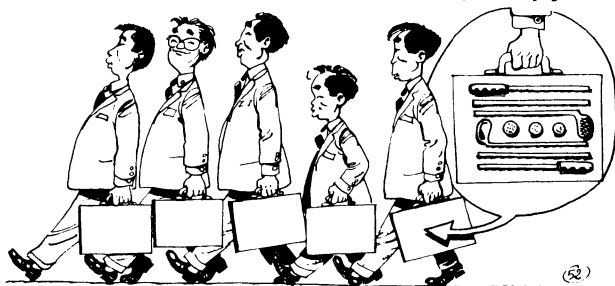
## Lesson Fifty-Two 52

### Sports (sport)

- 1 – What is that enormous web you can see from the train?  
(train / from / to be visible / that / enormous / it is / net / [announce] / what / it is / [question])
- 2 – Oh, that? That's a driving range.  
(ah / that) (that / [announce] / golf-practice course / it is)
- 3 – That's a driving range?  
(that / [subject] / golf-practice course / it is / [question])
- 4 – Japanese businessmen play a lot of golf, but in the cities it's hard to find a place to play.  
(Japan / [relation] / salary-man / [announce] / golf / [object] / often / do / but // not easily / city / [relation] / inside / [place] / [emphasis] / exercise-do / place / [subject] / not exist)



にほん 日本 の サラリーマン は ゴルフ を よく します。



5 それで、<sup>ひろ</sup>広い <sup>いなか</sup>田舎 <sup>の</sup>の <sup>れんしゅうじょう</sup>練習場 <sup>に</sup>に  
 so re de, hiro i inaka no renshū jō ni  
 行く <sup>かわ</sup>代りに、<sup>たてもの</sup>建物 <sup>の</sup>の <sup>おくじょう</sup>屋上 <sup>に</sup>に  
 i ku kawa ri ni, tate mono no okujō ni  
<sup>あみ</sup>網 <sup>を</sup>を <sup>は</sup>張って、<sup>れんしゅうじょう</sup>ゴルフ <sup>練習場</sup>練習場 <sup>を</sup>を  
 ami o ha t te, go ru fu renshū jō o  
 つく  
 作りました。②  
 tsuku ri ma shi ta.

6— <sup>にほん</sup>日本 <sup>で</sup>では、<sup>ほか</sup>他 <sup>に</sup>に <sup>どんな</sup>どんな  
 ni hon de wa, hoka ni do n na

スポーツ <sup>を</sup>を <sup>し</sup>します <sup>か</sup>か。  
 su pō tsu o shi ma su ka.

7— テニス <sup>も</sup>も <sup>さいきん</sup>最近 <sup>さか</sup>盛んに <sup>な</sup>なりました。  
 te ni su mo sai kin saka n ni na ri ma shi ta.

8— <sup>ささき</sup>佐々木 <sup>さん</sup>さんは、<sup>なん</sup>何 <sup>の</sup>の <sup>スポーツ</sup>スポーツ  
 sa sa ki sa n wa, nan no su pō tsu  
 が <sup>す</sup>好き <sup>で</sup>です <sup>か</sup>か。③④  
 ga su ki de su ka.

9— <sup>やきゅう</sup>野球 <sup>が</sup>が <sup>いちばん</sup>一番 <sup>す</sup>好き <sup>で</sup>です。⑤  
 ya kyū ga ichiban su ki de su.

## Notes

- ② 張って **hatte**. In Lesson 50, note 5, we saw a form of **で de**, equivalent of **です desu**, that indicated the end of a clause instead of the sentence. This example is exactly the same. This form of the verb, with its final **て te**, means simply: here is the end of a clause, but notice that the sentence continues. This form is invariable, and is independent of tense, conjugation, or degree. Like the earlier form, it's simple, but... the difficulty is in knowing the exact relationship between the two clauses. There are a number of possibilities. For this, pay attention ▶



- 5 So instead of going to play on the vast courses in the countryside, they put up nets on roofs of buildings and created driving ranges.  
*(so / to be vast / countryside / [relation] / practice course / [goal] / to go / instead of /// building / [relation] / roof / [goal] / net / [object] / to set up // golf-practice course / [object] / have made)*
- 6 – What other sports do you play in Japan?  
*(Japan / [place] / [emphasis] / other / [adverbial] / what kind / sport / [object] / do / [question])*
- 7 – These days tennis has become very in fashion.  
*(tennis / also / recently / flourishing / [goal] / became)*
- 8 – And you, what sports do you like?  
*(Sasaki-Mr. / [announce] / what / [relation] / sport / [subject] / to be liked / it is / [question])*
- 9 – What I like the most is baseball.  
*(baseball / [subject] / the most / to be liked / it is)*



- ▶ to the translation each time you run into this form at the end of a clause. At times it indicates just a succession of actions (cf. exercise 1, item 3), but other times, as in here, the first clause expresses the means of achieving the second, and the best equivalent is the translation given in item 5 of exercise 1.
- ③ When you address the person to whom you're speaking, where in English we would say "you," in Japanese we use either the name or the title of the person in question. Here, we use his name.
- ④ 佐々木 **sasaki**, cf. Lesson 10, note 3.
- ⑤ Don't be surprised to find baseball –and lots of it– in Japan! The sport was introduced before 1890, and is certainly Japan's most popular sport, with stars, avid fans, specialized magazines, and re-broadcasts on television. It's probably more popular in Japan than it is in the United States!

10 - どこ で 野球 を します か。  
do ko de yakyū o shi ma su ka.

11 - 僕 が 好き な の は、テレビ  
boku ga su ki na no wa, te re bi  
で 見る こと です。⑥  
de mi ru ko to de su.

## Notes

⑥ 好き な の は **suki na no wa**, cf. Lesson 38, note 1.

\*\*\*

## れんしゅう 練習

### Exercise 1

① あれ は 野球場 だ と、ホテル の  
are wa yakyūjō da to, hoteru no

人 が 答えました。  
hito ga kotaemashita.

② 一番 近い 地下鉄 の 駅 は どこ  
ichiban chikai chikatetsu no eki wa doko

に あります か。  
ni arimasu ka.

③ 三分 ぐらい 歩いて、左 に まがって、  
sanpun gurai aruite, hidari ni magatte,

また 五分 ぐらい 歩いて 右 に  
mata gofun gurai aruite migi ni

まがって、すぐ です。  
magatte, sugu desu.

- 10 – Where do you play?  
*(where / [place] / baseball / [object] / do / [question])*
- 11 – What I like, is to watch it on television!  
*(me / [subject] / to be liked / it is / [replacement] / [announce] / television / [means] / watch / fact of / it is)*

\*\*\*

- ④ このごろ <sup>いちばん</sup> 一番 <sup>さか</sup> 盛んなのは、  
 konogoro ichiban sakan na no wa,  
 テニス です。  
 tennisu desu.
- ⑤ 建物 <sup>たてもの</sup> の 屋上 <sup>おくじょう</sup> に 網 <sup>あみ</sup> を 張 <sup>は</sup> っ て、  
 tatemono no okujō ni ami o hatte,  
 ゴルフ <sup>れんしゅうじょう</sup> 練習場 を <sup>つく</sup> 作ります。  
 gorufu renshūjō o tsukurimasu.

### Answers to Exercise 1

- ① The person from the hotel answered that it was a baseball field.  
 ② Where is the closest subway station? ③ Walk about three minutes, turn left, walk another five minutes, turn right, and you're there.  
 ④ What's most in fashion at the moment is tennis. ⑤ They make driving ranges by putting up nets on the rooftops of buildings.

53 Exercise 2

…に <sup>ことば</sup>言葉 <sup>い</sup>を入れなさい

- ① I love sports. What I love most is golf.  
 .....  
 .....
- ② He graduated in March and got married in April.  
 sangatsu ni sotsugyō shi . . shigatsu ni kekkon  
 .....
- ③ What is the largest city in Japan?  
 ..... de ..... .. doko desu  
 ka
- ④ If there's baseball, I'm going right away.  
 ..... , sugu iku yo
- ⑤ He made himself sick from too much worrying.  
 amari shinpai shi . . byōki ni narimashita

53 <sup>だいごじゅうさんか</sup>第五十三課 dai go jū san ka

<sup>みまい</sup>  
見舞  
mi mai

1 - <sup>はしもと</sup>橋本 <sup>さん</sup>さんの <sup>の</sup>を <sup>みまい</sup>見舞 <sup>に</sup>に  
 hashi moto sa n no o mi mai ni  
<sup>い</sup>行かなければ <sup>なりません。</sup>なりません。  
 i ka na ke re ba na ri ma se n.

2 - <sup>どこ</sup>どこ <sup>に</sup>に <sup>にゅういん</sup>入院 <sup>して</sup>して <sup>います</sup>います <sup>か。</sup>か。  
 do ko ni nyū in shi te i ma su ka.

## Answers to Exercise 2

- ① supōtsu ga suki desu. ichiban suki na no wa gorofu desu. ② – te – shimashita. ③ nihon – ichiban ookii machi wa –. ④ yakyū nara, –. ⑤ – te –.

*As you take leaps and bounds in your study of Japanese, it's obvious that we will come across more and more complex sentences and grammatical patterns, such as: "... when... as... knowing that... but... insofar as... etc., etc.". Nonetheless, we will try to indicate the hierarchy of clauses and sentences. Up till now, we have noted the limit between two clauses in the word-for-word translation with a double slash //. With even more complex grammar, we have maintained this system, but with a touch of an addition. For example, item 5 of this lesson has a triple slash /// and then a double slash //. This means that the main clause of the sentence is where the most slashes are (three, in this example). A triple slash should remain the limit for a while, but from time to time, prepare yourself for seeing a quadruple slash! But it won't happen often, so rest easy.*

### Second Wave: 第三課 (Lesson 3)

## Lesson Fifty-Three 53

### The Visit

(visit)

- 1 – We must go see Mr. Hashimoto.  
(Hashimoto-Mr. / [relation] / [politeness]-visit a sick person / [goal] / must go)
- 2 – Which hospital is he in?  
(where / [place] / enter hospital-do / [question])

3 - 日赤病院 <sup>にっせきびょういん</sup> に <sup>にゅういん</sup> 入院 して いる  
 nis seki byō in ni nyū in shi te i ru

そう です。①②

sō de su.

4 - 何曜日 <sup>なんようび</sup> に しまし <sup>しょう</sup> ょう か。  
 nan yō bi ni shi ma shō ka.

5 - 今日 <sup>きょう</sup> は 水曜日 <sup>すいようび</sup> です から、  
 kyō wa sui yō bi de su ka ra,

明後日 <sup>みょうごにち</sup> の 金曜日 <sup>きんようび</sup> に しまし <sup>しょう</sup> ょう。  
 myō go nichi no kin yō bi ni shi ma shō.

<sup>きんようび</sup>

金曜日

kin yō bi

6 お見舞 <sup>みまい</sup> に 何 <sup>なに</sup> を 持 <sup>も</sup> っ て  
 o mi mai ni nani o mo t te

いきま <sup>しょう</sup> しょう か。  
 i ki ma shō ka.

7- 果物 <sup>くだもの</sup> か お花 <sup>はな</sup> が いい です ね。  
 kuda mono ka o hana ga i i de su ne.

8 - 食べ物 <sup>たべもの</sup> は 控 <sup>ひか</sup> えた 方 <sup>ほう</sup> が いい  
 ta be mono wa hika e ta hō ga i i

で <sup>しょう</sup> しょう。腸 <sup>ちよう</sup> の 手術 <sup>しゅじゅつ</sup> だ <sup>った</sup> った  
 de shō. chō no shu jutsu da t ta

そう です から。  
 sō de su ka ra.

## Notes

- ① <sup>にっせき</sup> 日赤 **nisseki**. English is full of abbreviations for all sorts of organizations, public and private, where the first letters of each word combine to make a new word. In Japan they do the same thing, using the first character of a compound. Here, the full

- 3 – I heard he was in the Red Cross Hospital.  
*(Japan Red Cross-hospital / [place] / enter hospital-do / it seems that)*
- 4 – What day shall we go?  
*(what day of the week / [goal] / let's do / [question])*
- 5 – Today is Wednesday, so let's go the day after tomorrow, Friday.  
*(today / [announce] / Wednesday / it is / because // day after tomorrow / [apposition] / Friday / [goal] / let's do)*

## Friday

- 6 What should we bring for this visit?  
*([politeness]-visit / [goal] / what / [object] / hold-go / [question])*
- 7 – It would be good to bring some fruit, or flowers.  
*(fruit / or else / [familiarity]-flowers / [subject] / be good / it is / [agreement])*
- 8 – It would be best to avoid perishables. He seems to have had an intestine operation.  
*(food / [announce] / abstain / side / [subject] / be good / it must be) (intestine / [relation] / surgical operation / it was / it seems that / because)*



name is <sup>にほんせきじゅうじ</sup>日本赤十字 **nihon sekijūji** (Japan / red / cross), which means, of course *Japanese Red Cross*. cf. also Lesson 27, item 3 and note 1.

- ② ...そう です ...**sō desu**. At the end of a sentence, this **そうです sō desu** indicates that what has just been said includes information that comes from somebody else. The speaker, therefore, does not take full responsibility for this information. cf. later on, item 8, and Lesson 41, item 12.

- 9 この <sup>あか</sup>赤い チューリップ と <sup>きいろ</sup>黄色い  
 ko no aka i chū ri p pu to ki iro i  
 チューリップ を <sup>ぜんぶ</sup>全部 で <sup>じゅっぽん</sup>十本  
 chū ri p pu o zen bu de juppon  
 持<sup>も</sup>って いきましょう。③  
 mo t te i ki ma shō.

<sup>びょういん</sup>病院 で  
 byō in de

- 10 - いか<sup>が</sup>が です か。  
 i ka ga de su ka.
- 11 - お <sup>だいぶ</sup>かけ <sup>さま</sup>さま で、大分 よく  
 o ka ge sa ma de, dai bu yo ku  
 なりました。  
 na ri ma shi ta.
- 12 あと <sup>いっしゅうかん</sup>一週間 で <sup>うち</sup>家 に <sup>かえ</sup>帰れる  
 a to is shū kan de uchi ni kaere ru  
 そう です。  
 sō de su.
- 13 - それでは お <sup>だいじ</sup>大事 に。④  
 so re de wa o dai ji ni.
- 14 - どうも わざわざ ありがとう  
 dō mo wa zawa za a ri ga tō  
 ございました。⑤  
 go za i ma shi ta.

## Notes

- ③ ...本...<sup>ほん</sup>hon, cf. Lesson 22, note 3. 本 hon (bon, pon), after a number, is used to indicate what kind of object is being counted, in this case, objects long and cylindrical: tulips. It's also the measure word used when counting pencils and bottles. ▶



- 9 Take these red tulips and these yellow tulips, ten in total.

(*this / be red / tulip / and / be yellow / tulip / [object] / in total / ten-long object / hold-go*)

### At the hospital

(*hospital / [place]*)

- 10 – How are you?

(*how / it is / [question]*)

- 11 – Very well, thank you, I'm much better.

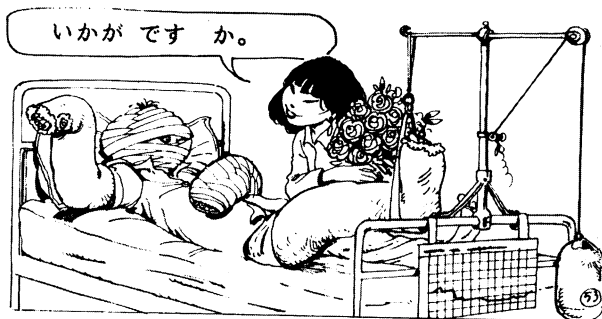
(*thank you / rather / well / became*)

- 12 They told me that I could go home in a week.

(*after / one-week / [means] / my home / [place] / can return / it seems that*)

- 13 – Take good care of yourself.

- 14 – Thank you very much for your visit.



- ▶ ④ お <sup>たいじ</sup>大事 に **o daiji ni**. This formula is used when leaving the company of a sick person. It's a way of saying *goodbye* with extreme sympathy, and means essentially *take care*.
- ⑤ There are many ways to say thank you in Japanese, each of which varying depending on the situation. Here we use the way to express thanks to someone who has paid you a visit. Generally speaking, this formula is used to thank someone who specifically moved for your benefit.

## Exercise 1

- ① ビール を <sup>ななほん</sup>七本 <sup>くだ</sup>下さい。  
bīru o nanahon kudasai.
- ② あと <sup>よんしゅうかん</sup>四週間 で <sup>りょこう</sup>旅行 に <sup>で</sup>出ます。  
ato yonshūkan de ryokō ni demasu.
- ③ <sup>きんようび</sup>金曜日 までに <sup>はら</sup>払わなければなりません。  
kinyōbi made ni harawanakereba narimasen.
- ④ <sup>あした</sup>明日 は <sup>やす</sup>休み な のに <sup>はや</sup>早く  
ashita wa yasumi na noni hayaku  
<sup>お</sup>起きなければなりません。  
okinakereba narimasen.

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

…に <sup>ことば</sup>言葉 を <sup>い</sup>入れなさい

- ① It seems he'll be back Tuesday or Thursday.  
..... ni .....
- ② It seems that she loves yellow flowers.  
.....
- ③ I have to go on Tuesday and on Thursday.  
.....  
.....
- ④ (I would like) the green bag and the blue box beside it, please.  
..... to .....
- ... hako .....

- ⑤ <sup>じゅうねん</sup>十年 <sup>まえ</sup>前に <sup>りょうしん</sup>両親 から もらった  
 jū nen mae ni ryōshin kara moratta  
 ベッド と のみ の 市 で 買った  
 beddo to nomi no ichi de katta  
<sup>えど</sup>江戸 <sup>じだい</sup>時代の <sup>ちやわん</sup>茶碗 を <sup>う</sup>売りました。  
 edo jidai no chawan o urimashita.

### Answers to Exercise 1

① Seven bottles of beer, please. ② In four weeks I'm going on a trip. ③ You must pay before Friday. ④ Even though tomorrow is a holiday, I still have to get up early. ⑤ I sold the bed that my parents gave me ten years ago and the Edo-era teacups that I had bought at the flea market.

\*\*\*

- ⑤ Let's visit him the day after tomorrow.

..... ni . . . . .

### Answers to Exercise 2

- ① kayōbi ka mokuyōbi – kaeru sō desu. ② kiroi hana ga daisuki da sō desu. ③ kayōbi mo mokuyōbi mo ikanakereba narimasen. ④ kono midori iro no baggu – sono tonari no aoi – o kudasai. ⑤ myōgonichi – o mimai ni ikimashō.

### Second Wave: 第四課 (Lesson 4)

54 第五十四課 dai go jū yon ka

海岸 だ  
kai gan de

- 1 - まず 海 の 家 を 借りましょう。①  
ma zu umi no ie o ka ri ma shō.
- 2 荷物 を ここ に 置きましょう。  
ni motsu o ko ko ni o ki ma shō.
- 3 - さあ、水着 に 着替えて、すぐ  
sa a, mizu gi ni ki ga e te, su gu  
泳ぎ に 行きましょう。②  
oyo gi ni i ki ma shō.
- 4 哲雄 は 水中眼鏡 を 持ちましたか。③  
tetsu o wa sui chū me gane o mochi ma shi ta ka.
- 5 真規 は 帽子 を 忘れないで… ③  
ma ki wa bō shi o wasu re na i de...
- 6 太陽 が 強い から、帽子 を  
tai yō ga tsuyo i ka ra, bō shi o  
被らない と、今晚 頭 が 痛く  
kabura na i to, konban atama ga ita ku  
なります よ。④  
na ri ma su yo.
- 7 - わあ、水 は 冷たい な。⑤  
wa a, mizu wa tsume ta i na.

Notes

- ① 海 の 家 **umi no ie**. On several of Japan's most popular beaches you can find a number of little constructions that appear to ▶

## At the Seashore

*(seashore / [place])*

- 1 – First we're going to rent a beach house.  
*(first / sea / [relation] / house / [object] / let's rent)*
- 2 – Let's put our things here.  
*(baggage / [object] / here / [place] / let's put down)*
- 3 – Good, let's change and go swimming right away.  
*(good / swimsuit / [goal] / change clothes // right away / swim / [goal] / let's go)*
- 4 – Tetsuo, did you bring the goggles?  
*(Tetsuo / [announce] / goggles / [object] / took / [question])*
- 5 – Maki, don't forget your hat!  
*(Maki / [announce] / hat / [object] / don't forget)*
- 6 – The sun is strong, so if you don't wear your hat you'll have a headache tonight.  
*(sun / [subject] / be strong / because /// hat / [object] / not put / if // tonight / head / [subject] / be in pain / become / [engagement])*
- 7 – Ooh! The water is freezing!  
*(ooh / water / [announce] / be very cold / [reflection])*



▶ be beach houses, but which have no walls. The ground-floor is usually a store, but upstairs sunbathers can stay for a couple of hours. It gives them a place to eat, to rest, and to take in the sun.

② cf. Lesson 52, note 2.

③ Tetsuo is a male first name, Maki a female first name.

④ cf. Lesson 35, paragraph 3.

⑤ 水 <sup>みず</sup> **mizu** means *water* in general, but usually is used to mean specifically *cold water*. There is another word –お湯 <sup>お</sup> **oyu**– which means *hot water*.

- 8 あそこ <sup>いわ</sup>の 岩 <sup>きょうそう</sup>まで 競争 <sup>しやう</sup>しよう。⑥  
a so ko no iwa ma de kyō sō shi yō.
- 9 – いい よ。でも <sup>ぼく</sup>僕 <sup>か</sup>が 勝 <sup>つ</sup>つ よ。  
i i yo. de mo boku ga ka tsu yo.
- 10 – <sup>まき</sup>真規 <sup>あぶ</sup>は 危 <sup>ない</sup>ない から、こ <sup>こ</sup>こ で  
ma ki wa abuna i ka ra, ko ko de  
お <sup>と</sup>となしく <sup>し</sup>して <sup>い</sup>い <sup>な</sup>なさい。⑦  
o to na shiku shi te i na sa i.
- 11 – あ <sup>ら</sup>ら、<sup>あ</sup>アイス・<sup>く</sup>クリーム <sup>を</sup>を <sup>う</sup>売 <sup>っ</sup>つて <sup>い</sup>い <sup>る</sup>る。  
a ra, a i su ku rī mu o u t te i ru.
- 12 – <sup>じゃ</sup>じゃ、<sup>この</sup>この <sup>すな</sup>砂 <sup>の</sup>の <sup>うえ</sup>上 <sup>に</sup>に <sup>すわ</sup>座 <sup>っ</sup>つて  
ja, ko no suna no ue ni suwa t te  
<sup>た</sup>食 <sup>べ</sup>べ <sup>ま</sup>ま <sup>し</sup>し <sup>よ</sup>う。⑧  
ta be ma shō.

よる  
夜

yoru

- 13 <sup>ひ</sup>日 <sup>や</sup>焼 <sup>け</sup>け <sup>で</sup>で <sup>せ</sup>背 <sup>なか</sup>中 <sup>が</sup>が <sup>いた</sup>痛 <sup>く</sup>く <sup>て</sup>て  
hi ya ke de se naka ga ita ku te  
た <sup>ま</sup>ま <sup>ら</sup>ら <sup>な</sup>な <sup>い</sup>い。⑨  
ta ma ra na i.
- 14 <sup>あ</sup>明日 <sup>し</sup>どう <sup>や</sup>や <sup>っ</sup>つて <sup>よ</sup>洋服 <sup>を</sup>を <sup>き</sup>着 <sup>よ</sup>う <sup>か</sup>か <sup>な</sup>な。  
ashita dō ya t te yō fuku o ki yō ka na.

## Notes

- ⑥ しよう **shiyō**, low degree form of the middle degree word  
しましやう **shimashō**, *let's do*.
- ⑦ おとなしく **shite i nasai**.  
おとなしい **otonashii**, *be nice, be good*. おとなしく **する**  
**otonashiku suru**, *to act nice, to be good*. おとなしく **して**  
**いる** **otonashiku shite iru**, *being good*. い **なさい** **i nasai**,  
imperative of **いる** **iru**. おとなしく **して** **いなさい** **oto-**  
**nashiku shite i nasai**, [*you*] *behave, be good, stay calm*. ▶

- 8 Let's race to that rock over there.  
(over there / [relation] / rock / up to / competition-do)
- 9 – All right. But I'll win!  
(be good / [engagement]) (but / me / [subject] / win / [engagement])
- 10 – Maki, it's too dangerous for you, stay here and settle down.  
(Maki / [announce] / be dangerous / because // here / [place] / be good / do)
- 11 – Hey, they're selling ice cream!  
(hey / ice cream / [object] / sell)
- 12 – good, let's eat it here on the sand.  
(good / this / sand / [relation] / on / [place] / sit // let's eat)
- 13 My back really hurts from this sunburn.  
(sunburn / [means] / back / [subject] / be in pain // cannot bear)
- 14 How am I going to get dressed tomorrow?  
(tomorrow / how / clothes / [object] / wear / [question] / [reflection])



- ▶ ⑧ cf. again Lesson 52, note 2. Here, the clause この<sup>すな</sup>の<sup>うえ</sup>に座<sup>すわ</sup>って **kono suna no ue ni suwatte**, expresses the setting for the main action: 食べましょう **tabemashō**.
- ⑨ Verbs, as we've just seen twice, can take on an invariable て **te**. But this て **te** can also be added on to the end of an adjectival く **ku** form, which we've already come across when forming the negative version of an adjective. For example, the negative version of 痛い **itai**, to be in pain: 痛<sup>いた</sup>くない **itakunai**, not to be in pain. The て **te** form –痛<sup>いた</sup>くて **itakute** – has the same value as for verbs, meaning that the sentence continues. Here: 痛<sup>いた</sup>くて たまらない **itakute tamaranai**, literally, means *it's painful, and I can't bear it*.

Exercise 1

① <sup>うみ</sup>海 <sup>いえ</sup>の家 <sup>か</sup>を借りて、<sup>そこ</sup>そこに  
umi no ie o karite, soko ni  
<sup>に</sup>荷物 <sup>もつ</sup>を <sup>お</sup>置きます。  
nimotsu o okimasu.

② <sup>うみ</sup>海 <sup>いえ</sup>の家 <sup>か</sup>を借りて、<sup>そこ</sup>そこに  
umi no ie o karite, soko ni  
<sup>に</sup>荷物 <sup>もつ</sup>を <sup>お</sup>置きました。  
nimotsu o okimashita.

③ <sup>うみ</sup>海 <sup>いえ</sup>の家 <sup>か</sup>を借りて、<sup>そこ</sup>そこに  
umi no ie o karite, soko ni  
<sup>に</sup>荷物 <sup>もつ</sup>を <sup>お</sup>置きましょう。  
nimotsu o okimashō.

\*\*\*

Exercise 2

…に <sup>こと</sup>言葉 <sup>ばい</sup>を <sup>い</sup>入れなさい

① The sun is getting strong, put on your hat.  
..... naru kara, ..... kabutte  
kudasai

② I bought these paintings by borrowing money from my colleagues.  
..... o kane . kari . . . . .  
.....

③ Even though the water is freezing, I'm going swimming.  
....., .....

④ When I entered the café, the teacher was already there.  
kissaten .. . . . . , .. . . . . kite imashita



- ④ <sup>あぶ</sup>危ない と <sup>い</sup>いう と、<sup>こども</sup>子供 は <sup>き</sup>気  
abunai to iu to, kodomo wa ki

を <sup>つ</sup>付けました。  
o tsukemashita.

- ⑤ <sup>かいがん</sup>海岸 に <sup>つ</sup>着くと、<sup>みずぎ</sup>すぐ <sup>き</sup>水着 に  
kaigan ni tsuku to, sugu mizugi ni

<sup>き</sup>着替えました。  
kigaemashita.

### Answers to Exercise 1

- ① We're renting a beach house and we're putting our things there.  
② We rented a beach house and put our things there. ③ Let's rent a beach house and put our things there. ④ When someone told him, "it's dangerous", the child was careful. ⑤ We changed as soon as we got to the beach.

\*\*\*

- ⑤ I have a back ache, so I can't walk.  
....., arukenai no desu

### Answers to Exercise 2

- ① taiyō ga tsuyoku - bōshi o -. ② dōryō kara - o - te, kono e o kaimashita. ③ mizu wa tsumetai noni, oyogi ni ikimasu. ④ - ni hairu to, sensei ga mō -. ⑤ senaka ga itakute, -.

### Second Wave: 第五課 (Lesson 5)

55 <sup>だいごじゅうごか</sup> 第五十五課 dai go jū go ka

にほん へ いく  
 nihon e i ku

- 1 - <sup>ことし</sup>今年 <sup>の</sup> の <sup>なつ</sup>夏 <sup>の</sup> の バカンス <sup>は</sup> は  
 kotoshi no natsu no ba ka n su wa  
 どこ <sup>へ</sup> へ <sup>い</sup>行きます <sup>か。</sup> か。  
 do ko e i ki ma su ka.
- 2 - <sup>にほん</sup>日本 <sup>へ</sup> へ <sup>い</sup>行きます。  
 ni hon e i ki ma su.
- 3 - <sup>きょねん</sup>去年 <sup>も</sup> も <sup>い</sup>行った <sup>の</sup> の <sup>で</sup> ではない <sup>です</sup> ですか。  
 kyo nen mo i t ta no de wa na i de su ka.  
<sup>まいとし</sup>毎年 <sup>い</sup>行けて、<sup>うらやましい</sup>うらやましい <sup>です</sup> ですね。①  
 mai toshi i ke te, u ra ya mashi i de su ne.
- 4 - ええ、<sup>そう</sup> ですが、<sup>ことし</sup>今年 <sup>は</sup> は  
 e e, sō de su ga, kotoshi wa  
<sup>きしや</sup>汽車 <sup>で</sup> で <sup>い</sup>行く <sup>ん</sup> んです。②  
 ki sha de i ku n de su.

Notes

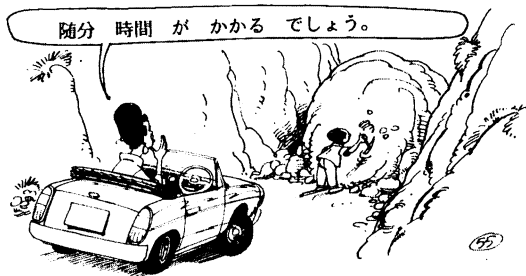
- ① <sup>い</sup>行った <sup>の</sup> の <sup>で</sup> ではない <sup>です</sup> ですか **itta no de wa nai desu ka.**  
 “Whoah, that’s long!” One of the accumulations of verbal forms that Japanese is notorious for. But don’t panic: break it down and come at it the way you know how. Remember: ...<sup>の</sup> なんです **no desu** (cf. Lesson 30, note 2) which, at the end of a sentence, adds a nuance of explanation. So here, it’s nothing more ▶

# Lesson Fifty-Five 55

## Going to Japan

(Japan / [destination] / go)

- 1 – Where are you going for your summer vacation this year?  
(this year / [relation] / summer / [relation] / vacation / [announce] / where / [destination] / go / [question])
- 2 – I'm going to Japan.  
(Japan / [destination] / go)
- 3 – Didn't you go there last year? I'm jealous that you can go every year!  
(last year / also / went / fact of / it is not that / it is / [question])  
(every year / able to go // be jealous / it is / [agreement])
- 4 – Yes, but this year I'm taking a train.  
(yes / that's so / but // this year / [emphasis] / train / [means] / go / it's that)



- ▶ than a の です **no desu**. The です **desu** is in its negative low degree form, **ではない de wa nai** (cf. Lesson 50, note 7); the です **desu** is added to put it back in middle degree.
- ② 行く んです **iku n desu**. In Japanese, as in all languages, some parts of words are left out of common conversation. Here, the **o** of の です **no** is dropped, leaving ん です **n desu**.

- 5 シベリア <sup>けい ゆ</sup> 經由 の <sup>き しゃ</sup> 汽車 で <sup>い</sup> 行く  
 shi be ri a kei yu no ki sha de i ku  
 ん です。  
 n de su.
- 6 飛行機 <sup>ひ こう き</sup> の <sup>ほう</sup> 方 が <sup>はや</sup> 早い です  
 hi kō ki no hō ga haya i de su  
 が、つまらない です。  
 ga, tsu ma ra na i de su.
- 7 でも パリ から モスクワ まで  
 de mo pa ri ka ra mo su ku wa ma de  
 は <sup>ひ こう き</sup> 飛行機 で <sup>い</sup> 行きます。  
 wa hi kō ki de i ki ma su.
- 8 そして モスクワ で <sup>き しゃ</sup> 汽車 に  
 so shi te mo su ku wa de ki sha ni  
<sup>の</sup> 乗り換えて、ウラジオストック まで  
 no ri ka e te, u ra ji o su to k ku ma de  
<sup>い</sup> 行きます。  
 i ki ma su.
- 9 それから <sup>に ほん</sup> 日本 まで <sup>ふね</sup> 船 か  
 so re ka ra ni hon ma de fune ka  
<sup>ひ こう き</sup> 飛行機 です。  
 hi kō ki de su.
- 10 - <sup>ずい ぶん</sup> 随分 <sup>じ かん</sup> 時間 が かかる でしょう。③④  
 zui bun ji kan ga ka ka ru de shō.

### Notes

- ③ <sup>じ かん</sup> 時間 が かかる **jikan ga kakaru**, *that takes time*. Literally, "time is used." The expression ... かかる ... **kakaru** is used for *that will take...* (10 minutes, 3 hours...). You'll find this example again in the exercises.
- ④ でしょう **deshō**. Originally a form of です **desu**. です **desu**, *it is*, でしょう **deshō**, *it must be* (cf. Lesson 50, note 4). But ▶

- 5 I'm taking the Trans-Siberian.  
(Siberia-via / [relation] / train / [means] / go / it's that)
- 6 It's faster by plane, but boring.  
(airplane / [relation] / side / [subject] / be fast / it is / but // be boring / it is)
- 7 However I'm still taking an airplane from Paris to Moscow.  
(however / Paris / from / Moscow / up to / [emphasis] / airplane / [means] / go)
- 8 Then in Moscow I switch to a train and go to Vladivostok.  
(then / Moscow / [place] / train / [goal] / change means of transportation // Vladivostok / up to / go)
- 9 Then to Japan, by boat or airplane.  
(then / Japan / up to / boat / or else / airplane / it is)
- 10 – That must take a long time!  
(enormously / time / [subject] / be used / that must be)



- ▶ here, after a low degree verb, the word functions practically as a final particle of the like we met long ago (from the first **ね** in Lesson 1). All these final particles indicate the attitude of the speaker towards the sentence itself. Here, the attitude is complex, where the speaker knows full well that it will take time to make such a voyage, so there is no real question asked. At the same time, the speaker is hesitant to speak directly, because he himself has never made the trip. The use of **でしょう** **deshō** is, in fact, quite close to what we in English do when we utter something like, “I imagine that must take a long time.”

- 11 - ええ、しかし それ で 行った こと  
 e e, shi ka shi so re de i t ta ko to  
 の ある 友達<sup>ともだち</sup> に よる と、時間<sup>じかん</sup>  
 no a ru tomodachi ni yo ru to, ji kan  
 の 感覚<sup>かんかく</sup> が なくなる ので 全然<sup>ぜんぜん</sup>  
 no kan kaku ga na ku na ru no de zen zen  
 退屈<sup>たいくつ</sup> しない そう です。⑤  
 tai kutsu shi na i sō de su.
- 12 - いつ 出発<sup>しゅつぱつ</sup> します か。  
 i tsu shupatsu shi ma su ka.
- 13 - まだ はっきり 決めて いません が、  
 ma da ha k ki ri ki me te i ma se n ga,  
 七月<sup>しちがつ</sup> の 初め<sup>はじ</sup> ごろ になる と  
 shichi gatsu no haji me go ro ni na ru to  
 思<sup>おも</sup>います。⑥  
 omo i ma su.

## Notes

- ⑤ それで 行った こと の ある 友達<sup>ともだち</sup> **sore de itta koto no aru tomodachi**. cf. Lesson 42, paragraph 3. Up till now we haven't seen the expression ことがある **koto ga aru** except at the end of a sentence or clause. Here, as you can well see, we have a different situation, where the expression depends completely on the word 友達 **tomodachi**, a friend *who* went that way. In cases like this, and only in cases like this, we can use の **no** instead of が **ga** to indicate the subject. ▶

\*\*\*

- 11 – Yes, but according to a friend who went that way, it seems that you lose all idea of time and so it's not annoying at all.

*(yes / however / this / [means] / went / fact of / [subject] / exist / friend / [goal] / be based upon / when /// time / [relation] / feeling / [subject] / disappear / because // not at all / boredom-not do / it seems that)*

- 12 – When do you leave?

*(when / depart-do / [question])*

- 13 – I haven't totally decided yet, but I think it'll be around the beginning of July.

*(yet / with precision / not be decided / but // July / [relation] / beginning-approximately / [time] / become / [quotation] / think)*



- ▶ ⑥ <sup>はじ</sup>初めごろ **hajime goro**. The addition of the word **ごろ goro** to a word expressing the date makes the date an approximation:  
<sup>しちがつ</sup>七月の<sup>はじ</sup>初めに **shichigatsu no hajime ni**, *at the beginning of July*;  
<sup>しちがつ</sup>七月の<sup>はじ</sup>初めごろに **shichigatsu no hajime goro ni**, *around the beginning of July*.

\*\*\*

Exercise 1

- ① ラジオ の ニュース に よる と、  
 radio no nyūsu ni yoru to,  
 今朝 <sup>けさ</sup> ととも <sup>ふしぎ</sup> 不思議 な <sup>こうつう</sup> 交通  
 kesa totemo fushigi na kōtsū  
 事故 <sup>じこ</sup> が <sup>おこ</sup> 起こった そう です。  
 jiko ga okotta sō desu.
- ② 走 <sup>はし</sup> って <sup>よんぶん</sup> 四分 かかります。  
 hashitte yonpun kakarimasu.
- ③ 横 <sup>よこ</sup> の <sup>たてもの</sup> 建物 が できあがる まで  
 yoko no tatemono ga dekiagaru made  
 は、<sup>さんねん</sup> 三年 かかりました。  
 wa, san nen kakarimashita.

\*\*\*

Exercise 2

…に <sup>ことば</sup> 言葉 を <sup>い</sup> 入れなさい

- ① We left around six o'clock.  
 . . . . . ni . . . . .
- ② It must be really boring to go to Moscow by train.  
 . . . . . wa tsumaranai . . . . .
- ③ Are we still not decided about the beginning of July this year?  
 . . . . . ni kimeta  
 . . . . .



- ④ インド 象<sup>ぞう</sup> は 耳<sup>みみ</sup> が 小<sup>ちい</sup>さい です。  
 indo zō wa mimi ga chiisai desu.  
 アフリカ 象<sup>ぞう</sup> は 耳<sup>みみ</sup> が 大<sup>おお</sup>きい です。  
 afurika zō wa mimi ga ookii desu.
- ⑤ 耳<sup>みみ</sup> の 小<sup>ちい</sup>さい インド 象<sup>ぞう</sup> と 耳<sup>みみ</sup> の  
 mimi no chiisai indo zō to mimi no  
 大<sup>おお</sup>きい アフリカ 象<sup>ぞう</sup> を 見<sup>み</sup>ました。  
 ookii afurika zō o mimashita.

### Answers to Exercise 1

① According to the news on the radio, there was a really strange traffic accident this morning. ② It takes four minutes running. ③ It took three years for the building next door to be finished. ④ Indian elephants have small ears. African elephant have big ones. ⑤ I saw Indian elephants whose ears are small and African elephants whose ears are big.

\*\*\*

- ④ First you'll go to Meguro by bus, you'll change there, and then you take the train to Ueno.  
 . . . . . it . . . . .  
 norikae. . . . .
- ⑤ I finally understood after consulting the book my sister suggested.  
 ane ga . . . . . shirabe . . . . .  
 yatto . . . . .

### Answers to Exercise 2

① roku ji goro – shupatsu shimashita. ② mosukuwa made kisha de iku no – deshō. ③ kotoshi no shichigatsu no hajime – no de wa nai desu ka. ④ mazu basu de meguro e – te soko de – te ueno made densha de ikimasu. ⑤ – oshiete kureta hon o – te – wakarimashita.

### Second Wave: 第六課 (Lesson 6)

## まとめ

### matome

### Revision and Notes

So, how's this **Second Wave** going? Have you really been going back to the lessons from Volume 1 after finishing each chapter in this book? Of course, it demands a bit more work from you, but of course it yields much more satisfaction, doesn't it? Do you understand the directions? For each lesson of the Second Wave, you go back and reproduce the dialogue from an earlier lesson, without looking at the text! And this way, naturally and with ease, all that you have assimilated during the passive phase will turn into "**active Japanese**". And you will be able to leap forward into making up your own sentences.

**1.** Today, in this revision chapter, we will only be going over one single grammar point. We are only going to devote so much time to one issue just this once, but only because it takes so much time to clarify. It concerns verbs in the て **te** and low degree past tense た **ta** forms. We've used them many times already. When you can't take it anymore and absolutely must know, we'll cave in and tell it to you.

This is the only real difficulty in dealing with verb forms. Until now we've introduced the different verb forms little by little and without much pain. Here, we'll come clean; the results might cause a few grimaces, but everything is relative!

We will need to take our time, read the following explanations carefully, and flip back to look at the examples when necessary. You'll see... it won't be that bad, after all!

---

## Lesson Fifty-Six 56

た **ta** is used to construct the past tense form of the low degree (middle degree **ました mashita**), which you already know (cf. Lesson 17, note 4; Lesson 21, paragraph 4).

て **te** is used, of course, to construct “the て **te** form”, which indicates either an ongoing action, such as *I am doing...* (食べている **tabete iru**, *I am eating* [cf. Lesson 11, note 2; Lesson 35, paragraph 4]), or else, as we’ve just learned, the ending of a clause (cf. Lesson 52, note 2).

As you’ve probably already guessed, the construction of these two forms た **ta** and て **te** depends on the kind of verb: verbs with one root on the one hand, and words with many on the other hand (cf. Lesson 49, paragraph 1).

**For verbs with one root:** no problem! We add the た **ta** or the て **te** to the base, exactly as in other cases. The same is true for する **suru**, *to do*.

So far, we’ve already seen the following forms of the **past tense low degree** of た **ta**:

やられる **yarareru**, *to be had*, やられた **yarareta**, *to have been had* (Lesson 17, item 13); 食べる **taberu**, *to eat*, 食べた **tabeta**, *ate* (Lesson 30, item 11); 忘れる **wasureru**, *to forget*, 忘れた **wasureta**, *forgot* (Lesson 31, item 10); つける **tsukeru**, *attach*, つけた **tsuketa**, *have attached* (Lesson 36, item 12); 生まれる **umareru**, *to be born*, 生まれた **umareta**, *was/were born* (Lesson 38, item 4); できる **dekiru**, *to be finished*, できた **dekita**, *to have been finished* (Lesson 40, item 5); 離れる **hanareru**, *to separate*, 離れた **hanareta**, *separated* (Lesson 44, item 7); 始める **hajimeru**, *to begin*, 始めた **hajimeta**, *began* (Lesson 47, item 7);

控える **hikaeru**, to *restrain*, 控えた *restrained* (Lesson 53, item 8); and finally する **suru**, to *do*, した **shita**, *did* (Lesson 32, item 9; Lesson 37, item 7; Lesson 39, item 10; Lesson 44, item 12; Lesson 45, item 9).

The verbs in て **te forms** we've already seen:

して **shite**, from する **suru**, to *do* (Lesson 12, item 11; Lesson 20, items 12 and 13; Lesson 23, item 9; Lesson 30, item 10; Lesson 31, item 2; Lesson 38, items 1 and 9; Lesson 40, item 10; Lesson 41, items 8 and 10; Lesson 46, item 2; Lesson 53, items 2 and 3); 見せて **misete**, from 見せる **miseru**, to *show* (Lesson 17, item 7; Lesson 18, item 6); 勤めて **tsutomete**, from 勤める **tsutomeru**, to *work* (as a job) (Lesson 23, item 7); つれて **tsurete**, from つれる **tsureru**, to *accompany* (Lesson 26, item 4); 教えて **oshiete**, from 教える **oshieru**, to *teach* (Lesson 29, item 4); 出て **dete**, from 出る **deru**, to *go out* (Lesson 30, item 9; Lesson 43, item 9); 別れて **wakarete**, from 別れる **wakareru**, to *separate* (Lesson 34, item 5); 食べて **tabete**, from 食べる **taberu**, to *eat* (Lesson 39, item 8); つけて **tsukete**, from つける **tsukeru**, to *attach* (Lesson 40, item 4); 離れて **hanarete**, from 離れる **hanareru**, to *separate* (Lesson 44, item 12); 控えて **hikaete**, from 控える **hikaeru**, to *restrain* (Lesson 46, item 13); 預けて **azukete**, from 預ける **azukeru**, to *entrust* (Lesson 45, item 6); 増えて **fuete**, from 増える **fueru**, to *increase* (Lesson 45, item 7); 見て **mite**, from 見る **miru**, to *look* (Lesson 46, item 9; Lesson 48, item 4; Lesson 50, items 5 and 6); 入れて **irete**, from 入れる **ireru**, to *put* (Lesson 47, item 12, and in each exercise); 着替えて **kigaete**, from 着替える **kigaeru**, to *change clothes* (Lesson 54, item 3); 決めて **kimete**, from 決める **kimeru**, to *decide* (Lesson 55, item 13).

To this list we should add 来て **kite**, from the verb 来る **kuru**, to *come* (Lesson 29, item 8). This verb, like する **suru**, to *do*, is a little bit irregular: it is not a word with one root, nor is it a word with multiple roots, but rather a verb with two roots: the primary base is き **ki**, to which all suffixes but one are added. For example, 来ます

**kimasu**, *I come* (middle degree), 来ました **kimashita**, *came* (middle degree), 来た **kita**, *came* (low degree). The final example is the oddball: the suffix ない **nai** is added to the root こ **ko**: 来ない **konai**, *I'm not coming*.

So far –it's okay, admit it– it's not too complicated. Just a little bit long!

Right now let's take a step over to **verbs with multiple roots**: this is where we have to keep our eyes peeled. If you were learning Japanese a few hundred years ago, you wouldn't have a problem (at least as far as roots are concerned!): the suffixes て **te** and た **ta** were only added, like most other suffixes (cf. Lesson 49, paragraph 1), to the *i* root. But alas, time has played a trick on us, and now, in some cases, the *i* or another sound (the *k* or *g*) has disappeared! Yes, this happens in all languages. One day, for no apparent reasons, some sounds just up and go, never to be heard from in some words ever again.

Unfortunately, it's left us with some tangled up words, such as:

- **The only words that have resisted and remained regular are those verbs that end with す *su*:** 貸す **kasu**, *to borrow*: 貸して **kashite** (Lesson 32, item 1; Lesson 45, item 13); 捜す **sagasu**, *to look for*: 捜して **sagashite** (Lesson 34, item 1); 動かす **ugokasu**, *to make move*: 動かして **ugokashite** (Lesson 40, item 11); 出す **dasu**, *to hold out*: 出して **dashite** (Lesson 46, item 9). And if you want to know the past tense in low degree: *borrowed*, 貸して **kashita**, *looked for*, 捜した **sagashita**, etc.

- **For verbs that end in く *ku*:** the *k* is gone, leaving an *i*:  
て **te** form verbs: 働く **hataraku**, *to work*, 働いて **hataraitte** (Lesson 11, item 8; Lesson 30, item 10; Lesson 40, item 13); 書く **kaku**, *to write*, 書いて **kaite** (Lesson 17, item 13; Lesson 25, item 1; Lesson 50, item 13); 歩く **aruku**, *to walk*, 歩いて **aruite** (Lesson 24, item 3; Lesson 31, item 3; Lesson 39, item 10); 驚く

**odoroku**, to be surprised, 驚おどろいて **odoroite** (Lesson 39, item 11);  
置おく **oku**, to place down, 置おいて **oite** (Lesson 40, item 5); 聞きく  
**kiku**, to listen, to ask, 聞きいて **kiite** (Lesson 43, item 13; Lesson 47,  
item 9; Lesson 51, item 10); 輝かがやく **kagayaku**, to shine, 輝かがやいて  
**kagayaite** (Lesson 48, item 6).

た **ta** form verbs: つく **tsuku**, to attach, ついた **tsuita**, attached  
(Lesson 31, item 11).

Other examples, for you to find on your own: *I wrote*, 書かいた  
**kaita**; *I listened*, 聞きいた **kiita**. Yes, hurray!

- For verbs that end in ぐ **gu**: the *g* is gone, leaving *i*, and *t* becomes *d*:

急いそぐ **isogu**, to hurry, 急いそいで **isoide** (Lesson 32, item 9; Lesson 51,  
item 1).

- For verbs that end in む **mu**, ぶ **bu**, and ぬ **nu**: the *i* goes away and the *t* becomes *d* again, but the consonant preceding *d* is always *n*.

We've already seen て **te** form verbs: 住すんで **sunde**, from 住すむ  
**sumu**, to live in (Lesson 15, item 2; Lesson 36, items 9, 12, and  
13; Lesson 38, item 7); 混まんで **konde**, from 混まむ **komu**, to be  
blocked (Lesson 32, item 3; Lesson 44, item 7); 飲のんで **nonde**,  
from 飲のむ **nomu**, to drink (Lesson 48, item 11); 並ならんで **narande**,  
from 並ならぶ **narabu**, to be in line (Lesson 39, item 12); 浮うかんで  
**ukande**, from 浮うかぶ **ukabu**, to float (Lesson 48, item 3).

We haven't yet seen examples of the past tense, but all you have to  
do is replace で **de** with だ **da**. So let's go! *I drank*, 飲のんだ **nonda**;  
*I stood in line*, 並ならんだ **naranda**.

- Finally, for verbs ending in う **u**, つ **tsu**, and る **ru**: We've seen  
this a lot, where the *i* drops off and we get a form ending in っ  
**tte** or った **tta**:

Verbs in う **u**: 買かう **kau**, to buy, 買かって **katte** (Lesson 27, item 12;  
Lesson 29, item 12; Lesson 39, item 13); 飼かう **kau**, to raise (an

animal), 飼<sup>か</sup>って **katte** (Lesson 33, item 8); 思<sup>おも</sup>う **omou**, *to think*, 思<sup>おも</sup>って **omotte** (Lesson 43, item 4), 思<sup>おも</sup>った **omotta**, *thought* (Lesson 36, item 10); 言<sup>い</sup>う **iu**, *to say*, 言<sup>い</sup>って **itte** (Lesson 46, item 1), 言<sup>い</sup>った **itta**, *said* (Lesson 41, item 10); もら<sup>あ</sup>う **morau**, *to receive*, もら<sup>あ</sup>った **moratta**, *received* (Lesson 31, item 10); 会<sup>あ</sup>う **au**, *to meet*, 会<sup>あ</sup>った **atta**, *met* (Lesson 41, items 1 and 2); 酔<sup>よ</sup>っばらう **yopparau**, *to get drunk*, 酔<sup>よ</sup>っばらった **yopparatta**, *to be drunk* (Lesson 48, item 11).

Let's take a break for a minute! This sure is a chapter of revision, isn't it? Think about it –you've actually retained a lot, assimilated the forms, haven't you? But you still need to understand in order to be able to construct these forms yourself with any new verbs you come across. So bear with it –we'll get to the end!

つ **tsu** verbs: 持<sup>も</sup>つ **motsu**, *to hold, to have*, 持<sup>も</sup>って **motte** (Lesson 4, item 1 and 2; Lesson 16, items 9 and 11; Lesson 36, items 2 and 11; Lesson 40, item 13; Lesson 51, items 11 and 12; Lesson 53, items 6 and 9); 立<sup>た</sup>つ **tatsu**, *to stand*, 立<sup>た</sup>って **tatte** (Lesson 24, item 10), 待<sup>ま</sup>つ **matsu**, *to wait*, 待<sup>ま</sup>って **matte** (Lesson 27, item 7 and 13; Lesson 29, item 11).

る **ru** verbs: 知<sup>し</sup>る **shiru**, *to know*, 知<sup>し</sup>って **shitte** (Lesson 6, items 1 and 2; Lesson 37, item 8; Lesson 46, item 1); 入<sup>はい</sup>る **hairu**, *to enter*, 入<sup>はい</sup>って **haitte** (Lesson 24, item 11); 取<sup>と</sup>る **toru**, *to take*, 取<sup>と</sup>って **totte** (Lesson 29, item 6); や<sup>や</sup>る **yaru**, *to do*, や<sup>や</sup>って **yatte** (Lesson 29, item 9; Lesson 47, item 5); 降<sup>ふ</sup>る **furu**, *to fall* (precipitation), 降<sup>ふ</sup>って **futte** (Lesson 31, item 5); か<sup>か</sup>かる **kakaru**, *to be hung up, to be used*, か<sup>か</sup>かって **kakatte** (Lesson 31, item 7; Lesson 41, item 11); よ<sup>よ</sup>る **yoru**, *to be based upon*, よ<sup>よ</sup>って **yotte** (Lesson 31, item 13); 走<sup>はし</sup>る **hashiru**, *to run*, 走<sup>はし</sup>って **hashitte** (Lesson 32, item 5); 捉<sup>つか</sup>まる **tsukamaru**, *to trap*, 捉<sup>つか</sup>まって **tsukamatte** (Lesson 32, item 12); 送<sup>おく</sup>る **okuru**, *to send*, 送<sup>おく</sup>って **okutte** (Lesson 33, item 9); 帰<sup>かえ</sup>る **kaeru**, *to return home*, 帰<sup>かえ</sup>って **kaette**

(Lesson 33, item 10; Lesson 37, item 4); 飛び移る *tobiutsuru*, to fly, 飛び移って *tobiutsutte* (Lesson 39, item 9); 作る *tsukuru*, to make, 作って *tsukutte* (Lesson 40, item 3), 作った *tsukutta*, made (Lesson 33, item 3); なる *naruru*, to become, なって *natte* (Lesson 45, items 9 and 11; Lesson 46, items 9 and 14; Lesson 48, item 6); 張る *haru*, to set, 張って *hatte* (Lesson 52, item 5); 売る *uru*, to sell, 売って *utte* (Lesson 54, item 11); 座る *suwaru*, to sit, 座って *suwatte* (Lesson 54, item 12); できあがる *dekiagaru*, to complete, できあがった *dekiagatta*, completed (Lesson 40, item 5); 変わる *kawaru*, to change, 変わった *kawatta*, changed (Lesson 41, item 7); 残る *nokoru*, to stay, 残った *nokotta*, stayed (Lesson 45, item 6).

Only exception: one of the most common verbs, 行く *iku*, to go, is an irregular verb, where the て *te* and た *ta* forms are: 行って *itte* (Lesson 30, item 3; Lesson 39, item 1) and 行った *itta* (Lesson 30, item 2; Lesson 39, item 2; Lesson 46, item 3; Lesson 50, item 1; Lesson 55, items 3 and 11).

\*\*\*



Whoah! You're still with us? So there you have it! Right now you know everything about these verb forms. We'll run across more, of course, and often, but let this stand as your first complete introduction. And if you're fanatical –or masochistic– you can always go through each exercise and pick out the て **te** and た **ta** forms and try to figure out which verbs they come from (you can also find it in the index).

Of course by now you're saying, "Well that's all well and good, but all I need to know is whether the verb has one root or many! Easy!" We've thought of everything: in the index at the end of this volume, we've noted for each verb what kind of root form it uses.

In any case, you can now give yourself a break. See you again before too long for Lesson 57!

## Second Wave: 第七課 (Lesson 7)

\*\*\*

57 第五十七課 dai go jū nana ka

歴史 の 道  
reki shi no michi

- 1 - 奈良に「歴史の道」というところ  
na ra ni reki shi no michi to i u to ko ro  
があるのを知っていますか。①②③  
ga a ru no o shi t te i ma su ka.
- 2 - いいえ、聞いたことがありません。  
i i e, ki i ta ko to ga a ri ma se n.
- 3 - それは奈良の町の回りを  
so re wa na ra no machi no mawa ri  
を通る道です。④  
o too ru michi de su.
- 4 畑にそって、ほとんどの奈良の  
hatake ni so t te, ho to n do no na ra no  
有名なお寺のそばを通ります。⑤  
yū mei na o tera no so ba o too ri masu.

Notes

- ① You have already encountered these brackets in the previous lessons. They are typically Japanese and serve the same purpose as quotation marks in English. They are used for direct quotations –when quoting an inscription or someone’s words (cf. Lesson 17, item 13; Lesson 37, item 9; Lesson 38, items 5 and 6; Lesson 39, items 4 and 5; Lesson 48, item 5). They also surround proper names: titles of books (cf. Lesson 18, item 2), of movies (cf. Lesson 8, item 6; Lesson 43, item 4, of plays (cf. Lesson 29, item 9), paintings’ names (cf. Lesson 50, item 14), person’s name or surname (cf. Lesson 36, items 11, 12 and 13). ▶

## The Road of History

*(history / [relation] / road)*

- 1 – Did you know that there's a place called "The Road of History" in Nara?  
*(Nara / [place] / history / [relation] / road / [quotation] / say / place / [subject] / exist / fact of / [object] / know / [question])*
- 2 – No, I've never heard that.  
*(no / heard / fact of / [subject] / not exist)*
- 3 – It's a road that goes around the city of Nara.  
*(that / [announce] / Nara / [apposition] / city / [relation] / edge / [object] / travel / road / it is)*
- 4 – It runs along the fields, by nearly every famous temple in Nara.  
*(field / [place] / run along // almost all / [relation] / Nara / [relation] / famous / it is / [familiarity]-Buddhist temple / [relation] / side / [object] / travel)*

▶ ② 奈良 <sup>なら</sup>nara. At the beginning of the history of Japan (between the sixth and eighth centuries), each emperor founded his capitol in a different place. Nara was the first capitol after this period; and it remained so for a century, when the Imperial Court established Kyōto, which served as the capitol until 1868, when the capitol was moved to Tōkyō. The charming little city of Nara still exists today, to the south of Kyōto. The century during which Nara was capitol was a period in which Buddhism was introduced to Japan; Nara contains, therefore, a great number of Buddhist temples founded in this period and full of artistic treasures.

③ ...ある の を ...aru **no** o, cf. Lesson 47, note 4.

④ 奈良 <sup>なら</sup> の 町 <sup>まち</sup> **nara no machi**. の **no** here indicates a relation of apposition: *the city of Nara*. cf. Lesson 13, note 1.

⑤ そって **sotte**, the て **te** form of the verb そう **sou**.

- 5 たとえば、<sup>とうだいじ</sup>東大寺、<sup>ほうりゅうじ</sup>法隆寺、<sup>やくしじ</sup>薬師寺、  
 ta to e ba, tō dai ji, hō ryū ji, yaku shiji,  
<sup>とうしょうだいじ</sup>唐招提寺 など です。⑥  
 tō shō dai ji na do de su.
- 6 <sup>ちい</sup>小さくて <sup>しず</sup>静か な お <sup>てら</sup>寺 の  
 chii sa ku te shizu ka na o tera no  
 そば も <sup>とお</sup>通ります。⑦  
 so ba mo too ri ma su.
- 7 <sup>ある</sup>歩いて <sup>い</sup>行く <sup>ひと</sup>人も <sup>じてんしゃ</sup>自転車 で  
 aru i te i ku hito mo ji ten sha de  
<sup>い</sup>行く <sup>ひと</sup>人も います。  
 i ku hito mo i ma su.
- 8 <sup>ある</sup>歩くと <sup>ぜんぶ</sup>全部 で <sup>じゅうごじかん</sup>十五時間  
 aru ku to zen bu de jū go ji kan  
 ぐらい かかります。⑧  
 gu ra i ka ka ri ma su.
- 9 <sup>でき</sup>出来れば <sup>なら</sup>奈良 に <sup>と</sup>泊まって、<sup>まいにち</sup>毎日  
 de ki re ba na ra ni to ma t te, mainichi  
<sup>すこ</sup>少し <sup>ある</sup>ずつ <sup>み</sup>歩いて 見る こと ですね。  
 sukoshi zutsu aru i te mi ru ko to de su ne.

## Notes

- ⑥ Each element in a long list in Japanese can be separated simply by a comma. The temples listed here are the four most important in Nara, founded before the tenth century. The buildings standing today are not necessarily original; they are wooden structures, and so the materials must be replaced from time to time. But in renovation, they are scrupulous about sticking to the original form and style of the temple.

⑦ cf. Lesson 54, note 8.

⑧ cf. Lesson 55, note 3.

5 For example Tōdaiji, Hōryūji, Yakushiji, and Tōshōdaiji.

*(for example / Tōdaiji / Hōryūji / Yakushiji / Tōshōdaiji / this kind of object / it is)*

6 It also passes by other small and calm temples.

*(be small / calm / it is / [familiarity]-temple / [relation] / side / also / travel)*

7 There are people who travel this road on foot, and others by bicycle.

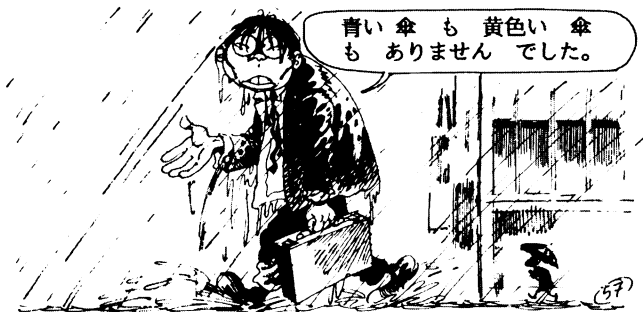
*(walking / go / person / also / bicycle / [means] / go / person / also / exist)*

8 On foot it takes about 15 hours total.

*(walk / when // total / ten-five-hour / around / be used)*

9 If you can, the best is to stay in Nara and walk a little bit every day.

*(if you can /// Nara / [place] / stay // every day / a little / each / walk / watch / fact of / it is / [agreement])*



- 10 - あなた は その 歴史 の 道 を  
 a na ta wa so no reki shi no michi o  
 ぜん ぶ ある  
 全部 歩きました か。  
 zen bu aru ki ma shi ta ka.
- 11 - 以前 二日 だけ 奈良 へ 行った  
 i zen futsu ka da ke na ra e i t ta  
 と き さん ぶん  
 時、三分 の 一 歩きました。⑨  
 toki, san bun no ichi aru ki ma shi ta.
- 12 その あと、足 が 痛くて、一週間 近く  
 so no a to, ashi ga itaku te, is shū kan chikaku  
 ある  
 歩く の が つらかった です。③⑦  
 aru ku no ga tsu ra ka t ta de su.
- 13 でも すばらしかった です。また  
 de mo su ba ra shi ka t ta de su. ma ta  
 い  
 行って 見たい です。  
 i t te mi ta i de su.

## Notes

- ⑨ 三分 <sup>さんぶん</sup> sanbun. In lesson 52, item 3, exercise 1, we have these exact two characters, but pronounced **sanpun** and meaning *three minutes*. So? The character 分 itself means *a part*, and as “a part” of an hour, it means *minute*. But pay attention: *part* is always pronounced **bun**, where *minute* is pronounced either **fun** or **pun**, ▶

\*\*\*

10 – And you, have you walked the whole Road of History? 57

*(you / [announce] / this / history / [relation] / road / [object] / whole / walked / [question])*

11 – There were a few times, when I went to Nara for only two days, I could do a third.

*(before / two days / only / Nara / [destination] / went / time // three-parts / [relation] / one / walked)*

12 After that, my feet hurt so much that for about a week it was a pain to walk.

*(after that / foot / [subject] / be in pain // one-week / close to / walk / fact of / [subject] / was annoying / it is)*

13 But it was magnificent. I'd love to go back.

*(but / was magnificent / it is) (anew / go / I want to see / it is)*



▶ depending on the preceding number (cf. next revision chapter).

$\frac{\text{さんぶん}}{\text{三分}} \text{ の } \text{一}$  いち — **sanbun no ichi**, literally: “one of three parts”, is the Japanese way of calculating fractions. One of three parts is, of course, 1/3, or a third.

\*\*\*

Exercise 1

- ① 伯父おじ に 先週せんしゅう もらった お酒さけ は、  
oji ni senshū moratta o sake wa,  
非常ひじょう に おいしかった ので、もう  
hijō ni oishikatta node, mō  
四分よんぶん の 三さん 飲のんで しまいました。  
yonbun no san nonde shimaimashita.
- ② モスクワ の 町まち は 広ひろくて、すばらしい  
mosukuwa no machi wa hirokute, subarashii  
美術館びじゅつかん が たくさん あります。  
bijutsukan ga takusan arimasu.
- ③ 青あおい 傘かさ も 黄きいろ色いろい 傘かさ も  
aoi kasa mo kiirono kasa mo  
ありません でした。  
arimasen deshita.

\*\*\*

Exercise 2

...に 言葉ことば を 入いれなさい

- ① I came by way of a very busy street.  
.....  
kimashita
- ② Is it difficult to remember hiragana?  
..... oboeru .....
- ③ The train runs along the fields.  
..... ikimasu



- ④ <sup>あお</sup>青くて <sup>きいろ</sup>黄色い <sup>かさ</sup>傘 が あった の  
aokute kiroi kasa ga atta no

で は ない でしょう か。  
de wa nai deshō ka.

- ⑤ <sup>なら</sup>奈良 に <sup>いっしゅうかん</sup>一週間 <sup>と</sup>泊まって、<sup>れきし</sup>歴史 の <sup>みち</sup>道  
nara ni issūkan tomatte, rekishi no michi

を <sup>ぜんぶ</sup>全部 <sup>ある</sup>歩く こと が できました。  
o zenbu aruku koto ga dekimashita.

### Answers to Exercise 1

- ① The sake that my uncle gave me last week was so good I drank three quarters of it. ② The city of Moscow is wide and contains many great art museums. ③ There were no blue umbrellas nor yellow umbrellas. ④ Wasn't there a blue and yellow umbrella? ⑤ Staying a week in Nara, I could travel the whole Road of History.

\*\*\*

- ④ I heard that awhile ago you used to love history and that you bought many history books. Is that true?

konogoro ..... natte, .....  
..... katte iru .. ..... yo  
.....

- ⑤ I came, I saw, I conquered (won).

.....

### Answers to Exercise 2

- ① totemo nigiyaka na michi o tootte -. ② hiragana o - no wa muzukashii desu ka. ③ kisha ga hatake ni sotte hashitte -. ④ - rekishi ga suki ni -, rekishi no hon o takusan - to kiita -. hontō ka. ⑤ kita. mita. katta

57 | Finally! Starting with this, our fifty-seventh lesson, you will be able to experience the joy of **writing!** We're going to take our time and build a nice, easy rhythm: five **hiragana** or **katakana** per lesson, which will be just right for finishing all of them by the end of this volume.

As you've already discovered, certain words are always written in hiragana, others in katakana, and others still in kanji (the Chinese characters). The last category can, of course, also be written in hiragana. That's why we've written the hiragana above each kanji as a pronunciation guide. So with hiragana, we can write not only those words for which the syllabary was designed, but also words usually written in kanji.

\*\*\*

ひらがな                      れんしゅう  
平仮名の練習  
hira ga na no ren shū  
**Hiragana Exercises**  
(hiragana / [relation] / exercise)

あ      い      う      え      お

A                  I                  U                  E                  O

\*\*\*

Each hiragana (or katakana) studied in this and the following lessons will be written with:

- small arrows to show the direction of each stroke
- numbers indicating the stroke order for each hiragana or katakana

How do you begin?

First of all, train yourself to write each character, looking at the book, **always paying attention** to the arrows and stroke order. Then, try to write the characters without looking at the book. In the end, when you're ready, you can give yourself the dictation.

\*\*\*

か と  
書き取り kakitori – Dictation

- ① ie (house) ② iu (to say) ③ aoi (to be blue) ④ au (to meet) ⑤ ue (above) ⑥ iie (no)

Answers

- ① いえ ② いう ③ あおい ④ あう ⑤ うえ ⑥ いいえ

Second Wave: 第八課 (Lesson 8)

\*\*\*

58 第五十八課 dai go jū hak ka

選挙  
sen kyo

- 1- 今朝、変な自動車を見ました。①  
kesa, hen na ji dō sha o mi ma shi ta.
- 2- 何が変だったのですか。  
nani ga hen da t ta no de su ka.
- 3- ええと、車の回りにたくさん  
e e to, kuruma no mawari ni ta ku sa n  
の旗が ついて いました。  
no hata ga tsu i te i mashi ta.
- 4 それに車の上にスピーカー  
so re ni kuruma no ue ni su pī kā  
が ついて いて、盛んに何か  
ga tsu i te i te, saka n ni nani ka  
を 言って いました。  
o i t te i ma shi ta.
- 5- スピーカーは何を 言って  
su pī kā wa nani o i t te  
いました か。  
i mashi ta ka.
- 6- 人の名前を 繰り返し、  
hito no na mae o ku ri kae shi,  
繰り返し、 言って いました。②  
ku ri kae shi, i t te i ma shi ta.

## Elections

(election)

- 1 – I saw a funny looking van this morning.  
(*this morning / strange / it is / car / [object] / saw*)
- 2 – What was so funny about it?  
(*what / [subject] / strange / it was / it's that / [question]*)
- 3 – Well, there were flags hanging all over it...  
(*uh / car / [relation] / edge / [place] / many / [relation] / flag / [subject] / be affixed*)
- 4 – And then, there was a speaker on top of the car, saying a lot of something.  
(*furthermore / car / [relation] / top / [place] / speaker / [subject] / be affixed // lively / [adverbial] / something / [object] / was saying*)
- 5 – What was the speaker saying?  
(*speaker / [announce] / what / [object] / said / [question]*)
- 6 – It was repeating someone's name over and over again.  
(*person / [relation] / name / [object] / repeat // repeat /// said*)

## Notes

- ① You'll often see that there's a certain discrepancy in translation between English and Japanese words. In English, we have three main types of words for four-wheeled vehicles: cars, trucks, and vans. In Japanese, there are only two words: 自動車 **jidōsha** (and the equivalent 車 **kuruma**) and トラック **torakku** (cf. Lesson 32, item 6). In daily speech, 自動車 **jidōsha** is used for both cars **and** vans.
- ② In Lesson 52, note 2, we saw the role of the て **te** form verbs. The same role may be played by another form, though this is more simple: the root alone for all verbs with one root, and the *i* root for all verbs with multiple roots. Here, we have: 繰り返し **kurikaeshi**, from the verb 繰り返す **kurikaesu**, to repeat. The presence of this form, same as the て **te** form verbs, means: "this is not the final verb; this sentence keeps going on". In common usage, however, the て **te** form is more widely used.

- 7- ああ、それは 選挙 運動 の  
 a a, so re wa sen kyo un dō no  
 自動車 でしょう。  
 ji dō sha de shō.
- 8 大通り を 走りながら、立候補者  
 oo doo ri o hashi ri na ga ra, rik kō ho sha  
 の 名前 を 何度も 繰り返して  
 no na mae o nan do mo ku ri kae shi te  
 います。③  
 i i ma su.
- 9- 変わった 選挙 運動 の 仕方 ですね。  
 ka wa t ta sen kyo un dō no shi kata de su ne.
- 10- 日本 では そういう やりかた です。  
 ni hon de wa sō i u ya ri ka ta de su.
- 11- 選挙 が 近づく と 町 は うるさく  
 sen kyo ga chika zu ku to machi wa u ru sa ku  
 なる でしょう ね。④  
 na ru de shō ne.
- 12- そう ですね。日曜日 でも ゆっくり  
 sō de su ne. nichi yō bi de mo yu k ku ri  
 休む こと が できません。  
 yasu mu ko to ga de ki ma se n.
- 13- 今回 は 何 の 選挙 です か。  
 kon kai wa nan no sen kyo de su ka.
- 14- 都知事 選挙 です。  
 to chi ji sen kyo de su.

## Notes

- ③ 走りながら **hashirinagara**. 走る **hashiru** means *to run*, whether talking about people or vehicles. The suffix **ながら nagara** gets added on to the root of any verb with just one root, and to the *i* form of verbs with multiple roots; it means that the ▶

- 7 – Ah! It must have been a campaign van!  
*(ah / that / [announce] / election-movement / [relation] / car / that must be)*
- 8 They repeat the name of some candidate over and over while driving down the boulevards.  
*(large street / [object] / while driving down // candidate / [relation] / name / [object] / I don't know how many times / repeat // say)*
- 9 – What a funny way to have an electoral campaign!  
*(changed / election movement / [relation] / way of doing / it is / [agreement])*
- 10 – That's how it's done in Japan.  
*(Japan / [place] / [emphasis] / so / say / way of doing / it is)*
- 11 – When the elections are near, the city must get really noisy!  
*(election / [subject] / approach / when // city / [announce] / noisy / become / that must be / [agreement])*
- 12 – Oh, yes! Even on Sunday you can't really relax.  
*(it's so / [agreement]) (Sunday / even / calmly / rest / fact of / [subject] / not be possible)*
- 13 – What are the elections this time?  
*(this time / [announce] / what / [relation] / election / it is / [question])*
- 14 – These are the elections for the governor of Tōkyō.  
*(governor of Tōkyō-election / it is)*

▶ action expressed by this verb happens at the same time as the main action of the sentence. The two verbs, however, have to be performed by the same person.

- ④ 近づく **chikazuku**. It's been a long time since we said anything about writing, hasn't it? Here we have a small irregularity. The syllable **zu** corresponds, in current Japanese writing, to the kana ず. But from time to time we'll see the residue of an ancient usage of Japanese, where there were two kana for **zu**: ず and づ. In this example, the word 近づく **chikazuku** is actually a compound word combining 近 **chika**, *nearness*, and the verb つく **tsuku**. A phonetic change, however, makes **tsu** become **zu**, so we keep a trace of the hiragana written づ and add two little dots, making it づ. This happens each time the verb **tsuku** is used as the second half of a compound word.

## 練習

## Exercise 1

- ① 家うちのそばまで帰かえってくると、  
uchi no soba made kaette kuru to,  
息子むすこが歌うたっているのが聞きこえました。  
musuko ga uttatte iru no ga kikoemashita.
- ② 佐々木ささきさんは今こん回かいもお寺てらの  
sasaki san wa konkai mo o tera no  
裏うらに住すんでいる親戚しんせきのところ  
ura ni sundē iru shinseki no tokoro  
に泊とまるでしょう。  
ni tomaru deshō.
- ③ 料理りょうりをしながら、時々ときどき音おん楽がくを  
ryōri o shinagara, tokidoki ongaku o  
聞ききます。  
kikimasu.

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

...に言葉ことばをいいれなさい

- ① How you've grown, Kaoru!  
kaoru chan wa . . . . .
- ② I often have my meals while listening to the news on the radio.  
yoku . . . . ., shokuji  
o shimasu
- ③ It's dangerous to walk in the street while looking at the sky.  
. . . . . wa . . . . .  
. . . . .



- ④ やりかた が わからない ので、  
 yarikata ga wakaranai node,  
 あきらめました。  
 akiramemashita.
- ⑤ 子供 <sup>こども</sup> でも わかる <sup>せつめい</sup> 説明 です。  
 kodomo demo wakaru setsumei desu.

### Answers to Exercise 1

- ① When I got near my house, I could hear my son singing. ② Mr. Sasaki will this time also probably be staying with his relatives who live behind the temple. ③ Sometimes I listen to music while cooking. ④ I didn't know how to do it, so I gave up. ⑤ It's an explanation even a child could understand.

\*\*\*

- ④ From this apartment on the 19th floor you can see the sea. It must be a magnificent view.  
 ... .. kara ... ..  
 .....
- ⑤ I search. I run. He has fun. We write. Do you remember?  
 .....  
 .....

### Answers to Exercise 2

- ① - ookiku narimashita ne. ② - rajio no nyūsu o kikinagara -.  
 ③ sora o minagara michi o aruku no - abunai desu. ④ ano jū kyū kai no apāto - umi ga mieru deshō. subarashii nagame deshō ne. ⑤ sagashite imasu. hashitte imasu. asonde imasu. kaite imasu. oboete imasu ka.

ひらがな れんしゅう  
平仮名の練習  
hira ga na no ren shū  
Hiragana Exercises

(hiragana / [relation] / exercise)

か き く け こ  
KA KI KU KE KO

か と  
書き取り kakitori – Dictation

- ① kaki (a kind of fruit) ②ikai (machine) ③kikoku (to return to one's home country) ④kaku (to write) ⑤koko (here) ⑥ike (pond) ⑦koke (vegetable mousse) ⑧iku (to go)

だいごじゅうきゅうか  
59 第五十九課 dai go jū kyū ka

こしょう  
故障  
ko shō

- 1 – もしもし、電気屋 さん ですか。①  
mo shi mo shi, den ki ya sa n de su ka.
- 2 こちらは竹内 ですが、電気  
ko chi ra wa take uchi de su ga, den ki  
洗濯機 が 故障 している ので、  
sen taku ki ga ko shō shi te i ru no de,  
直し に 来て くれます か。  
nao shi ni ki te ku re ma su ka.



### Answers

- ① かき ② きかい ③ きこく ④ かく ⑤ ここ ⑥ いけ ⑦ こけ  
⑧ いく

### Second Wave: 第九課 (Lesson 9)

## Lesson Fifty-Nine 59

### Breakdowns

(breakdown)

- 1 – Hello, is this the electrician?  
(hello / electrician-Mr. / it is / [question])
- 2 This is Mrs. Takeuchi, my washing machine is broken, can you come fix it?  
(this side / [announce] / Takeuchi / it is / but /// electric-washing machine / [subject] / breakdown-do / because // repair / [goal] / come / do for me / [question])

### Notes

- ① The names of many shops are composed of the name of the item sold plus 屋 *ya*, which means store. 電気 *denki* is electricity, so 電気屋 *denkiya* is a store where all sorts of electrical items are sold (cf. also Lesson 20, item 1; Lesson 34, title). To refer to the shopkeeper, you only have to add a さん *san*.

59 3- はい、かしこまりました。②

ha i, ka shi ko ma ri ma shi ta.

4 明日の水曜日の朝うかがいます。③  
ashita no sui yō bi no asa u ka ga i masu.

つぎの日の朝  
tsugi no hi no asa

5 はい、洗濯機は直りました。④  
ha i, sentakuki wa nao ri ma shi ta.

6 ねじが五つ取れていました。  
ne ji ga itsutsu to re te i ma shi ta.

7- あ、電気屋さん、ついでに  
a, denki ya san, tsu ide ni  
掃除機も見てくれますか。  
sōji ki mo mi te ku re ma su ka.

8- はいはい、電気掃除機もね。  
ha i ha i, denki sōji ki mo ne.

9 おかしいな。これもねじが  
o ka shi i na. ko re mo ne ji ga  
三つ足りませんよ。  
mit tsu ta ri ma se n yo.

## Notes

② かしこまりました **kashikomarimashita**. Here is another phrase to be found on the lips of people who work in the service industry (cf. Lesson 18, item 14). It means: *as you wish* or *at your service*.

③ うかがう **ukagau** is verb used as the high degree form of a number of other verbs. But caution: it can only be used when the subject is I (cf. Lesson 49, paragraph 2). We've seen it used as a high degree correspondent to 聞く **kiku**, *to ask* or *to hear* ▶

- 3 – Yes, certainly.
- 4 I'll come tomorrow, Wednesday, in the morning.  
(tomorrow / [apposition] / Wednesday / [relation] / morning / come)

### The next morning

(following / [relation] / day / [relation] / morning)

- 5 There, your washing machine is fixed.  
(yes / washing machine / [announce] / was repaired)
- 6 It was missing five screws.  
(screw / [subject] / five / were removed)
- 7 – Oh, Mr. Electrician, by the way, could you take a look at my vacuum cleaner?  
(oh / electrician-Mr. / by the way / [adverbial] / vacuum cleaner / also / look / do for me / [question])
- 8 – Of course, the vacuum cleaner, too.  
(yes / yes / electric-vacuum cleaner / also / [agreement])
- 9 That's strange. This is also missing three screws.  
(be strange / [reflection]) (this one / also / screw / [subject] / three / not be sufficient / [engagement])



- ▶ say (Lesson 47, item 2). It is also used as the high degree form of the verb たずねる **tazuneru**, which means *to go to someone's house*. So here, うかがいます **ukagaimasu** means *I'm coming*.
- ④ Be sure not to confuse the verbs 直す **naosu**, *to fix, to repair*: ...を直す ...o **naosu**, *to fix (something)* and 直る **naoru**, *to be fixed, to be repaired*: 直りました **naorimashita**, *it's fixed, it's repaired*.

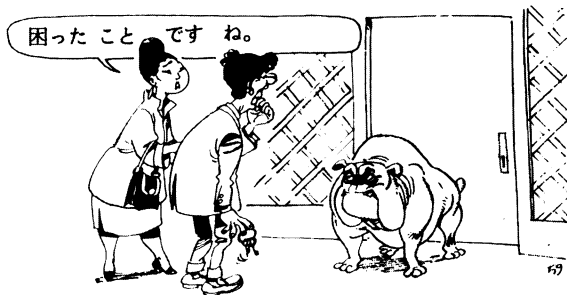
- 10 - 冷蔵庫 も お願<sup>ねが</sup>い できる かしら。⑤  
 rei zō ko mo onega i de ki ru ka shi ra.
- 11 - 奥<sup>おく</sup>さん、い<sup>い</sup>っ<sup>い</sup>たい、ど<sup>ど</sup>う <sup>い</sup>う こと  
 oku sa n, i t ta i, dō i u ko to  
 だ<sup>だ</sup>す<sup>だ</sup>か。皆<sup>みんな</sup> ね<sup>ね</sup>じ が 抜<sup>ぬ</sup>けて います。  
 de su ka. minna ne ji ga nu ke te i ma su.
- 12 - 主<sup>しゅ</sup>人<sup>じん</sup> が 四<sup>よん</sup>ヶ<sup>げ</sup>月<sup>げつ</sup> 前<sup>まえ</sup> に 会<sup>かい</sup>社<sup>しゃ</sup> を  
 shu jin ga yonkagetsu mae ni kai sha o  
 退<sup>たい</sup>職<sup>しよく</sup> し<sup>し</sup>ま<sup>ま</sup>し<sup>し</sup>た。そ<sup>そ</sup>れ 以<sup>い</sup>来<sup>らい</sup>、退<sup>たい</sup>屈<sup>くつ</sup>  
 tai shoku shi ma shi ta. so re i rai, tai kutsu  
 し<sup>し</sup>て、家<sup>いえ</sup>中<sup>じゆう</sup> の 電<sup>でん</sup>気<sup>き</sup> 器<sup>き</sup>具<sup>ぐ</sup> を 全<sup>ぜん</sup>部<sup>ぶ</sup>  
 shi te, ie jū no den ki ki gu o zen bu  
 分<sup>ぶん</sup>解<sup>かい</sup> し<sup>し</sup>て 組<sup>く</sup>み<sup>み</sup>立<sup>た</sup>て<sup>て</sup>る の だ<sup>だ</sup>す。⑥⑦  
 bun kai shi te ku mi ta te ru no de su.
- 13 - 困<sup>こま</sup>った こと だ<sup>だ</sup>す ね。  
 komat ta ko to de su ne.

## Notes

- ⑤ かしら **kashira**. A typically feminine expression, is used only at the end of a sentence, discretely asking *would it be possible?*, with doubt *I wonder if...*, by way of a hesitant *perhaps...*
- ⑥ 四ヶ月 **yonkagetsu**, cf. Lesson 34, note 7.
- ⑦ cf. Lesson 52, note 2 and Lesson 54, note 8. Here, the て **te** form can be understood as the simplest way to indicate cause and effect, along with other, more precise formulas, such as から **kara** and ので **node**.

\*\*\*

- 10 – Perhaps I could trouble you with the refrigerator, as well?  
*(refrigerator / also / [politeness]-ask / be possible / maybe)*
- 11 – Ma'am, what on earth is going on here? They're all missing screws!  
*(Madam / at last / how / say / fact / it is / [question]) (all / screw / [subject] / be missing)*
- 12 – My husband retired four months ago. Since then he's been bored, so he takes apart and puts back together all the electronic devices in the house.  
*(my husband / [subject] / four-months-before / [time] / enterprise / [object] / quit for retirement-did) (this one / since / boredom-do // whole house / [relation] / electricity-device / [object] / entirely / take apart-do // put together / it's that)*
- 13 – How annoying!  
*(be annoying / fact / it is / [agreement])*



\*\*\*

## Exercise 1

- ① 電気屋<sup>でんきや</sup> さん<sup>い</sup> に 行きました。再来週<sup>きらいしゅう</sup> まで  
denkiya san ni ikimashita. saraishū made  
に テレビ<sup>なほ</sup> を 直<sup>なお</sup> して くれる そうです。  
ni terebi o naoshite kureru sō desu.
- ② 今晚<sup>こんばん</sup> 友達<sup>ともだち</sup> が 八人<sup>はちにん</sup> 遊び<sup>あそ</sup> に 来る<sup>く</sup>  
konban tomodachi ga hachinin asobi ni kuru  
こと<sup>となり</sup> に なった ので、隣<sup>となり</sup> の 奥さん<sup>おく</sup>  
koto ni natta node, tonari no okusan  
に フォーク<sup>いっ</sup> を 五つ<sup>か</sup> 借りました。  
ni fōku o itsutsu karimashita.
- ③ 主人<sup>しゅじん</sup> が 旅行<sup>りょこう</sup> から めずらしい<sup>もの</sup> 物  
shujin ga ryokō kara mezurashii mono  
を たくさん<sup>も</sup> 持<sup>も</sup> っ て 帰<sup>かえ</sup> り ました  
o takusan motte kaerimashita  
から、是非<sup>ぜひ</sup> 見<sup>み</sup> に 来<sup>き</sup> て 下<sup>くだ</sup> さい。  
kara, zehi mi ni kite kudasai.

\*\*\*



- ④ あさっては <sup>まちじゅう</sup> 町中 の <sup>みせ</sup> 店 が <sup>やす</sup> 休み です。  
 asatte wa machijū no mise ga yasumi desu.
- ⑤ <sup>れいぞうこ</sup> 冷蔵庫 は <sup>ねじ</sup> ねじ が <sup>たくさん</sup> たくさん  
 reizōko wa neji ga takusan  
<sup>ね</sup> 抜けて、<sup>こしょう</sup> 故障 して います。  
 nukete, koshō shite imasu.

### Answers to Exercise 1

- ① I went to the electrician's. He said he could fix the television by the week after next. ② Tonight eight friends are coming to my house for dinner, so I borrowed five forks from my neighbor. ③ My husband brought me back many rare objects from his trip, please come see them. ④ The day after tomorrow, all the stores in the city will be closed. ⑤ Many screws are missing from this refrigerator, so it's broken.

\*\*\*

59 Exercise 2

...に <sup>ことば</sup>言葉 <sup>い</sup>を 入れなさい

- ① To go from my house to the museum, you cross three large avenues.  
 ..... iku no ni, .....  
 .....
- ② My little sister, who is abroad for nine months, sent me a long letter.  
 ..... mae kara gaikoku .. ...  
 ..... okutte .....
- ③ I wanted to go find Mr. Takemoto, but because my car was broken, I was really annoyed.  
 takemoto san .. ... ,  
 ..... shimat. , .....
- ④ During summer vacation, my grandmother used to make me cake every day.  
 natsu yasumi ni wa, .....  
 .....

\*\*\*

ひら が な れんしゅう  
平仮名の練習  
hira ga na no ren shū

Hiragana Exercises

(hiragana / [relation] / exercise)

が ぎ ぐ げ ご

GA

GI

GU

GE

GO

- ⑤ The old woman across from me said: "Perhaps it might rain tonight?"  
 " . . . . . " . . mukai no  
 obaasan ga . . . . .

### Answers to Exercise 2

- ① uchi kara bijutsukan e -, oodoori o mittsu watarimasu.  
 ② kyūkagetsu - ni iru imōto ga nagai tegami o - kuremashita. ③  
 - o mukae ni iku tsumori deshita ga, kuruma ga koshō shite - te,  
 komarimashita. ④ -, mainichi obaasan ga o kashi o tsukutte kuremasu.  
 ⑤ yoru ame ga furu kashira to - iimashita.

\*\*\*

### か と 書き取り kakitori - Dictation

- ① gogo (afternoon) ② eiga (the movies) ③ kuge (Court noble)  
 ④ kigu (device) ⑤ ikaga (how) ⑥ gaikoku (abroad; foreign  
 country) ⑦ kagi (key)

### Answers

- ① ごご ② えいが ③ くげ ④ きぐ ⑤ いかが ⑥ がいこく  
 ⑦ かぎ

### Second Wave: 第十課 (Lesson 10)

しん かん せん  
 新幹線  
 shin kan sen

- 1 – 先週 新幹線 で 九州 の 孫  
 sen shū shin kan sen de kyū shū no mago  
 の ところ まで 行きました。①②  
 no to ko ro ma de i ki ma shi ta.
- 2 – 新幹線 は 初めて でした か。  
 shin kan sen wa haji me te de shi ta ka.
- 3 – はい、そう です。とても 楽しかった  
 ha i, sō de su. to te mo tanoshi ka t ta  
 です。  
 de su.
- 4 六時間半 しか かかりません でした。③  
 roku ji kanhan shi ka ka ka ri ma se n deshi ta.
- 5 昔 と 比べると ね。④  
 mukashi to kura be ru to ne.
- 6 今 の 世 の 中 は 変わりました。  
 ima no yo no naka wa ka wa ri ma shita.

## Notes

- ① 九州 **kyūshū**, the southernmost of the four main islands of the Japanese archipelago (aside from the hundreds of islets of all sizes). From north to south: Hokkaidō, Honshū, Shikoku, Kyūshū.
- ② 新幹線 **shinkansen**. Connecting Tōkyō to the south since 1964, this train can cover the 680 miles (1100 km) that separate Tōkyō from the large cities of Kyūshū in six and a half hours. Another ▶

**The Shinkansen (The Bullet Train)**

*(Shinkansen)*

- 1 – Last week I took the Shinkansen to my grandchildren's house in Kyūshū.  
*(last week / Shinkansen / [means] / Kyūshū / [relation] / grandchild / [relation] / place / up to / went)*
- 2 – Was it your first time on the Shinkansen?  
*(Shinkansen / [announce] / for the first time / it was / [question])*
- 3 – Yes. It was very pleasant.  
*(yes / it's so) (very / was pleasant / it is)*
- 4 It only took six and a half hours.  
*(six-hour-half / only / did not take)*
- 5 When you compare it with the past!  
*(the past / with / compare / when / [agreement])*
- 6 The world today sure has changed!  
*(now / [relation] / world / [relation] / within / [announce] / changed)*



- ▶ line joins Tōkyō and the northern edge of Honshū. Surpassed in speed by France's TGV, it still is the king of departures: 120 departures daily in all directions, with 150 in busy times.
- ③ しか **shika**, cf. Lesson 30, note 4.
- ④ For certain verbs expressing relations or comparison, と **to** is used to introduce the normal complement, or what “with” or “than” perform in English. cf. Lesson 62, exercise 1, item 5.

- 7 車内しゃない から 電話でんわ も かけました。  
 sha nai ka ra den wa mo ka ke ma shi ta.
- 8 しかしまど 窓が 開あかないのは 残念ざんねん です。⑤  
 shi ka shi mado ga a ka na i no wa zan nen de su.
- 9— それは 冷房れいぼう の ため でしょう。⑥  
 so re wa rei bō no ta me de shō.
- 10— 確たしかに そう でしょう ね。外そと は  
 tashi ka ni sō de shō ne. soto wa  
 とても 蒸し暑むあつ かった の ですが、  
 to te mo mu shi atsu ka t ta no de su ga,  
 新幹線しんかんせん の 中なか は 冷房れいぼう の おかげ  
 shin kan sen no naka wa rei bō no o ka ge  
 で、涼すずしくて 少すこし 寒さむい くらい  
 de, suzushi ku te suko shi samu i ku ra i  
 でした。  
 de shi ta.
- 11 椅子いす も 座り心地すわごち が よくて、横浜よこはま  
 i su mo suwa rigoko chi ga yo ku te, yoko hama  
 から 京きょうと都とまで 眠ねむって しまいました。⑦⑧⑨  
 ka ra kyō to made nemu t te shi ma i ma shi ta.

## Notes

- ⑤ の **no**, cf. Lesson 47, note 4.
- ⑥ ため **tame**, after a noun, has two meanings. We've already come across one: "for, the intention of" (cf. Lesson 16, item 11 and exercise 1, item 4; Lesson 38, items 10 and 11 and exercise 1, item 4). The other meaning, used here, is *because of*.
- ⑦ Take another look at Lesson 35, the end of paragraph 3. The only adjective a bit irregular is いい **ii**, *to be good*, whose other forms are made from another version of the same adjective よい **yoi**. That's what happens with the て **te** form of this ▶

- 7 I even made a telephone call from the train.  
(*inside of vehicle / from / telephone / even / made function*)
- 8 But it's too bad that the windows don't open.  
(*however / window / [subject] / not open / fact of / [announce] / disappointment / it is*)
- 9 – That must be because of the air conditioning.  
(*that one / [announce] / air conditioning / [relation] / cause / that must be*)
- 10 – That's certainly so. Outside it was very hot and humid, but inside the Shinkansen, thanks to the air conditioning, it was cool, almost a bit cold.  
(*sure / [adverbial] / so / that must be / [agreement]*) (*outside / [announce] / very / was hot and humid / it's that / but // Shinkansen / [relation] / inside / [announce] / air conditioning / [relation] / thanks / [means] / be cool // a little / be cold / almost / it was*)
- 11 The seats are so comfortable, I slept from Yokohama to Kyōto.  
(*seat / also / sitting-feeling / [subject] / be good // Yokohama / from / Kyōto / up to / sleep / did completely*)



- ▶ adjective (cf. Lesson 54, note 9). The て **te** is added to the く **ku** form of the adjective, so for いい **ii**, it's よく **yoku**.
- ⑧ Yokohama is roughly 20 miles (30 km) southwest from the center of Tōkyō. As a port city, it was one of the first cities open to the west during the opening of the country in the nineteenth century. Yokohama still maintains a special atmosphere.
- ⑨ Kyōto succeeded Nara (cf. Lesson 57, note 1) as Japan's capital in 794. About 310 miles (500 km) from Tōkyō, it has more monuments than any other city in the country: the imperial palace, a plethora of Buddhist temples, and multitudes of Shinto sanctuaries. It is from Kyōto that Japan's refined court culture developed and spread throughout Japan.

12 あなた も 一度 乗って 見たら  
 a na ta mo ichi do no t te mi ta ra

いかが ですか。⑩  
 i ka ga de su ka.

13- 私 は 毎週 仕事 で 新幹線  
 watakushi wa mai shū shi goto de shin kan sen

で 大阪 まで 行って います。⑪  
 de oo saka ma de i t te i ma su.

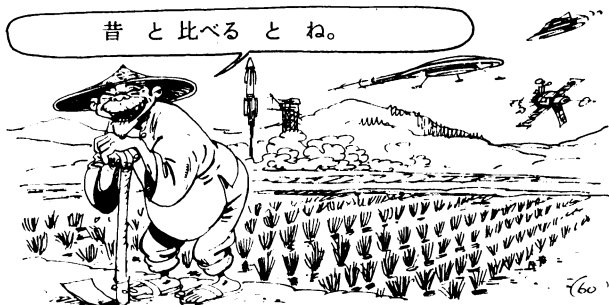
## Notes

- ⑩ 乗って 見たら **notte mitara**, cf. Lesson 51, note 2. Here we have a combination of the て **te** form + みる **miru**, which creates a new meaning. 乗る **noru**: to ascend onto a vehicle, 乗って みる **notte miru**, to ascend to see, to try out. The suffix たら **tara** means *if, when*.
- ⑪ Ōsaka, right next to Kyōtō (the two cities form the megalopolis of the Kansai region [cf. Lesson 32, note 1]), is the large merchant city that dominated the Edo era (cf. Lesson 17, note 3). This is where Japan's economic modernization and prosperity took off in the seventeenth century.

\*\*\*



- 12 And you, what would you say to taking it once? 60  
(you / too / one time / get in / if you did to see // how / it is /  
[question])
- 13 – Me, I take the Shinkansen to Ōsaka on work  
each week.  
(me / [announce] / each week / work / [means] / Shinkansen /  
[means] / Ōsaka / up to / go)



\*\*\*

## 練習

## Exercise 1

- ① この <sup>いなか</sup> 田舎 の <sup>た</sup> 食 <sup>もの</sup> べ物 は <sup>まち</sup> 町の  
 kono inaka no tabemono wa machi no  
<sup>た</sup> 食 <sup>もの</sup> べ物 と <sup>くら</sup> 比べる と、<sup>ずいぶん</sup> 随分 <sup>しんせん</sup> 新鮮  
 tabemono to kuraberu to, zuibun shinsen  
 で、おいしい です ね。  
 de, oishii desu ne.
- ② <sup>うち</sup> 内田 <sup>だ</sup> さんは <sup>じこ</sup> 事故 に <sup>あ</sup> 会った そう  
 uchida san wa jiko ni atta sō  
 ですが、<sup>きつと</sup> きっと <sup>すごい</sup> すごい <sup>スピード</sup> スピード で  
 desu ga, kitto sugoi supīdo de  
<sup>はし</sup> 走って <sup>いた</sup> いた <sup>ため</sup> ため でしょう。  
 hashitte ita tame deshō.
- ③ <sup>みち</sup> 道 が <sup>こんな</sup> こんなに <sup>混ん</sup> 混んで <sup>いる</sup> いる の  
 michi ga konna ni konde iru no  
 は <sup>せんきょ</sup> 選挙 が <sup>ある</sup> ある <sup>ため</sup> ため でしょう。  
 wa senkyo ga aru tame deshō.

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

...に <sup>ことば</sup> 言葉 を <sup>い</sup> 入れなさい

- ① The first time that I took the Shinkansen, it was in 1964, the  
 year it was built.  
 ....., shinkansen  
 ga dekita ... .. nen .....
- ② The play was interesting, but because the kids said they were  
 sleepy, we came back home quickly.  
 shibai ....., ..... nemui  
 nemui ....., .....

- ④ お箸<sup>はし</sup>で食<sup>た</sup>べてみたら、どうですか。  
o hashi de tabete mitara, dō desu ka.
- ⑤ おととい<sup>よる</sup>の夜<sup>よる</sup>は、皆<sup>みんな</sup>留守<sup>るす</sup>で、  
ototoi no yoru wa, minna rusu de,  
雨<sup>あめ</sup>も降<sup>ふ</sup>っていて、家<sup>いえ</sup>の中<sup>なか</sup>は  
ame mo futte ite, ie no naka wa  
寒<sup>さむ</sup>くて、大<sup>たい</sup>変<sup>へん</sup>さびしかった<sup>さび</sup>です。  
samukute, taihen sabishikatta desu.

### Answers to Exercise 1

① When you compare the products from here in the countryside to those in the city, they are so fresh and much better. ② It seems that Mr. Uchida had an accident, it's surely because he was driving at a crazy speed. ③ If the streets are busy, no doubt it's because of the elections. ④ And what if you tried eating with chopsticks? ⑤ The night before last, the whole family went out, it rained, the house was cold, it was really bad.

\*\*\*

- ③ Last winter was very cold.  
.....

- ④ On this island, the summers are cool, the winters are mild, it's a place where it's good to live.  
....., ....., ..  
....., sumigokochi .....

- ⑤ To build this high school, it only took five and a half months.  
..... no ni, .....

### Answers to Exercise 2

① hajimete shinkansen ni notta no wa, – sen kyū hyaku roku jū yon – deshita. ② – wa omoshirokatta noni, kodomo ga – to itta node, hayaku kaeru koto ni narimashita. ③ kyonen no fuyu wa totemo samukatta no desu. ④ kono shima wa, natsu wa suzushikute, fuyu wa atatakakute, – ga ii desu. ⑤ kono kōtōgakkō o tateru –, gokagetsu han shika kakarimasen deshita.

## 平仮名の練習

hira ga na no ren shū

## Hiragana Exercises

(hiragana / [relation] / exercise)

さ

SA

し

SHI

す

SU

せ

SE

そ

SO

## 61 第六十一課 dai roku jū ik ka

## 返事

hen ji

- 1 - 手紙を確かに夕べ受け取りました。  
te gami o tashi ka ni yū be u ke to ri mashi ta.

ありがとうございました。  
a ri ga tō go za i mashi ta.

- 2 電話で速達で送ってくれた  
den wa de soku tatsu de oku t te ku re ta

と 言って いた ので、毎日  
to i t te i ta no de, mai nichi

ポストを見に行き、楽しみ  
po su to o mi ni i t te, tano shi mi

に して いました。  
ni shi te i ma shi ta.

か と  
書き取り kakitori – Dictation

① saigo (last) ② sasou (invite) ③ shikashi (however) ④ seki (cough) ⑤ isu (seat) ⑥ asoko (over there) ⑦ sekai (world) ⑧ kasu (lend)

Answers

① さいご ② さそう ③ しかし ④ せき ⑤ いす ⑥ あそこ  
⑦ せかい ⑧ かす

Second Wave: 第十一課 (Lesson 11)

---

Lesson Sixty-One 61

Reply  
(reply)

- 1 – I received your letter last night. Thank you.  
(letter / [object] / exact / [adverbial] / last night / received)  
(thank you)
- 2 Because you told me on the phone that you were sending it express, I looked forward to it and checked my mailbox every day.  
(telephone / [means] / express mail / [means] / send / did for me / [quotation] / said / because // each day / mailbox / [object] / look / [goal] / go // happiness / [goal] / did)

- 3 ところが <sup>でんわ</sup>電話 を もらって から  
to ko ro ga den wa o mo ra t te ka ra  
とお か <sup>ご</sup>十日 後 に やつと 着きました。  
too ka go ni ya t to tsu ki ma shi ta.
- 4 おかしい と 思って、封筒 を よく  
o ka shi i to omo t te, fū tō o yo ku  
<sup>み</sup>見たら、住所 が 半分 しか  
mi ta ra, jū sho ga han bun shi ka  
<sup>か</sup>書いて ありません でした。  
ka i te a ri ma se n de shi ta.
- 5 東京都、北区、西ヶ原 までは ちゃんと  
tō kyō tō, kita ku, nishi ga hara ma de wa cha n to  
<sup>か</sup>書いて ありました が、その 後  
ka i te a ri ma shi ta ga, so no ato  
<sup>ばんち</sup>番地 が 抜けて いました。①②③  
ban chi ga nu ke te i ma shi ta.
- 6 しかも、それでも 着いた の です  
shi ka mo, so re de mo tsu i ta no de su  
<sup>わたし</sup>から、私 も <sup>ゆうめい</sup>有名 な の です ね。  
ka ra, watashi mo yū mei na no de su ne.

## Notes

- ① Japanese addresses are written in the opposite order as ours, going from most general to most specific (the same as Japanese names). First the city, then the district, then the neighborhood, then the house numbers, and finally the name of the recipient. 東京都 <sup>とうきょうと</sup>tōkyōto is the postal name of the city of Tōkyō, which literally means “Tōkyō-capital.”
- ② 北区 <sup>きたく</sup>kita-ku, literally “North District.” 西ヶ原 <sup>にし ほん</sup>nishi ga hara, literally “West Plains.” ▶

- 3 But it finally arrived ten days after I'd received your telephone call.

*(but / telephone / [object] / receive / since that // ten-day-after / [time] / finally / arrived)*

- 4 Finding this strange, I took a good look at the envelope and only half the address had been written!

*(be strange / [quotation] / think /// envelope / [object] / well / if looking // address / [subject] / half / only / was not written)*

- 5 Tōkyō, Kita-ku, Nishigahara, up till there it was written correctly, but after that the numbers were missing.

*(Tōkyō / Kita-ku / Nishigahara / up to / [emphasis] / correctly / was written / but // following / house numbers / [subject] / be missing)*

- 6 That the letter arrived despite all that, I must be well known!

*(but / despite that / arrived / it's that / because // me / also / famous / it is / it's that / [agreement])*



- ▶ ③ はんち 番地 **banchi**. The large cities are divided into districts, called く **ku**. These are then divided into quarters, or neighborhoods. Foreigners often find the Japanese address system a bit tortuous, as there are no street names as such, but each group of houses has its own number, after which all houses have a number, based on the order in which they were built. Neighboring houses, therefore, will very often not have consecutive numbers. For adventure-lovers, try finding a house armed with nothing but its address! Start early, and remember to drink lots of fluids!

7 <sup>にほん</sup>日本 <sup>の</sup>の <sup>ゆうびん</sup>郵便 <sup>はいたつ</sup>配達 は サービス  
ni hon no yū bin hai tatsu wa sā bi su

が いい の です ね。④  
ga i i no de su ne.

8 わざわざ <sup>じかん</sup>時間 を <sup>かけて</sup>かけて <sup>さが</sup>搜して  
wa za wa za ji kan o ka ke te saga shi te

くれた の です から。⑤  
ku re ta no de su ka ra.

9 この <sup>つぎ</sup>次 は、<sup>いそ</sup>急ぎ の <sup>てがみ</sup>手紙 に  
ko no tsugi wa, iso gi no te gami ni  
は、<sup>そくたつ</sup>速達 で <sup>おく</sup>送る より も、<sup>じゅうしょ</sup>住所  
wa, soku tatsu de oku ru yo ri mo, jū sho  
を <sup>せいかく</sup>正確 に <sup>か</sup>書いて <sup>くだ</sup>下さい ね。  
o sei kaku ni ka i te kuda sa i ne.

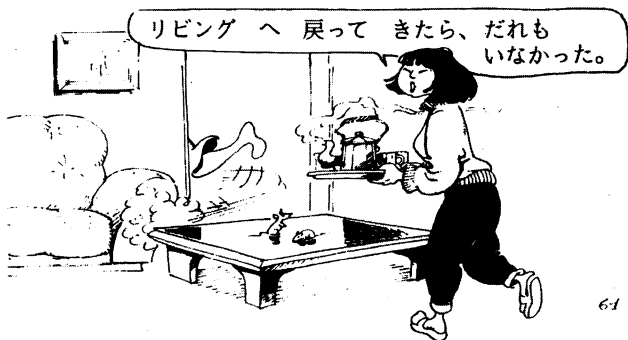
## Notes

- ④ サービス **sābisu**, from the English *service*, is one of the pillars of the relationship between Japanese business-owners and their clients: all that facilitates the purchase of a product is a service, from framework to organization, from attitude to advice, from little gifts to...
- ⑤ わざわざ **wazawaza** characterizes the fact that someone has gone out of his or her way for you, above and beyond what would ordinarily be expected. This explains its use in formulas of politeness in Lesson 53, item 14.

\*\*\*



- 7 The Japanese postal service is pretty good!  
*(Japan / [relation] / mail-delivery / [announce] / service / [subject] / be good / it's that / [agreement])*
- 8 Indeed, they took the time and trouble to find me back.  
*(give themselves trouble / time / [object] / use // look for / did for me / it's that / because)*
- 9 Next time, for an urgent letter, rather than sending it by express, just write the address correctly!  
*(following / [emphasis] / urgency / [relation] / letter / [goal] / [emphasis] / express / [means] / send / rather than // address / [object] / exact / [adverbial] / write / [agreement])*



\*\*\*

61 れんしゅう  
練習

Exercise 1

- ① 大阪おおさか に 着ついて から あまり  
oosaka ni tsuite kara amari  
いそがしくて、川口かわぐち さん に 会あう  
isogashikute, kawaguchi san ni au  
こと も できません でした。  
koto mo dekimasen deshita.
- ② 手紙てがみ を 送おくって から 三ヶ月さんげつ  
tegami o okutte kara sankagetsu  
経たちました が、返事へんじ が 全然ぜんぜん 来きません。  
tachimashita ga, henji ga zenzen kimasen.
- ③ 遠くとお から 見みた 時とき は 広ひろく  
tooku kara mita toki wa hiroku  
見みえました が、近ちかく から 見みたら、  
miemashita ga, chikaku kara mitara,  
狭せまかった です。  
semakatta desu.

\*\*\*

Exercise 2

...に言葉ことばを 入いれなさい

- ① I went to see her, but they told me she had left two days after entering the hospital.  
..... , .....  
futsuka .. ni kaetta ..
- ② Last night, when I looked North, I saw a strange machine take off.  
..... tara, .....  
..... iku .. .. miemashita

- ④ リビングへ <sup>もど</sup>戻って きたら、もう  
ribingu e modotte kitara, mō

だれも いなかった。  
daremo inakatta.

- ⑤ 一度に <sup>いちど</sup>たくさん <sup>やす</sup>休む より も、<sup>すこ</sup>少し  
ichido ni takusan yasumu yori mo, sukoshi

ずつ <sup>やす</sup>休みを <sup>と</sup>取る <sup>ほう</sup>方が いい です。  
zutsu yasumi o toru hō ga ii desu.

### Answers to Exercise 1

① I've been so busy since I arrived in Ōsaka, I haven't even been able to see Miss Kawaguchi. ② Since I sent my letter, three months have passed and not a single reply has come. ③ When you look from far away, it seemed so wide, but looked at close up, it was so narrow. ④ When I came back to the living room, there was nobody there. ⑤ Rather than rest a lot at one time, it's better to take small breaks often.

\*\*\*

- ③ Correctly write your name, address, nationality, and profession right here.

.....  
.....

- ④ This time I only stayed ten days.

.....

- ⑤ Since I was born, I've never heard such an extraordinary story!

..... **konna ni** .....

### Answers to Exercise 2

① o mimai ni ikimashita ga, nyūin shite kara – go – sō desu. ② yūbe kita no hō o mi –, okashii kikai ga tobitatte – no ga –. ③ namae to jūsho to kokuseki to shokugyō o koko ni seikaku ni kaite kudasai. ④ konkai tooka shika tomarimasen deshita. ⑤ umarete kara – mezurashii hanashi wa kiita koto ga arimasen.

## 平仮名の練習

hira ga na no ren shū

## Hiragana Exercises

(hiragana / [relation] / exercise)

ざ じ ず ぜ ぞ ん

ZA JI ZU ZE ZO N

62 第六十二課 dai roku jū ni ka

銭湯  
sen tō

1 - 今私が下宿している  
ima watashi ga ge shuku shi te i ru

ところはお風呂もシャワー  
to ko ro wa o fu ro mo sha wā

もありません。①②  
mo a ri ma se n.

2 - 不便でしょう。  
fu ben de shō.

## Notes

- ① お風呂 o furo. The bath is one of the most important moments of the Japanese day. Always taken very hot—around 100° F (40° C)—it lets you stay warm in winter and (though somewhat paradoxically) keeps you cool in the summer. Try ▶

か と  
書き取り kakitori – Dictation

- ① jiko (accident) ② shizuoka (city name) ③ suzuki (family name)  
④ zenzen (absolutely) ⑤ suizokukan (aquarium) ⑥ anzen (safety)  
⑦ oji (my uncle)

Answers

- ① じこ ② しずおか ③ すずき ④ ぜんぜん ⑤ すいぞくかん  
⑥ あんぜん ⑦ おじ

Second Wave: 第十二課 (Lesson 12)

Lesson Sixty-Two 62

The Public Baths  
(public bath)

- 1 – Where I'm staying right now there is neither bath nor shower.  
(now / me / [subject] / rent-do / place / [announce] / [familiarity]-bath / also / shower / also / not exist)
- 2 – That must not be very convenient!  
(inconvenient / that must be)
- ▶ it out! The specialty of the Japanese bath is that it is divided between two distinct functions: washing, which is always done outside the tub, and then when ready, soaking in the tub where the water can be used by all in the family.
- ② We speak of 下宿 <sup>げしゆく</sup> geshuku when we are renting a room in someone else's home, where the landlord or landlady lives there as well.

- 3 - ええ、でも <sup>ちか</sup>すぐ <sup>せんとう</sup>近くに 銭湯 が  
 e e, demo su gu chika ku ni sen tō ga  
 あります から、<sup>まいばん</sup>毎晩 <sup>い</sup>行きます。  
 a ri ma su ka ra, mai ban i ki ma su.
- 4 その <sup>せんとう</sup>銭湯 は <sup>りっぱ</sup>立派 で、<sup>ゆぶね</sup>湯槽 は  
 so no sen tō wa rip pa de, yu bune wa  
<sup>ふか</sup>深く、<sup>ひろびろ</sup>ひろびろ と <sup>して</sup>しています。③④  
 fuka ku, hi ro bi ro to shi te i ma su.
- 5 六時 <sup>ごろ</sup>ごろ <sup>い</sup>行く と <sup>まんいん</sup>満員 です  
 roku ji go ro i ku to man in de su  
 が、<sup>よる</sup>夜の <sup>じゅうじ</sup>十時 <sup>すぎ</sup>すぎ は <sup>すいて</sup>すいて  
 ga, yoru no jū ji su gi wa su i te  
 いて、その <sup>ひろ</sup>広い <sup>ゆぶね</sup>湯槽 に <sup>つ</sup>浸かって  
 i te, so no hiro i yu bune ni tsu ka t te  
 いる と、<sup>きもち</sup>いい <sup>きもち</sup>気持 に なります。  
 i ru to, i i ki mochi ni na ri ma su.
- 6 それに <sup>べんり</sup>便利 な <sup>せつび</sup>設備 が いろいろ  
 so re ni ben ri na setsu bi ga i ro i ro  
 あります。  
 a ri ma su.

## Notes

- ③ Japan is far from having all residences equipped with showers and bathtubs, so even in the large cities public baths are ubiquitous. First there is a large room lined with showers, and then the <sup>ゆぶね</sup>湯槽 **yubune**, hot water tub, where visitors can soak in the hot water. The tub looks more something like a miniature swimming pool (6 to 9 ft. x 12 to 15 ft., or 2 to 3 m x 4 to 5 m) than a bathtub. ▶

- 3 – No, but just next door there is a public bath, so I go there every night.

(yes / however / immediate / near / [place] / public bath / [subject] / exist / because // every night / go)

- 4 This public bath is sensational, the hot water tub is deep and spacious.

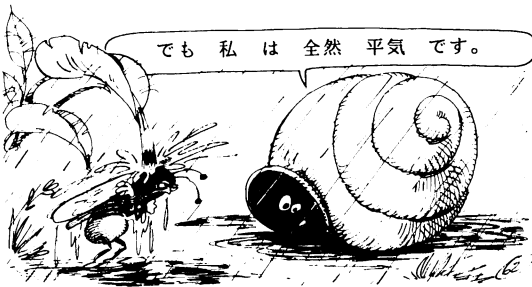
(this one / public bath / [announce] / sensational / it is /// hot water tub / [announce] / be deep // spacious-do)

- 5 If you go around six o'clock, it's very crowded, but after ten o'clock at night it's empty, and when you dive into the hot water tub, it's so great!

(six-o'clock-around/go/when//crowded/it is/but////night/[relation] / ten-o'clock-after / [emphasis] / be empty /// this one / be wide / hot water tub / [goal] / dive / when // be good / feeling / [goal] / become)

- 6 What's more, there are all sorts of practical installations.

(moreover / practical / it is / installation / [subject] / of all sorts / exist)



- ④ 深く、… **fukaku**,... cf. Lesson 58, note 2. When adjectives act as verbs, the て **te** form is not obligatory. The simple く **ku** form means the same thing, indicating that one has just listed the first quality, and that another one is soon to come: *is deep and...*

- 7 たとえば、お <sup>ふ</sup>風呂 <sup>ろ</sup>に <sup>はい</sup>入 <sup>て</sup>い <sup>る</sup>る  
 ta to e ba, o fu ro ni hai t te i ru  
<sup>あいだ</sup>間 <sup>げん かん</sup>に、<sup>お</sup>玄関 <sup>の</sup>ところ <sup>に</sup>置 <sup>い</sup>て  
 aida ni, genkan no to ko ro ni o i te  
 ある <sup>せん たく き</sup>洗濯機 <sup>で</sup> <sup>せん たく</sup>洗濯 <sup>が</sup> <sup>で</sup> <sup>き</sup>ます。  
 a ru sen taku ki de sen taku ga de ki ma su.
- 8- <sup>せんとう</sup>でも <sup>と</sup>銭湯 <sup>は</sup>と <sup>は</sup>、<sup>だんじょ</sup>男女 <sup>べつべつ</sup>別々 <sup>に</sup>  
 de mo sen tō to wa, dan jo betsu betsu ni  
<sup>はい</sup>入 <sup>る</sup>に <sup>し</sup>て <sup>も</sup>、<sup>し</sup>知 <sup>ら</sup>ない <sup>ひと</sup>人  
 hai ru ni shi te mo, shi ra na i hito  
 の <sup>まえ</sup>前 <sup>は</sup>で <sup>は</sup>裸 <sup>に</sup>なる <sup>ところ</sup>所 <sup>で</sup>す。  
 no mae de hadaka ni na ru tokoro de su.
- 9 <sup>わたし</sup>私 <sup>だ</sup>っ <sup>たら</sup>、<sup>はず</sup>か <sup>しい</sup>い <sup>で</sup>す <sup>ね</sup>。⑤  
 watashi da t ta ra, ha zu ka shi i de su ne.
- 10- <sup>わたし</sup>でも <sup>は</sup>私 <sup>は</sup> <sup>ぜんぜん</sup>全然 <sup>へい き</sup>平気 <sup>で</sup>す。  
 de mo watashi wa zen zen hei ki de su.
- 11 <sup>めがね</sup>眼鏡 <sup>を</sup> <sup>と</sup>取 <sup>り</sup>ま <sup>す</sup> <sup>か</sup>ら、<sup>まわ</sup>回 <sup>り</sup> <sup>の</sup>  
 me gane o to ri ma su ka ra, mawa ri no  
<sup>ひと</sup>人 <sup>が</sup> <sup>き</sup>気 <sup>に</sup> <sup>な</sup>り <sup>ま</sup>せ <sup>ん</sup>。  
 hito ga ki ni na ri ma se n.

## Notes

- ⑤ In the preceding lessons we saw a verb form built with the suffix **たら** *tara*, added on to verbs with only one root (cf. Lesson 60, item 12; and lesson 61, item 14). For verbs with multiple roots, the suffix gets added on to the *i* root, with the same changes as ▶

\*\*\*



- 7 For example, while you're in the bath, you can do your laundry in the washing machine in the coatroom.  
*(for example / [familiarity]-bath / [place] / enter / while // entrance / [relation] / place / [place] / be placed / washing machine / [means] / laundry / [subject] / be possible)*
- 8 – But in the public bath, even though men and women are separated, you have to be naked in front of people you don't know.  
*(but / public bath / so-called / [announce] / man-woman / separately / [adverbial] / enter / [goal] / do / even if // not know / person / [relation] / before / [place] / naked / [goal] / become / place / it is)*
- 9 If that were me, I wouldn't dare!  
*(me / if it is // be ashamed / it is / [agreement])*
- 10 – However I don't mind at all.  
*(however / me / [announce] / completely / indifferent / it is)*
- 11 I took off my glasses, so the people around me don't bother me at all.  
*(glasses / [object] / take / because // edge / [relation] / person / [subject] / not be the subject of preoccupation)*



- ▶ in て **te** or た **ta** verb forms (cf. Lesson 56). In the case of です **desu**, *it is*, the suffix gets added to the low degree form, た **da**, with a slight phonetic variation: たったら **dattara**, *if it were, if it is, when it is*.

\*\*\*

62 れんしゅう  
練習

Exercise 1

- ① 庭つき の 一軒家 だったら、そう  
niwatsuki no ikkenya dattara, sō  
簡単 に みつかりません。  
kantan ni mitsukarimasen.
- ② 外国 へ 行ったら、いろいろ 覚える  
gaikoku e ittara, iroiro oboeru  
こと が できる でしょう。  
koto ga dekiru deshō.
- ③ この 車 は あまり 古い から、売る  
kono kuruma wa amari furui kara, uru  
こと も 使う こと も できません。  
koto mo tsukau koto mo dekimasen.

\*\*\*

Exercise 2

...に 言葉 を 入れなさい

- ① Since the war ended, more than fifty years have passed.  
..... owat. ...., .. ijō .  
.....
- ② While I was in the bath, the telephone rang I don't know how  
many times, and I was really annoyed.  
....., ..  
kakatte kite, .....
- ③ This apartment has neither kitchen nor bathroom.  
.....

④ 蒸し暑い 時 にお風呂 に入る  
 mushiatsui toki ni o furo ni hairu

の は 気持 が いい です。  
 no wa kimochi ga ii desu.

⑤ 向かい の 電気屋 さんの 孫 は  
 mukai no denkiya san no mago wa

去年 の 三月 ごろ から 僕 と  
 kyonen no sangatsu goro kara boku to

同じ 事務所 に 勤めはじめました。  
 onaji jimusho ni tsutomehajimemashita.

### Answers to Exercise 1

- ① If it's a one family house with a garden, it won't be easy to find.  
 ② When you go abroad you can surely learn all sorts of things.  
 ③ This car being too old, I can neither sell it nor use it. ④ When it's hot and humid, it feels good to take a bath. ⑤ The electrician's grandson on the other side began to work in the same office as me around March of last year.

\*\*\*

- ④ Even if you use robots, if there isn't anybody to make them work, you can't do anything.

....., ..... ugokasu  
 ....., .....

- ⑤ Even though I never had the intention of buying anything, because it was cheap, I ended up buying all sorts of things.

mono o ..... de wa nakatta ....., .....  
 ....., .....

### Answers to Exercise 2

- ① sensō ga – te kara, mō go jū nen – tachimashita. ② o furo ni haitte iru aida ni, denwa ga nandomo –, komarimashita. ③ kono apāto wa daidokoro mo o furo mo arimasen. ④ robotto o tsukau ni shite mo, sore o – hito ga inai to, nanimo dekimasen. ⑤ – kau tsumori – noni, yasukatta node, iroiro katte shimaimashita.

## 平仮名の練習

hira ga na no ren shū

## Hiragana Exercises

*(hiragana / [relation] / exercise)*

た

TA

ち

CHI

つ

TSU

て

TE

と

TO

## まとめ

## matome

## Revision and Notes

1. After the great blowout of an explanation concerning the て **te** and た **ta** forms, there are still (amazingly enough!) a few points to clarify. Speaking: this will come, we hope, if you conscientiously go back to Volume 1 for the Second Wave assignments after each new lesson.

Writing: here as well you're on the right track.

But counting: can you **count**? Not in English, of course, but in **Japanese**? If the answer is no, it's because you didn't pay attention to the page numbers of Volume 1! But you have the right –if not the duty– to go hurry back and take a big look at what's there. Flip from page one onwards and take in the numbers.

But before going too far, there's something important you should know: in Japan, they simultaneously use **two numerical systems**

か と  
書き取り kakitori – Dictation

- ① genjitsuteki (realist) ② chikatetsu (subway) ③ ototoi (day before last) ④ tatsu (to be standing) ⑤ chiisai (to be small) ⑥ tai-zai (stay) ⑦ kantan (simple) ⑧ kotoshi (this year) ⑨ shichi (seven) ⑩ soshite (and then)

Answers

- ① げんじつてき ② ちかてつ ③ おととい ④ たつ ⑤ ちいさい  
⑥ たいざい ⑦ かんたん ⑧ ことし ⑨ しち ⑩ そして

Second Wave: 第十三課 (Lesson 13)

## Lesson Sixty-Six 63

for counting:

– **one system originally Japanese**, which contains a very limited number of digits, from 1 to 10, plus a few others. Even though it's limited, it's still very common in the daily life of a Japanese speaker (after all, we rarely count above ten in casual speech except to talk about age... and for money!)

– **one system originally Chinese**, which, on the contrary, allows you to count from 1 to  $10^{36}$  (that's 1 with 36 zeros), and even more than that!

It's obviously this Chinese-based system we use here to count our pages and lessons. It's also what we'll cover in this chapter here, moving on to the originally Japanese system later.

**The Chinese System** is quite simple in principle, as you've probably already noted. All you have to do is know the numbers 1 through 10, plus the numbers for 100; 1000; 10,000; and so on, and you can count nearly to infinity!

Let's recapitulate our numbers:

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <small>いち</small><br>一 <b>ichi</b> 1                | <small>ろく</small><br>六 <b>roku</b> 6                     |
| <small>に</small><br>二 <b>ni</b> 2                   | <small>しち/なな</small><br>七 <b>shichi</b> or <b>nana</b> 7 |
| <small>さん</small><br>三 <b>san</b> 3                 | <small>はち</small><br>八 <b>hachi</b> 8                    |
| <small>し/よん</small><br>四 <b>shi</b> or <b>yon</b> 4 | <small>く/きゅう</small><br>九 <b>ku</b> or <b>kyū</b> 9      |
| <small>ご</small><br>五 <b>go</b> 5                   | <small>じゅう</small><br>十 <b>jū</b> 10                     |

and then:

|   |
|---|
| <small>ひゃく</small><br>百 <b>hyaku</b> 100                        |
| <small>せん</small><br>千 <b>sen</b> 1,000                         |
| <small>まん</small><br>万 <b>man</b> 1,0000 (ten thousand)         |
| <small>おく</small><br>億 <b>oku</b> 1,0000,0000 (hundred million) |
| <small>ちよう</small><br>兆 <b>chō</b> 1,0000,0000,0000 (billion)   |

After that, there are only two principles:

a) when a number comes to the left of 十 **jū**, 百 **hyaku**, 千 **sen**, 万 **man**, 億 **oku**, or 兆 **chō**, it indicates a multiplication:

十 **jū** 10, 二十 **ni jū**  $2 \times 10 = 20$

九十 **kyū jū**  $9 \times 10 = 90$

百 **hyaku** 100, 四百 **yon hyaku**  $4 \times 100 = 400$ , 七百 **nana hyaku**  $7 \times 100 = 700$ .

千 **sen** 1,000; 五千 **go sen**  $5 \times 1,000 = 5,000$ ; 六千 **roku sen**  $6 \times 1,000 = 6,000$ .

一万 **ichi man** 1,0000; 二万 **ni man**  $2 \times 1,0000 = 2,0000$  (or as we would otherwise write: 20,000); 八万 **hachi man**  $8 \times 1,0000 = 8,0000$  (or 80,000); 百万 **hyaku man**  $100 \times 1,000 = 100,0000$  (one million, or 1,000,000), 七千万 **nana sen man**  $7 \times 1,000 \times 1,0000 = 7,000,0000$  (seventy million, or 70,000,000), etc., etc.

b) when a number comes to the right of 十 **jū**, 百 **hyaku**, 千 **sen**, 万 **man**, 億 **oku**, or 兆 **chō**, it indicates addition:

十 **jū** 10, 十三 **jū san**  $10 + 3 = 13$ , 十八 **jū hachi**  $10 + 8 = 18$ .

百 **hyaku**, 百一 **hyaku ichi**  $100 + 1 = 101$ , 九百五 **kyū hyaku go**  $(9 \times 100) + 5 = 905$ .

103 • hyaku san

千 **sen** 1,000; 千二百 **sen ni hyaku**  $1,000 + 2 \times 100 = 1,200$ , 千七百八十九 **sen nana hyaku hachi jū kyū**  $1,000 + 700 + 80 + 9 = 1,789$

一万 **ichiman** 1,0000; 三万四千四百一 **san man yon sen yon hyaku ichi**  $3,0000 + 4,000 + 400 + 1 = 34,401$ .

The principles, then, are simple, and you can already begin playing with large numbers. But before attempting such a feat, remember:

- There are three digits for which there are two pronunciations: 四 4 **shi** or **yon**, 七 7 **shichi** or **nana**, and 九 9 **ku** or **kyū**.

The first of each of these pronunciations in each set comes originally from Chinese, but are inauspicious when pronounced in Japanese (*shi* means death and *ku* suffering; though they are written with other kanji and are nothing more than homonyms). They've therefore been replaced by **yon**, **nana** (taken from the Japanese counting system), and **kyū**. However, **shi** for 四, **shichi** for 七, and **ku** for 九 are compulsory for use in **names of the months**. We have already seen several of the month names, which are simply the chronological number of the month plus the word 月 **gatsu**, *month*. Literally, “month number 1”, “month number 2”, “month number 3”, etc. *January*, then, is 一月 **ichigatsu**, *February*, 二月 **nigatsu**, *March*, 三月 **sangatsu** (cf. Lesson 52, exercise 2, item 2; Lesson 62, exercise 1, item 5), *April*, 四月 **shigatsu** (cf. Lesson 23, item 7 and exercise 1, item 3; Lesson 52, exercise 2, item 2), *May*, 五月 **gogatsu**, *June*, 六月 **rokugatsu**, *July* 七月 **shichigatsu** (cf. Lesson 55, item 13; exercise 2, item 3), *August*, 八月 **hachigatsu**, *September*, 九月 **kugatsu**, *October*, 十月 **jūgatsu**, *November*, 十一月 **jūichigatsu**, *December*, 十二月 **jūnigatsu**. It is the same for time, too: 7:00 七時 **shichiji**, and 9:00 九時 **kuji**. But don't forget that 4:00 is 四時 **yoji**.

- Up till now it's too easy, isn't it? You need a bit of a challenge to spice things up a bit! For certain numbers, there are a few pronunciation changes when you combine them:

–Something changes with 一 **ichi**, 三 **san**, 六 **roku**, 八 **hachi**, 十 **jū** (1, 3, 6, 8, 10), if the consonant that follows these num-

bers is an *h*, whether another number (such as 百 *hyaku*) or with the addition of “measure words”. Those are the little words that indicate which category of object is being counted. We’ve already practiced 枚 *mai* for sheets of paper and similarly flat objects (Lesson 22, item 10 and 11 and note 3; Lesson 31, item 8; Lesson 39, item 13); 軒 *ken* for counting houses (Lesson 34, item 2); 台 *dai* for counting vehicles (Lesson 34, item 7); 杯 *hai* for counting full glasses or cups (Lesson 37, item 10 and note 5); 頭 *tō* for counting large animals (Lesson 39, items 6 and 7); 名 *mei* for officially counting people (Lesson 44, item 5); 人 *nin* for counting people in ordinary fashion (Lesson 47, item 11); and 本 *hon* for counting cylindrical objects (53, item 9). Important to this note here are the measure words 杯 *hai* and 本 *hon*.

After 三 *san*, the *h* becomes *b*: three hundred 三百 *sanbyaku* (cf. the numbered pages of Volume 1); three cylindrical objects is 三本 *sanbon*.

After 一 *ichi*, 六 *roku*, 八 *hachi*, and 十 *jū*, the *h* becomes *p* and the number drops its final syllable, replaced by another *p*. Thus is one glass (cf. Lesson 37, item 10) 一杯 *ippai*, *six hundred*, 六百 *roppyaku*, *eight hundred*, 八百 *happyaku*, *six cylindrical objects*, 六本 *roppon*, *ten cylindrical objects*, 十本 *juppon* (cf. Lesson 53, item 9).

The same principle is at work for 分 *fun*, *minute* (cf. Lesson 57, note 9): *one minute*, 一分 *ippun*; *three minutes*, 三分 *sanpun*; *four minutes*, 四分 *yonpun*; *six minutes*, 六分 *roppun*; *eight minutes*, 八分 *happun*, *ten minutes*, 十分 *juppun* or *jippun*.

–If the numbers 一 *ichi*, 六 *roku*, 八 *hachi*, and 十 *jū* are directly followed by a *k*, the numbers lose their final and add another *k*. cf. the numbers for the following lessons: 第一課 *daiikka*, Lesson 1, 第六課 *dairokka*, Lesson 6, 第八課 *daihakka*, Lesson 8, and 第十課 *daijukka*, Lesson 10, as well as Lessons 11, 16, 18, etc. cf. also 一軒 *ikken*, *one house* (Lesson 34, item 2).



The same happens to 一 **ichi**, 八 **hachi**, or 十 **jū** before an *s*: *eight thousand* is 八千 <sup>はっせん</sup> **hassen**, and *one year old* is 一歳 <sup>いっさい</sup> **issai**. And finally, before a *t*: 一頭 <sup>いっとう</sup> **ittō**, *one large animal* (cf. Lesson 39, item 7).

–When you know that three thousand 三千 is pronounced **san-zen**, then you know everything!

Now you can count up to anything you like! Shall we practice? The last detail is that for *one hundred* we say 百 **hyaku**, for *one thousand* we say 千 **sen**, but for 1,000 and 1,000,000 we say 一万 <sup>いちまん</sup> **ichiman** and 一億 <sup>いちおく</sup> **ichioku**, respectively.

So now say, in Japanese: 1,999 –5,381 –(you’re a rich Hokkaidō cowboy and have a herd of) 28,471 (head of cattle) –(you’re a stamp-collector with a collection of) 643,612 (stamps, which are flat and thin like paper) –(you are a bar-owner, each year serving) 230,348 (glasses).

Answers: **sen kyū hyaku kyū jū kyū –go sen san byaku hachi jū ichi –ni man has sen yon hyaku nana jū it tō –roku jū yon man san zen rop pyaku jū ni mai –ni jū san man san byaku yon jū hap pai**. Bravo!

One last detail before we move on: when, occasionally, the need for a zero arises, such as in writing years, it is borrowed from our Arabic numerals. The year 1908, for example, is pronounced **sen kyū hyaku hachi nen**, but written 一九〇八年.

## 2. A small point about **writing**.

Since the introduction of Volume 1 (cf. p. IX) we’ve been explaining how Japanese simultaneously use two systems: kanji and the kana. Meanwhile, you’ve been given time to take it in and get used to the twin systems with your own eyes and ears. It should be satisfying, then, to be able to say which kind of word is written in kana and which in kanji. But alas, we must bid adieu to such a sweet dream. All we can say, in the end, is: all foreign words, proper names, and

64 common names are written in **katakana**, and *in general*, the words we find in dictionaries, the nouns, verbs, adjectives, and adverbs –the “real words”, if we can call them so– are written in **kanji**, and **hiragana** are used for the grammatical components and particles. But there are also “real words” written in hiragana, because their respective kanji are too complicated or too rarely used in writing other words. In any event, you can always use hiragana to write a word that usually appears in kanji. This is how children’s books are written. Kids learn progressively, studying a limited number of kanji each year at school. Textbooks and other books designed for children of any given grade of primary school will only use the kanji that they have studied already.

---

64 <sup>だい ろく じゅう よん か</sup> 第六十四課 dai roku jū yon ka

ざっし  
雑誌

zas shi

- 1 – あなた の <sup>えいご</sup> 英語 の <sup>べんきょう</sup> 勉強 は  
a na ta no ei go no ben kyō wa  
いかが です か。①  
i ka ga de su ka.

3. Nearly **all kanji**, as we've already discussed (cf. p. X and XI) and as you've been able to see for yourself in the lessons, have more than one pronunciation. Generally speaking, all pronunciations mean the same thing. However, sometimes they mean different things, especially when they are the most commonly used characters. For instance 月 has two pronunciations of Chinese origin. <sup>がつ</sup>月 **gatsu** is used in the names of the months (cf. paragraph 1), while <sup>げつ</sup>月 **getsu** is used to indicate the duration of a month, as in, 30 or 31 days (cf. Lesson 34, items 11 and 12; Lesson 59, item 12 and exercise 2, item 2; Lesson 60, exercise 2, item 5; Lesson 61, exercise 1, item 2) and in expressions such as <sup>らいげつ</sup>来月 **raigetsu**, *next month* (cf. Lesson 44, items 6 and 7).

### Second Wave: 第十四課 (Lesson 14)

## Lesson Sixty-Four 64

### The Magazine

(magazine)

#### 1 – How's it going with your English studies?

(you / [relation] / English language / [relation] / study / [announce] / how / it is / [question])

### Notes

- ① The Japanese method of indicating a foreign language is quite simple. Remember Lesson 28, paragraph 1? Just add 語 **go** at the end of the name of a country. The only exception is English: the name of the country is イギリス **igirisu** (cf. Lesson 22, items 5 and 6), and someone from England is イギリス人 **igirisujin**, but the English Language is written all in Chinese characters: 英語 **eigo**.

- 2- ええ、大分 進みました。  
e e, dai bu susu mi ma shi ta.
- 3- どこ で 習<sup>なら</sup>っている の ですか。  
do ko de nara t te i ru no de su ka.
- 4- 個人<sup>こじん</sup> レッスン の 先生<sup>せんせい</sup> に  
ko jin re s su n no sen sei ni  
ついて います。  
tsu i te i ma su.
- 5 やっと 少<sup>すこ</sup>し 読<sup>よ</sup>める よう になりました。②  
ya t to sukoshi yome ru yō ni na ri ma shi ta.
- 6- それじゃ もう 直<sup>じき</sup> シェークスピア でも  
so re ja mō jiki shē ku su pi a de mo  
読<sup>よ</sup>める よう になる でしょう。③  
yo me ru yō ni na ru de shō.
- 7- シェークスピア ですか。僕<sup>ぼく</sup> に  
shē ku su pi a de su ka. boku ni  
は 全然<sup>ぜんぜん</sup> 興<sup>きょう</sup>味<sup>み</sup> が ありません。  
wa zen zen kyō mi ga a ri ma se n.
- 8 英語<sup>えいご</sup> を 習<sup>なら</sup>っている の は 仕事<sup>しごと</sup>  
ei go o nara t te i ru no wa shi goto  
関係<sup>かんけい</sup> の 記事<sup>きじ</sup> を 読<sup>よ</sup>む ため です。  
kan kei no ki ji o yo mu ta me de su.

## Notes

- ② In this lesson we find the pair of verbs 読<sup>よ</sup>む **yomu**, *to read*, and 読<sup>よ</sup>める **yomeru**, *to be able to read*. 読<sup>よ</sup>む **yomu** (item 8), 読<sup>よ</sup>みたい **yomitai** (item 9), and 読<sup>よ</sup>んで **yonde** (item 12) come from 読<sup>よ</sup>む **yomu**, *to read*. In items 5, 6, and 11, we have 読<sup>よ</sup>める **yomeru**, *to be able to read*. All verbs with multiple roots can form yet another verb, simply by replacing the *e* with an **eru**, which means “to be able to...” This newly created verb, then, acts as a verb with just one root. Indeed, we have already used this form a ▶

- 2 – Oh, I've made some good progress.  
(*oh / greatly / progressed*)
- 3 – Where do you study?  
(*where / [place] / study / it's that / [question]*)
- 4 – With a teacher, in individual lessons.  
(*individual-lesson / [relation] / teacher / [goal] / be attached to*)
- 5 Finally I'm able to read a little.  
(*finally / a little / be able to read / state / [goal] / became*)
- 6 – Then soon, you'll even be able to read Shakespeare!  
(*so / already / soon / Shakespeare / even / be able to read / state / [goal] / become / that must be*)
- 7 – Shakespeare? That doesn't interest me at all.  
(*Shakespeare / it is / [question]*) (*me / [attribution] / [emphasis] / not at all / interest / [subject] / not exist*)
- 8 I'm learning English so I can read articles that have to do with my job.  
(*English language / [object] / study / fact of / [announce] / work-connection / [relation] / newspaper article / [object] / read / for the sake of / it is*)
- ▶ number of times in these two volumes. Lesson 34, item 9: 使える **tsukaeru**, *to be able to use*, from 使う **tsukau**, *to use*. In Lesson 41, item 12: 作れる **tsukureru**, *to be able to make*, from 作る **tsukuru**, *to make*. In Lesson 53, item 12: 帰れる **kaereru**, *to be able to go back home*, from 帰る **kaeru**, *to go back home*. And finally in Lesson 55, item 3: 行ける **ikeru**, *to be able to go*, from 行く **iku**, *to go*. Please note, however, that this cannot be done with する **suru**. The equivalent of *to be able to do* is できる **dekiru**, *to be possible*.
- ③ それじゃ **soreja**. As in all languages, Japanese has its expressions of familiarity, often in abbreviated forms. Thus we have それじゃ **soreja** for それでは **soredewa** (cf. Lesson 3, item 11; Lesson 18, items 10 and 13; Lesson 19, item 13; Lesson 20, item 14). We'll find the じゃ **ja** abbreviation elsewhere, too, wherever we are used to finding では **de wa**. So そうではない **sō de wa nai**, *no (it is not so)*, is more often pronounced, familiarly, as そうじゃない **sō ja nai**.

- 9 工業 関係 の 雑誌 を 読みたい  
 kō gyō kan kei no zasshi o yo mi ta i  
 の です。  
 no de su.
- 10 - へえ、まじめ なん です ね。  
 he e, ma ji mè na n de su ne.
- 11 - 父 は 農業 関係 の 仕事 を して  
 chichi wa nō gyō kankei no shi goto o shi te  
 いる ので、その 方面 の 雑誌 も  
 i ru no de, so no hō men no zasshi mo  
 読める よう になりたい の です。  
 yo me ru yō ni na ri ta i no de su.
- 12 - 今 は 全部 わからなくても どんどん  
 ima wa zenbu waka ra na ku te mo do n do n  
 読んで みる こと です ね。④⑤  
 yo n de mi ru ko to de su ne.
- 13 あ、何か 英語 の 雑誌 を 手  
 a, nani ka ei go no zasshi o te  
 に 持っ て います ね。何 です  
 ni mo t te i ma su ka. nan de su  
 か。見せて 下さい。⑥  
 ka. mi se te kuda sa i.
- 14 あれ、ロック の 雑誌 だ。 □  
 a re, ro k ku no zasshi da.

## Notes

- ④ A verb is negated (cf. Lesson 49, paragraph 1, p. 326), thanks to the suffix **ない** **nai**. Grammatically speaking, it gets a bit strange, because **ない** **nai** is in fact an adjective. That means, the negative form of any verb is in fact an adjective, and not a verb at all!  
 わかる **wakaru**, to be understandable: negation **わからない** **wakaranai**, not to be understandable. The **て** **te** form of the ▶

- 9 I want to read magazines about industry.  
(*industry-connection / [relation] / magazine / [object] / I want to read / it's that*)
- 10 – My! but you're serious!  
(*ha / serious / [exclamation] / it is / [agreement]*)
- 11 – And because my father works in agriculture, I also want to be able to read magazines on that subject.  
(*my father / [announce] / agriculture-connection / [relation] / work / [object] / do / because // this / domain / [relation] / magazine / also / be able to read / state / [goal] / I want to become / it's that*)
- 12 – Right now what you should do, even if you don't understand everything, is read everything you can.  
(*now / [emphasis] / all / not be understandable-even if // abundantly / read / try to / fact of / it is / [agreement]*)
- 13 Ah, what's that in your hand... A magazine in English! What is it? Show me!  
(*ah / something / English language / [relation] / magazine / [object] / hand / [place] / hold / [agreement]*) (*what / it is / [question]*) (*show*)
- 14 Well! Well! It's a rock-n-roll magazine!  
(*ah / rock-n-roll / [relation] / magazine / it is*)



- ▶ negation, then (cf. Lesson 54, note 9), is made from *wakaranaku* + て *te*. Then a も *mo* must be added to the て *te* form, whether of a verb or of an adjective, to mean *even if*.
- ⑤ *どんどん dondon* (cf. Lesson 39, note 5). Here the word gives a sense of great abundance, of great ardor.
- ⑥ 手 *te* here designates the arm as well as the hand (cf. Lesson 50, note 6).

### Exercise 1

- ① お坊<sup>ぼっ</sup>ちゃん は もう 直<sup>じき</sup> 歩<sup>ある</sup>ける  
obotchan wa mō jiki arukeru

よう に なります ね。  
yō ni narimasu ne.

- ② その 話<sup>はなし</sup> は 本<sup>ほん</sup>当<sup>とう</sup> だ と は 思<sup>おも</sup>えませぬ。  
sono hanashi wa hontō da to wa omoemasen.

- ③ 来<sup>らい</sup>月<sup>げつ</sup> から イギリス の 工<sup>こう</sup>業<sup>ぎょう</sup> 関<sup>かん</sup>係<sup>けい</sup>  
raigetsu kara igirisu no kōgyō kankei

の 会<sup>かい</sup>社<sup>しゃ</sup> に 勤<sup>つと</sup>める こと に なる ので、  
no kaisha ni tsutomeru koto ni naru node,

はやく 英<sup>えい</sup>語<sup>ご</sup> を 覚<sup>おぼ</sup>えたい です。  
hayaku eigo o oboetai desu.

\*\*\*

### Exercise 2

...に 言<sup>こと</sup>葉<sup>ば</sup> を 入<sup>い</sup>れなさい

- ① If you practice a little more, you should be able to swim.  
....., ..... yō ni  
naru deshō

- ② This soup is delicious, but I can't drink it because it's so hot.  
....., .....  
.....

- ③ I don't personally mind even if the weather is bad.  
....., .....  
.....



- ④ はやく <sup>えいご</sup>英語 が できる よう に なりたい  
 hayaku eigo ga dekiru yō ni naritai  
 と <sup>おも</sup>思ったら、ちゃんと <sup>べんきょう</sup>勉強 しなさい。  
 to omottara, chanto benkyō shi nasai.
- ⑤ もう <sup>じき</sup>直 あなた に <sup>あ</sup>会える こと が  
 mō jiki anata ni aeru koto ga  
 できる ので、<sup>たの</sup>楽しみに して います。  
 dekiru node, tanoshimi ni shite imasu.

### Answers to Exercise 1

- ① Your little boy will soon be able to walk. ② I can't think that this story is true. ③ Starting next month I'll be working in an English industrial company, so I want to learn English quickly. ④ If you think you want to learn English quickly, you've got to study hard. ⑤ I'm looking forward to being able to see you soon!

\*\*\*

- ④ There are people who don't cry, even if they are sad.  
 ..... .. nakanai ..... ..
- ⑤ If it is food, we can sell it no matter what it is.  
 ..... .. , nandemo .....

### Answers to Exercise 2

- ① mō sukoshi renshū shitara oyogeru -. ② kono sūpu wa oishii keredomo atsui kara nomemasen. ③ watakushi wa, tenki ga warukute mo, heiki desu. ④ kanashikute mo - hito ga imasu. ⑤ tabemono nara - uremasu.

ひらがな れんしゅう  
平仮名の練習  
hira ga na no ren shū  
Hiragana Exercises

だ (づ) で ど  
DA \*(ZU) DE DO

\* Cf Lesson 58, Note 4

か と  
書き取り kakitori – Dictation

① okashii desu (it's strange) ② dondon (abundant) ③ chikazuku (approach) ④ isoide (hastily) ⑤ koko da (it's here) ⑥ denki (electricity) ⑦ doko (where?) ⑧ daigaku (university) ⑨ dete kudasai (to go out)

だい ろくじゅうご か  
第六十五課 dai roku jū go ka

カメラ を 選ぶ  
ka me ra o era bu

- 1- 新婚旅行に行く前にカメラ  
shin kon ryō kō ni i ku mae ni ka me ra  
を一つ買いたいのです。  
o hitotsu ka i ta i no de su.



### Answers

- ① おかしい です ② どんどん ③ ちかづく ④ いそいで  
 ⑤ ここ だ ⑥ でんき ⑦ どこ ⑧ だいがく ⑨ でて  
 ください

### Second Wave: 第十五課 (Lesson 15)

## Lesson Sixty-Five 65

### Choosing a Camera

(camera / [object] / choose)

- 1 – Before going on my honeymoon, I'd like to buy a camera.  
 (honeymoon / [goal] / go / before / [time] // camera / [object] / one / I want to buy / it's that)

2 - 新宿しんじゅく に 何軒なんげんも 安いやす お店みせ  
 shinjuku ni nangenmo yasui o mise  
 がありますよ。①

ga arimasu yo.

3 - 一緒いっしょ に 来てき くれますか。  
 issho ni kite kuremasu ka.

4 - いい ですよ。一日ついたち の 午後ご  
 iide su yo. tsuitachi no go go

いかがですか。②  
 ika ga desu ka.

5 - はい、結構けっこう ですよ。よろしく お願いねが  
 hai, kekō desu. yoroshiku onega i  
 します。③  
 shimasu.

カメラ屋や で  
 kamera ya de

6 小型こがた の 簡単かんたん な カメラ を  
 kogata no kantan na kamera o  
 いくつか 見せて 下さいくだ。④  
 iku tsuka mi sete kudasai.

## Notes

- ① 新宿しんじゅく **shinjuku**. The Western juncture of the two major train lines that form the base of Tōkyō's transit system: one is a loop, the other running from the Eastern extremity to the Western. Crowded with shoppers scurrying through the department stores by day and bar-hoppers toasting each other at night, the madness (or the buzz) is everlasting. You can also find a number of reasonably-priced camera and electronics stores in this area.
- ② 一日ついたち **tsuitachi**, cf. Lesson 63, paragraph 3. The combination of these two characters allows two distinct pronunciations, with ▶

- 2 – In Shinjuku there are many cheap stores.  
*(Shinjuku / [place] / many buildings / be cheap / [familiarity]-store / [subject] / exist / [engagement])*
- 3 – Would you like to go with me?  
*(together / [adverbial] / come / do for me / [question])*
- 4 – Sure. How about afternoon of the first?  
*(be good / it is / [engagement]) (first of the month / [relation] / afternoon / how / it is / [question])*
- 5 – Yes, that's perfect. I'm counting on you.  
*(yes / perfect / it is) (good / please)*

In the camera store  
*(camera-store / [place])*

- 6 Show me some small and simple cameras, please.  
*(small size / [relation] / simple / it is / camera / [object] / some / show me)*

▶ similar but different meanings. Pronounced 一日<sup>いちにち</sup> **ichinichi** (cf. Lesson 30, item 6) it means *one day, 24 hours*. But pronounced 一日<sup>ついたち</sup> **tsuitachi**, it means *the first day of the month*.

③ よろしく お願<sup>ねが</sup>い します **yoroshiku onegai shimasu**. One of the key expressions in human relations, for which no English translation can really do justice (cf. also Lesson 27, item 14). Literally, it means "I ask of you well," its colloquial meaning is *I address you and hope that all goes well*. It is primarily used in two instances, either the one here (or in Lesson 27), where the two speakers know each other and it is obvious to both that A will do something –whatever that something may be– for B. In this case, of course, B would use this phrase. Otherwise, A and B are meeting each other for the first time, where the expression is used by each as an expression and assurance of mutual good will between the two.

④ いくつ<sup>いくつ</sup>か **ikutsuka**. cf. Lesson 34, note 2: 何<sup>なん</sup> **nan(i)**, *what?*, 何<sup>なに</sup>か **nanika**, *something, I don't know what*; いくつ<sup>いくつ</sup> **ikutsu**, *how much/many?*, いくつ<sup>いくつ</sup>か **ikutsuka**, *I don't know how much/many*. cf. also どこ **doko**, *where?*, and どこか **dokoka**, *somewhere, I don't know where* (Lesson 29, item 1).

7- そこ に モデル が 全部 出<sup>で</sup>て  
so ko ni mo de ru ga zen bu de te

います から、どうぞ 手<sup>て</sup> に  
i ma su ka ra, dō zo te ni

取<sup>と</sup>って 御覽<sup>ごらん</sup> 下<sup>くだ</sup>さい。⑤  
to t te go ran kuda sa i.

8- たくさん あります ね。値段<sup>ねだん</sup> も  
ta ku sa n a ri ma su ne. nedan mo

ついて います よ。  
tsu i te i ma su yo.

9- あんまり ある ので、どれ に  
a n ma ri a ru no de, do re ni

したら いい か わかりません。⑥  
shi ta ra i, i ka wa ka ri ma se n.

10- 全自動<sup>ぜんじどう</sup> が いい です か。どの  
zen ji dō ga i i de su ka. do no

メーカー に します か。予算<sup>よさん</sup> は  
mē kā ni shi ma su ka. yo san wa

どの ぐらい です か。  
do no gu ra i de su ka.

## Notes

⑤ 御覽<sup>ごらん</sup> 下<sup>くだ</sup>さい **goran kudasai**, *look*. High degree, indicating the utmost respect to the subject, "you" (cf. Lesson 49, paragraph 2), this form is used only in the imperative, as a (polite) command. The middle degree equivalent is 見<sup>み</sup>て 下<sup>くだ</sup>さい **mite kudasai**.

⑥ あんまり **anmari**, another, more expressive, way of writing あまり **amari** (Lesson 48, item 7). Rather common to Japanese is the habit of making a word more expressive by repeating ▶

- 7 – All the models are on display here, please pick them up and look.  
*(there / [place] / model / [subject] / all / went out / because // please / hand / [place] / take // look)*
- 8 – There are so many! The prices are attached.  
*(many / exist / [agreement]) (price / also / be attached / [engagement])*
- 9 – There are too many, I don't know which to choose!  
*(too many / exist / because // which / [goal] / if I do / be good / [question] / not know)*
- 10 – Would you like a complete automatic? Which brand? What's your price range?  
*(completely automatic / [subject] / be good / it is / [question]) (which / brand / [goal] / do / [question]) (budget / [announce] / about how much / it is / [question])*



- ▶ one of the middle consonants. At times, the doubled consonant becomes the more common, such as the “normal” pronunciation of <sup>みんな</sup> **minna**, which is more often used than its original pronunciation, the less expressive <sup>みな</sup> **mina** (cf. Lesson 36, item 5; Lesson 37, item 8; Lesson 39, item 4; Lesson 59, item 11).

- 65 11 <sup>いま</sup> 今 は <sup>いろ</sup> ボディー の 色 は いろいろ  
 ima wa bo dī no iro wa i ro i ro  
 あります。どんな <sup>いろ</sup> 色 が いい ですか。  
 a ri masu. do n na iro ga i i de su ka.
- 12- むずかしい なあ。 <sup>りょこうよう</sup> 旅行用 です から、  
 mu zu ka shi i na a. ryō kō yō de su ka ra,  
<sup>ちい</sup> 小 さ く て、 <sup>かる</sup> 軽 く て、 <sup>ぼく</sup> 僕 の <sup>かばん</sup> 鞆 と <sup>おな</sup> 同 じ  
 chii sa ku te, karu ku te, boku no kaban to ona ji  
<sup>いろ</sup> 色 の この カメラ に しましよ う。  
 iro no ko no kamera ni shi ma shō.
- 13- いい ん です か。 そんな <sup>えら</sup> 選 び 方 <sup>かた</sup>  
 i i n de su ka. so n na era bikata  
 を して…⑦ □  
 o shi te...

\*\*\*

れんしゅう  
 練習

Exercise 1

- ① <sup>がいこく</sup> 外国 <sup>りょこう</sup> 旅行 に <sup>い</sup> 行 っ て い る <sup>あいだ</sup> 間  
 gaikoku ryokō ni itte iru aida  
 に、<sup>ちち</sup> 父 が <sup>びょうき</sup> 病 気 に な っ た の で、  
 ni, chichi ga byōki ni natta node,  
<sup>よてい</sup> 予 定 より <sup>はや</sup> 早 く <sup>かえ</sup> 帰 り ま し た。  
 yotei yori hayaku kaerimashita.
- ② <sup>いそ</sup> 急 い で い る <sup>とき</sup> 時 は、タクシー に  
 isoide iru toki wa, takushī ni  
<sup>の</sup> 乗 る より も <sup>ちかてつ</sup> 地 下 鉄 で 行 っ た <sup>ほう</sup> 方  
 noru yori mo chikatetsu de itta hō  
 が は や い です。  
 ga hayai desu.



- 11 Now we have camera bodies of different colors. Which color would you prefer?  
*(now / [emphasis] / body / [relation] / color / [announce] / of many kinds / exist) (which kind / color / [subject] / be good / it is / [question])*
- 12 – It's hard! Because it's for travelling, I will take this camera, small, light, and the same color as my bag.  
*(be difficult / [reflection]) (for travel / it is / because /// be small // be light // me / [relation] / bag / as / identical / color / [relation] / this / camera / [goal] / let's do)*
- 13 – Okay? What a way to choose...  
*(be good / it's that / [question]) (such sort / way of choosing / [object] / do)*

## Notes

- ⑦ いい ん です ii n de su, cf. lesson 55, note 2.

\*\*\*

- ③ 文子、寒い から、外 に 出る 前  
 fumiko, samui kara, soto ni deru mae  
 に、ちゃんと 帽子 を 被り なさい。  
 ni, chanto bōshi o kaburi nasai.
- ④ こちら を 御覧 なさい。  
 kochira o goran nasai.
- ⑤ 外国語 を 勉強 したい の ですが、  
 gaikokugo o benkyō shitai no desu ga,  
 何 を したら いい か わかりません。  
 nani o shitara ii ka wakarimasen.

## Answers to Exercise 1

- ① While I was on a trip abroad, my father fell sick, and I came home earlier than expected. ② When you are in a hurry, rather than take a taxi, it's faster to go by subway. ③ Fumiko, it's cold, so don't forget to wear a hat before going out (*put on without fault your hat*). ④ Look at this here. ⑤ I would like to learn a foreign language, but I can't decide which.

65 Exercise 2

...に<sup>ことば</sup>言葉<sup>い</sup>を入れなさい

- ① If there's something that you like, please take it.  
 ..... hoshii ..... attara, ....., .....  
 .....
- ② I was shown a few, but I couldn't choose.  
 ..... misete moraimashita ..., .....  
 .....
- ③ I don't know what to do!  
 dō .....
- ④ I don't know which one is lighter.  
 dochira .....
- ⑤ I have the impression of (already) somewhere having met this  
 person in this photo.  
 ..... ni utsutte iru ..... wa .....  
 .. atte iru yō na ki ga shimasu

\*\*\*

ひら が な れんしゅう  
 平仮名の練習  
 hira ga na no ren shū  
 Hiragana Exercises

な  
 NA

に  
 NI

ぬ  
 NU

ね  
 NE

の  
 NO

か と  
 書き取り kakitori – Dictation

- ① nedan (price) ② kono aida (the other day) ③ nanika (something)
- ④ kuni (country) ⑤ naze (why) ⑥ ueno (place name) ⑦ zannen  
 desu (how sad) ⑧ sonna ni (so very) ⑨ kono inu no kainushi (this  
 dog's master) ⑩ o kane (money)

## Answers to Exercise 2

① nanika – mono ga –, dōzo, totte kudasai. ② ikutsuka – ga, erabu koto ga dekimasen deshita. ③ – shitara ii ka wakarimasen. ④ – ga ichiban karui ka wakarimasen. ⑤ kono shashin – hito ni – dokoka de – .

\*\*\*

## Answers

① ねだん ② この あいだ ③ なにか ④ くに ⑤ なぜ  
 ⑥ うえの ⑦ ざんねん です ⑧ そんな に ⑨ この  
 いぬ の かいぬし ⑩ お かね

## Second Wave: 第十六課 (Lesson 16)

66 第六十六課 dai roku jū rok ka

いえ た  
家を建てる  
ie o ta te ru

1 石井 夫妻 は 家 を 建てる こと  
ishi i fu sai wa ie o ta te ru ko to  
に ついて 話 して います。  
ni tsu i te hanashi a t te i ma su.

2- コンクリート で 建て ます。  
ko n ku rī to de ta te ma shō.

3 その 方 が 地震 が 来 ても、  
so no hō ga ji shin ga ki te mo,  
安全 でしょう。①②  
an zen de shō.

4- でも おれ は 純 日本 風 の  
de mo o re wa jun ni hon fū no  
家 の 方 が いい な。  
ie no hō ga i i na.

5 四季 を 楽しめる から なあ。③  
shi ki o tano shi me ru ka ra na a.

Notes

① Japan is a string of volcanoes, which means it's quite susceptible to seismic activity and earthquakes. Many mild and a few heavy earthquakes have been recorded in the past, and there has been a great number of volcanic explosions. The Japanese are always aware of the dual environmental threat.

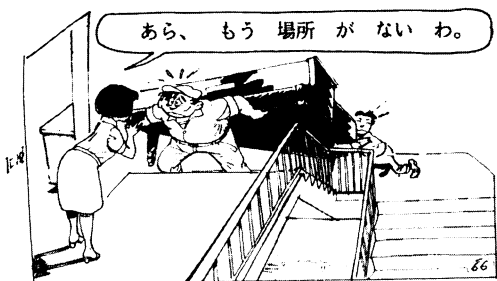
② cf. Lesson 64, note 4. も **mo** added to the て **te** form gives the verb a "even if" meaning. 来 ても **kite mo** means *even if... comes*. ▶

## Lesson Sixty-Six 66

### Building a House

(house / [object] / build)

- 1 Mr. and Mrs. Ishii are talking about the construction of their house.  
(Ishii-Mr. and Mrs. / [announce] / house / [object] / build / fact of / about / discuss)
- 2 – Let's build in concrete.  
(concrete / [means] / let's build)
- 3 This way, even if there's an earthquake, it will be safe.  
(this / side / [subject] / earthquake / [subject] / come-even if // safe / it must be)
- 4 – However, I would prefer a purely Japanese-style house.  
(however / me / [announce] / pure-Japan-style / [relation] / house / [relation] / side / [subject] / be good / [reflection])
- 5 Because one can savor the pleasures of the four seasons.  
(four seasons / [object] / be able to savor / because / [reflection])



- ▶ ③ cf. Lesson 64, note 2. <sup>たの</sup>楽しむ **tanoshimu**, to savor, to appreciate, <sup>たの</sup>楽しめる **tanoshimeru**, to be able to appreciate, to be able to savor.

6 おれ も もう 直 定年 に なる  
 o re mo mō jiki tei nen ni na ru

から、庭 で 盆栽 でも やろう  
 ka ra, niwa de bon sai de mo ya rō

か な。④⑤⑥  
 ka na.

7- コンクリート の 家 でも 盆栽  
 ko n ku rī to no ie de mo bonsai

は できます よ。  
 wa de ki ma su yo.

8- 庭 を 広く する か、建物を  
 niwa o hiroku su ru ka, tate mono o

広く する か に よる な。  
 hiro ku su ru ka ni yo ru na.

9- 部屋 数 は いくつ に しましょう か。  
 he ya sū wa i ku tsu ni shi ma shō ka.

## Notes

- ④ After 私 **watakushi** or **watashi**, after あたし **atashi**, after 僕 **boku**, here is yet another way to say *I, me*: おれ **ore**. But this usage is restricted completely to men, and only in a situation of great familiarity, such as when speaking with close friends or with your wife, as is the case here. You could say that おれ **ore** is a low degree 私 **watashi** (私 **watakushi**).

- 6 And because I'll be at retiring age soon, I'm thinking about growing bonsai trees in the garden.  
(*mé / also / already / soon / age limit / [goal] / become / because // garden / [place] / bonsai / even / let's do / [question] / [reflection]*)
- 7 – You could still grow bonsai in a concrete house!  
(*concrete / [relation] / house / even / bonsai / [announce] / be possible / [engagement]*)
- 8 – It all depends on which we make bigger, the garden or the building.  
(*garden / [object] / wide / do / [question] / building / [object] / wide / do / [question] / [goal] / be based on / [question]*)
- 9 – And how many rooms shall we make?  
(*room-number / [announce] / how many / [goal] / let's do / [question]*)



- ▶ ⑤ 盆栽 ぼんさい **bonsai**. This Japanese gardening art is a special form of special cultivation and pruning of trees so that they remain dwarf-sized. Some of the greatest **bonsai** successes are 100 year-old pines no more than one yard (about 1 m) high. This was introduced to many in the English-speaking world through Mr. Miyagi in *The Karate Kid*.
- ⑥ When か **ka** [question] is followed by な **na** [reflection], it means that you are asking a question of yourself.

- 10 まず、応接間、それに 食堂 も 大きく  
 ma zu, ō setsu ma, so re ni shokudō mo oo ki ku  
 と 取りましょう。私達 の 寝室 と 博之  
 to ri ma shō. watashi tachi no shin shitsu to hiro yuki  
 と 江里子 さんの の 部屋 を 考えて、  
 to e ri ko sa n no he ya o kangae te,  
 お 風呂場 は 日本 式 に して、  
 o fu ro ba wa ni hon shiki ni shi te,  
 台所 は モダン に しましょう。⑦  
 dai dokoro wa mo da n ni shi ma shō.
- 11 孫達 にも 部屋 を 一つ ずつ  
 mago tachi ni mo he ya o hito tsu zu tsu  
 準備 しましょう。  
 jun bi shi ma shō.
- 12 - おれ の 庭 は どう なる ん だ。⑧  
 o re no niwa wa dō na ru n da.
- 13 - あら、もう 場所 が ない わ。 □  
 a ra, mō ba sho ga na i wa.

## Notes

- ⑦ Hiroyuki is the son of the house, and Eriko is his wife. Speaking of their son, the parents use only his first name, but for their step-daughter they add さん san.
- ⑧ どう なる ん だ dō naru n da. だ da is the low degree of です desu, and ん n is an abbreviation of the の no of の です no desu. That means that, in a manner of speaking, んだ n da is ▶



- 10 First let's plan for a living room and a large dining room. Let's think about a room for us, and a room for Hiroyuki and Eriko; let's do the bathroom Japanese-style, and the kitchen modern.  
*(first / living room / besides / dining room / also / big / let's take) (us / [relation] / bedroom / and / Hiroyuki / and / Eriko / [relation] / room / [object] / think /// [familiarity]-bathroom / [announce] / Japan-style / [goal] / do // kitchen / [announce] / modern / [goal] / let's do)*
- 11 Let's also plan for a room for each of our grandchildren.  
*(grandchildren / [attribution] / also / room / [object] / one-for each / preparation-let's do)*
- 12 – And my garden? What's become of it?  
*(me / [relation] / garden / [announce] / how / become / it's that)*
- 13 – Oh my! There's no room!  
*([surprise]) (already / place / [subject] / not exist / [softener])*



- ▶ the colloquial low form of の です **no desu**. The low degree is, of course, proper here, as the conversation is between a wife and a husband. Don't forget that a conversation is rarely entirely in high or low degree: most often, these two forms are mixed with verb forms of middle degree (cf. Lesson 28, paragraph 4.1).

## Exercise 1

① 京都きょうと に 三日みっか 泊とまって も、お寺てら を  
kyōto ni mikka tomatte mo, o tera o

皆みんな 観光かんこう することは できません。  
minna kankō suru koto wa dekimasen.

② 月曜日げつようび に 出発しゅっぱつ する か、金曜日きんようび  
getsuyōbi ni shuppatsu suru ka, kinyōbi

に 出発しゅっぱつ する か に よって、予定よてい  
ni shuppatsu suru ka ni yotte, yotei

が 変わかります。  
ga kawarimasu.

③ 娘むすめ と 話はなしあっても、無理むり では  
musume to hanashiatte mo, muri de wa

ない か と 思おもいました。  
nai ka to omoimashita.

④ その 問題もんだい に ついて よく  
sono mondai ni tsuite yoku

調べしらべました けれども、詳くわしい 説明せつめい  
shirabemashita keredomo, kuwashii setsumei

\*\*\*

は 載<sup>の</sup>って いません でした。

wa notte imasen deshita.

- ⑤ 大<sup>だいがく</sup>学 の 建<sup>たてもの</sup>物 は あんまり 古<sup>ふる</sup>く  
daigaku no tatemono wa anmari furuku

な<sup>あた</sup>った ので、新<sup>あたら</sup>しい の を 建<sup>た</sup>てる  
natta node, atarashii no o tateru

こ<sup>あ</sup>と に しま<sup>あ</sup>した。

koto ni shimashita.

### Answers to Exercise 1

- ① Even if you stay in Kyōto three days, it's impossible to visit all the temples. ② My plans will change depending on whether I leave Monday or Friday. ③ I wondered if it's not a waste of time to discuss it with my daughter. ④ I did a lot of research about this question, but there wasn't any detailed explanation (*a detailed explanation was not included in the text*). ⑤ Because the university buildings are getting old, it was decided to begin building anew.

\*\*\*

66 Exercise 2

...に<sup>ことば</sup>言葉<sup>い</sup>を入れなさい

- ① That's a song I've already heard somewhere.

.....

- ② I don't know which way of choosing to follow.

.....

.....

- ③ I stayed in Ōsaka from 1956 to 1967.

.....

.....

ni taizai shite imashita

- ④ I read the article several times and yet there are still many areas I do not understand.

ano .....

mada .....

.....

\*\*\*

ひらがな れんしゅう  
平仮名の練習  
hira ga na no ren shū  
Hiragana Exercises

は  
HA

ひ  
HI

ふ  
FU

へ  
HE

ほ  
HO

There are two small irregularities, which we told you about early on (Lesson 15, note 2), and which should no longer seem very strange to you at all! The particle we translate as [announce] or [emphasis] is indeed pronounced **WA**, but is written は (hiragana **ha**). The particle translated as [destination] is still pronounced **E**, even if it's written へ (hiragana **he**). These are traces left over from long ago, ▶

ue no . . . . . 0 . . . . .

### Answers to Exercise 2

① dokoka de kiita koto no aru uta desu. ② donna erabikata o shitara ii ka wakarimasen. ③ sen kyū hyaku go jū roku nen kara sen kyū hyaku roku jū nana nen made oosaka -. ④ - kiji o nandomo yomimashita keredomo, - wakaranai tokoro ga takusan nokotte imasu. ⑤ - musume san wa - ikutsu desu ka.

\*\*\*

▶ but don't panic, there aren't many irregularities of this order. There is only one more, which is not part of this series, but which we'll list here to cover all the oddities in one go. The particle that points out the object of the sentence is pronounced **O**, but it is written を

This を once must have been pronounced **wo**, but is now pronounced **O**.

か と  
書き取り kakitori - Dictation

- ① hatake e iku hito ga ita (there was someone who went to the fields) ② nihongo no hatsuon wa kantan desu (Japanese pronunciation is easy) ③ fushigi na hanashi o kiita (I heard a strange story) ④ henji (response) ⑤ hotondo (almost) ⑥ fune (boat) ⑦ heiki desu (I don't care)

だい ろく じゅう なな か  
67 第六十七課 dai roku jū nana ka

ふ じ さん  
富士山  
fu ji san

1 - 富士山 <sup>ふ じ さん</sup> っ て <sup>ほん とう</sup> 本 当 に <sup>あ る の</sup> ある の だ け だ ね っ か。  
fu ji san t te hon tō ni a ru no de su ka.

2 - ええ、もちろ <sup>ん</sup> だ ね っ か。な ぜ だ ね っ か。  
e e, mo chi ro n de su. na ze de su ka.

3 - 写 真 <sup>しゃ しん</sup> や <sup>え</sup> 絵 で は <sup>く さ る</sup> く さ る ほ ど  
sha shin ya e de wa ku sa ru ho do  
<sup>み</sup> 見 ま し た が、<sup>じ つ ぶ つ</sup> 実 物 は <sup>み</sup> 見 た こ と  
mi mashi ta ga, jitsu butsu wa mi ta ko to

が <sup>あ り ま せ ん</sup> あり ませ ん。①  
ga a ri ma se n.

4 飛 行 機 <sup>ひ こう き</sup> で <sup>とう き ょ う</sup> 東 京 へ <sup>く</sup> 来 る <sup>とき</sup> 時、<sup>み</sup> 見 え る  
hi kō ki de tō kyō e ku ru toki, mi e ru  
こ と も <sup>あ る</sup> ある <sup>さう</sup> そう <sup>で す</sup> だ ね っ か、<sup>わ た し</sup> 私 は  
ko to mo a ru sō de su ga, watashi wa  
<sup>いっ ぺん</sup> 一 遍 も <sup>み</sup> 見 た こ と <sup>が</sup> あり ませ ん。  
ip pen mo mi ta ko to ga a ri mase n.

## Answers

① はたけ へ いく ひと が いた ② にほんご の  
 はつおん は かんたん です ③ ふしぎ な はなし を  
 きいた ④ へんじ ⑤ ほとんど ⑥ ふね ⑦ へいき です

## Second Wave: 第十七課 (Lesson 17)

## Lesson Sixty-Seven 67

## Mount Fuji

(Fuji-mountain)

- 1 – Does Mount Fuji really exist?  
*(Mount Fuji / what is called / true / [adverbial] / exist / it's that / [question])*
- 2 – But of course! Why?  
*(but / of course / it is) (why / it is / [question])*
- 3 – In photographs or on paintings, I've seen it so much I'm sick of it, but I've never seen it for real.  
*(photograph / or else / painting / [means] / [emphasis] / rot / to the point of / saw / but // real object / [announce] / saw / fact of / [subject] / not exist)*
- 4 It seems you can see it sometimes when you come to Tōkyō by airplane, but I haven't seen it even once.  
*(airplane / [means] / Tōkyō / [destination] / come / time // be visible / fact of / also / exist / it seems that / but // me / [announce] / one time / even / saw / fact of / [subject] / not exist)*

## Notes

- ① くさる ほど **kusaru hodo**. This phrase –while somewhat nauseating– is nevertheless quite expressive. It suggests there is too great an abundance of something, so much that it cannot all be used up, and what is left over will begin to rot. Too much. Much too much!

5 去年<sup>きょねん</sup> の 夏<sup>なつ</sup>、伊豆<sup>いず</sup> 半島<sup>はんとう</sup> まで  
 kyo nen no natsu, i zu han tō ma de

で 出掛<sup>でか</sup>けました。②  
 de ka ke ma shi ta.

6 そして<sup>やま</sup> 山<sup>うえ</sup> の 上<sup>ほうこう</sup> で この 方向  
 so shi te yama no ue de ko no hō kō  
 に<sup>ふじさん</sup> 富士山<sup>が</sup> が ある と 聞<sup>き</sup>きました  
 ni fu ji san ga a ru to ki ki ma shi ta  
 が、雲<sup>くも</sup> しか<sup>み</sup> 見<sup>み</sup>えません でした。  
 ga, kumo shi ka mi e ma se n de shi ta.

7 知人<sup>ちじん</sup> の 家族<sup>かぞく</sup> の 方<sup>かた</sup> の お 葬式<sup>そうしき</sup>  
 chi jin no ka zoku no kata no o sō shiki  
 で 富士<sup>ふじ</sup> 霊園<sup>れいえん</sup> へ も 行<sup>い</sup>きました。  
 de fu ji rei en e mo i ki mashi ta.

が…③④  
 ga…

8- あ、文<sup>ぶん</sup>学<sup>がく</sup>者<sup>しゃ</sup> の 墓<sup>はか</sup> が ある こと  
 a, bun gaku sha no haka ga a ru ko to  
 で 有<sup>ゆう</sup>名<sup>めい</sup> な 墓<sup>ぼ</sup>地<sup>ち</sup> です よ ね。  
 de yū mei na bo chi de su yo ne.

## Notes

- ② 伊豆<sup>いず</sup> izu. A large peninsula, roughly 60 miles (100 km) southwest of Tōkyō. It's an expensive resort area, full of beaches and hot springs. This peninsula is, in fact, nearly entirely mountainous, like the rest of the country, as the whole of Japanese territory consists of two layers of alpine mountains.

- ③ 方<sup>かた</sup> kata. cf. Lesson 48, note 5. ▶



- 5 Last summer I went out to Izu peninsula.  
*(last year / [relation] / summer / Izu-peninsula / up to / went out of the house)*
- 6 At the top of the mountain, someone said to me,  
 “In this direction, there’s Mount Fuji”, but all I saw were clouds.  
*(and / mountain / [relation] / above / [place] / this / direction / [place] / Mount Fuji / [subject] / exist / [quotation] / heard / but // cloud / only / not be visible)*
- 7 I even went to the funeral of a friend’s family member, at the Fuji Park Cemetery, but...  
*(friend / [relation] / family / [relation] / person / [relation] / [familiarity]-funeral / [means] / Fuji-park cemetery / [destination] / also / went / but)*
- 8 – Oh, yes, that’s the cemetery famous for having the tombs of those writers!  
*(ah / writer / [relation] / tomb / [subject] / exist / fact of / [means] / famous / it is / cemetery / it is / [engagement] / [agreement])*



- ▶ ④ The visit, often annual, to a family tomb, is very often taken as a family outing, including a picnic and afternoon spent lazing on the grass. These “cemetery parks” at the foot of the mountain are consequently quite well developed. They are actual parks where you can stroll, replete with shops, small homes, and woods for picnicking, not to mention fields for soccer or baseball.

- 9- 名前 <sup>なまえ</sup> が 富士 <sup>ふじ</sup> 霊園 <sup>れいえん</sup> です から、  
 na mac ga fu ji rei en de su ka ra,  
 今度 <sup>こんど</sup> こそ <sup>こそ</sup> は 富士山 <sup>ふじさん</sup> を <sup>み</sup>見る <sup>こと</sup> こと  
 kon do ko so wa fu ji san o mi ru ko to  
 が <sup>おも</sup>できる <sup>か</sup> か と <sup>おも</sup>思いました  
 ga de ki ru ka to omo i ma shi ta  
 が、やっぱり <sup>だめ</sup> だめ <sup>でした</sup> でした。  
 ga, ya p pa ri dame de shi ta.
- 10- あなた <sup>にほん</sup> が 日本 <sup>に</sup> に <sup>く</sup>来る <sup>のは</sup> の は  
 a na ta ga ni hon ni ku ru no wa  
 夏 <sup>なつ</sup> <sup>み</sup> でしょう。だから <sup>み</sup>見る <sup>こと</sup> こと  
 natsu de shō. da ka ra mi ru ko to  
 が <sup>の</sup> できない <sup>です</sup> の <sup>です</sup> です。  
 ga de ki na i no de su.
- 11 この <sup>つき</sup> 次 <sup>じゅういちがつ</sup> は 十一月 <sup>ご</sup> ごろ  
 ko no tsugi wa jūichi gatsu go ro  
 いらっしやい。そう <sup>どこ</sup> すれば、<sup>どこ</sup> どこ  
 i ra s sha i. sō su re ba, doko  
 から <sup>み</sup> でも <sup>よく</sup> よく <sup>見えます</sup> 見えます <sup>よ。</sup> よ。⑤  
 ka ra de mo yo ku mi e ma su yo.
- 12- <sup>じゅういちがつ</sup> <sup>やす</sup> でも 十一月 <sup>に</sup> に <sup>は</sup> は <sup>休み</sup> 休み <sup>を</sup> を  
 de mo jūichi gatsu ni wa yasu mi o  
<sup>と</sup> 取る <sup>こと</sup> こと <sup>が</sup> が <sup>できません</sup> できません。だから  
 to ru ko to ga de ki ma se n. da ka ra  
 私 <sup>わたし</sup> <sup>いっしょう</sup> は 一生 <sup>ふじさん</sup> 富士山 <sup>を</sup> を <sup>み</sup>見る <sup>こと</sup> こと  
 watashi wa is shō fu ji san o mi ru  
<sup>こと</sup> こと <sup>が</sup> が <sup>できない</sup> できません <sup>でしょう</sup> でしょう。 □  
 ko to ga de ki na i de shō.

- 9 – I thought, because it's called Fuji Park Cemetery, that this time, finally, I would be able to see Mount Fuji, but I missed it again!  
*(name / [subject] / Fuji-park cemetery / it is / because // this time / just / [emphasis] / Mount Fuji / [object] / see / fact of / [subject] / be possible / [question] / [quotation] / thought / but /// as well / impossible / it was)*
- 10 – You only come to Japan in the summer. That's why you can never see it.  
*(you / [subject] / Japan / [goal] / come / fact of / [announce] / summer / this must be) (that's why / see / fact of / [subject] / not be possible / it's that)*
- 11 Next time, come around November. So you can see it from anywhere.  
*(this / next / [emphasis] / November-around / come) (so / if you do // from wherever / well / be visible / [engagement])*
- 12 – But I can't take a vacation in November! So my whole life I'll never be able to see Mount Fuji!  
*(but / November / [time] / [emphasis] / vacation / [object] / take / fact of / [subject] / not be possible) (that's why / me / [announce] / whole life / Mount Fuji / [object] / see / fact of / [subject] / not be possible / that must be)*



## Notes

- ⑤ いらっしやい **irasshai**. Here we have a somewhat paradoxical combination. The verb いらっしゃる **irassharu** is a high degree verb (cf. Lesson 49, paragraph 2), but the form いらっしやい **irasshai** is low form imperative. If on the one hand it's similar to the English *come on!* it's also how shopkeepers greet their customers.

## 練習

## Exercise 1

- ① <sup>いま</sup>今 <sup>から</sup>、<sup>みんな</sup>皆 <sup>はやく</sup>はやく <sup>ひらがな</sup>平仮名 <sup>を</sup>を  
 ima kara, minna hayaku hiragana o  
<sup>か</sup>書ける <sup>よう</sup>ように <sup>れんしゅう</sup>練習 <sup>しまし</sup>ましょう。  
 kakeru yō ni renshū shimashō.
- ② <sup>まいばん</sup>毎晩 <sup>しちじ</sup>七時 <sup>ごろ</sup>ごろ <sup>いえ</sup>家 <sup>に</sup>に <sup>かえ</sup>帰って、  
 maiban shichi ji goro ie ni kaette,  
<sup>はちじ</sup>八時 <sup>ごろ</sup>ごろ <sup>にかぞく</sup>に家族 <sup>と</sup>と <sup>いっしょ</sup>一緒に <sup>に</sup>に  
 hachi ji goro ni kazoku to issho ni  
<sup>しょくじ</sup>食事を <sup>しま</sup>します。  
 shokuji o shimasu.
- ③ <sup>むすめ</sup>娘 <sup>は</sup>は、<sup>スポーツ</sup>スポーツ <sup>が</sup>が <sup>す</sup>好き <sup>で</sup>で、<sup>まいあさ</sup>毎朝  
 musume wa, supōtsu ga suki de, maiasa  
<sup>いちじかん</sup>一時間 <sup>ぐらい</sup>ぐらい <sup>はし</sup>走ります。  
 ichi jikan gurai hashirimasu.

・ \*\*\*

## Exercise 2

...に <sup>ことば</sup>言葉 <sup>を</sup>を <sup>い</sup>入れなさい

- ① And in your opinion, what sort of seat would be suitable for the living room?  
 ..... to  
 omoimasu ka
- ② We can no longer sell tea this old. Let's lower the price.  
 ..... o cha ... urenai deshō  
 ..... shimashō

④ この <sup>こうじょう</sup>工場 で <sup>つく</sup>作る <sup>せいひん</sup>製品 を <sup>く</sup>組み <sup>た</sup>立てる  
kono kōjō de tsukuru seihin o kumitateru

ために <sup>きかい</sup>どんな機械 を <sup>つか</sup>使います か。  
tame ni donna kikai o tsukaimasu ka.

⑤ 店 <sup>みせ</sup>から <sup>もら</sup>もらった <sup>しゃしん</sup>写真を <sup>よく</sup>よく  
mise kara moratta shashin o yoku

<sup>み</sup>見て、<sup>ようふく</sup>洋服 を <sup>えら</sup>選びましょう。  
mite, yōfuku o erabimashō.

### Answers to Exercise 1

① From now on, we will practice so we can be able to write hiragana quickly. ② Every night I return home around seven o'clock and have dinner as a family at around eight o'clock. ③ My daughter loves sports, every morning she runs for about an hour. ④ What kind of machine is used for making the objects this factory produces? ⑤ Let's choose our clothing while looking at the pictures we received from the store.

\*\*\*

③ When spring arrives, the days get longer.  
..... ni ..... , .. . . . . . narimasu

④ Every morning I leave my house around nine o'clock.  
.....

⑤ Every night, before going to sleep, I read for about an hour.  
..... , ..... , ..... . . . . .

hon o . . . . .

### Answers to Exercise 2

① anata wa, ribingu ni donna isu ga ii -. ② konna ni furui - wa mō - nedan o yasuku -. ③ haru - naru to, hi ga nagaku -. ④ maiasa ku ji goro ni dekakemasu. ⑤ maiban, neru mae ni, ichi jikan gurai - yomimasu.

ひらがな れんしゅう  
平仮名の練習  
hira ga na no ren shū  
Hiragana Exercises

ば  
BA

び  
BI

ぶ  
BU

べ  
BE

ぼ  
BO

だい ろくじゅうはっ か  
68 第六十八課 dai roku jū hak ka

こう しつ  
皇室  
kō shitsu

- 1- <sup>やまのて</sup>山手 <sup>せん</sup>線 <sup>の</sup> <sup>よ よ ぎ</sup>代々木 <sup>えき</sup>駅 <sup>と</sup> <sup>はらじゆく</sup>原宿  
yamanote sen no yo yo gi eki to hara juku  
<sup>えき</sup>駅 <sup>の</sup> <sup>あいだ</sup>間 <sup>に</sup> <sup>ある</sup>ある <sup>えき</sup>駅 <sup>に</sup> <sup>は</sup>は  
eki no aida ni a ru eki ni wa  
<sup>と</sup>止まる <sup>こと</sup>こと <sup>が</sup>が <sup>あり</sup>ありません <sup>ね。</sup>ね。①  
to ma ru ko to ga a ri mase n ne.
- 2- <sup>とくべつ</sup>あれ <sup>は</sup>は <sup>とくべつ</sup>特別な <sup>えき</sup>駅 <sup>です。</sup>です。  
a re wa toku betsu na eki de su.

Notes

- ① <sup>やまのてせん</sup>山手線 yamanote sen. This is the name of the circular train line that runs around the center of Tōkyō (cf. Lesson 65, note 1). ▶

か と  
書き取り kakitori – Dictation

- ① bonsai (dwarf tree) ② ichiban abunai desu (it's the most dangerous)  
 ③ tabitabi (often) ④ konban (tonight) ⑤ sabishii (to be sad) ⑥ zenbu  
 (entirely) ⑦ fuben (inconvenient) ⑧ boku (me, used by men only)  
 ⑨ tatoeba (for example) ⑩ hanbun (half) ⑪ betsubetsu (separately)  
 ⑫ banchi (house numbers) ⑬ jibun (oneself) ⑭ hitobito (people)

Answers

- ① ぼんさい ② いちばんあぶないです ③ たびたび ④ こんばん  
 ⑤ さびしい ⑥ ぜんぶ ⑦ ふべん ⑧ ぼく ⑨ たとえば ⑩ はんぶん  
 ⑪ べつべつ ⑫ ばんち ⑬ じぶん ⑭ ひとびと

Second Wave: 第十八課 (Lesson 18)

Lesson Sixty-Eight 68

The Imperial Family

(imperial family)

- 1 – The train never stops at this station between Yoyogi and Harajuku on the Yamanote line.  
*(Yamanote-line / [relation] / Yoyogi-station /and / Harajuku-station / [relation] / interval / [place] / exist / station / [place] / [emphasis] / stop / fact of / [subject] / not exist / [agreement])*
- 2 – It's a special station.  
*(that one / [announce] / special / it is / station / it is)*
- ▶ 代々木 <sup>よよぎ</sup> yoyogi and 原宿 <sup>はらじゅく</sup> harajuku are two stations located in the middle of the western side, between Shinjuku (cf. Lesson 65) and Shibuya (remember the story of the good dog, Lesson 33 and 37) toward the south. The Yoyogi area primarily contains a large park with sporting structures and installations for the Olympic Games of 1964. Harajuku is the hip area popular among 20-somethings, full of cafés, shops, and other hangouts.

- 3- <sup>とお</sup>いつ <sup>と</sup>通<sup>つ</sup>つて も <sup>だ</sup>だれも <sup>い</sup>いませ<sup>ん</sup>ん。  
i tsu too t te mo da re mo i ma se n.  
<sup>いま</sup>今 <sup>でも</sup>でも <sup>つか</sup>使<sup>つ</sup>つて <sup>い</sup>い<sup>る</sup>る の <sup>で</sup>です <sup>か</sup>か。  
ima demo tsuka t te i ru no de su ka.
- 4- もちろん <sup>で</sup>です。でも <sup>とくべつ</sup>特別 <sup>な</sup>な  
mochi ro n de su. de mo toku betsu na  
<sup>ばあい</sup>場合 <sup>だ</sup>だけ <sup>で</sup>です。  
ba ai da ke de su.
- 5 あれ <sup>てんのう</sup>は <sup>へい</sup>天<sup>のう</sup>皇 <sup>か</sup>陛<sup>か</sup>下 <sup>が</sup>が <sup>お</sup>お <sup>つか</sup>使<sup>い</sup>い  
a re wa ten nō hei ka ga o tsuka i  
<sup>に</sup>なる <sup>えき</sup>駅 <sup>な</sup>な の <sup>で</sup>です。②  
ni na ru eki na no de su.
- 6- <sup>てんのう</sup>天<sup>のう</sup>皇 <sup>へい</sup>陛<sup>か</sup>下 <sup>が</sup>が <sup>き</sup>汽<sup>しゃ</sup>車 <sup>に</sup>に <sup>お</sup>お <sup>の</sup>乗<sup>り</sup>り <sup>に</sup>に  
ten nō hei ka ga ki sha ni o no ri ni  
<sup>な</sup>なる <sup>こ</sup>こと <sup>が</sup>が <sup>あ</sup>ある <sup>の</sup>の <sup>で</sup>です <sup>か</sup>か。②  
na ru ko to ga a ru no de su ka.

## Notes

- ② Each time you speak of the Emperor, it's more common to speak in high degree, which means that we use the prestigious "he", same as for the formal "you" (cf. Lesson 49, paragraph 2). For verbs that are not completely replaced in high degree (such as 来る **kuru** being replaced by いらっしゃる **irassharu**, the high degree version of *you come*), there is a complex form built around the root of single-root verbs, and around the *i* root for other verbs. Before this base comes an お **o** [politeness], and afterwards a に **ni** + the verb なる **naru**, *become*, in its **masu** form (cf. Lesson 47, note 1). So from 使う **tsukau**, to ▶

\*\*\*



- 3 – Whenever I pass by, there's no one there. Is it still used?  
*(when / pass-even if // no one / not exist) (now / even / use / it's that / [question])*
- 4 – of course. But only in special cases.  
*(of course / it is) (however / special / it is / case / only / it is)*
- 5 It's the station used by His Majesty the Emperor.  
*(that one / [announce] / Emperor-Majesty / [subject] / [politeness]-use-[goal]-become / station / it is / it's that)*
- 6 – His Majesty the Emperor has to take the train?  
*(Emperor-Majesty / [subject] / train / [goal] / [politeness]-get on-[goal]-become / fact of / [subject] / exist / it's that / [question])*

私は朝何時に起きても平気です。



- ▶ use, we get: お 使い <sup>の</sup> になります **o tsukai ni narimasu**, *(His Majesty) uses*. From 乗る **noru**, *to get in a vehicle* (items 6 and 7): お 乗り <sup>の</sup> になります **o nori ni narimasu**, *(His Majesty / Their Majesties) get(s) in the vehicle*. From 見せる **miseru**, *to show* (item 10): お 見せ <sup>の</sup> になります **o mise ni narimasu**, *(His Majesty) shows*.

\*\*\*

- 7- そう ですよ。よく お 乗り に  
 sō de su yo. yo ku o no ri ni  
 なります。天皇 陛下 の お 住まい  
 na ri ma su. ten nō hei ka no o su ma i  
 である 皇居 は あの 駅 の 近く  
 de a ru kō kyo wa a no eki no chikaku  
 の 千代田 区 に あります。でも  
 no chi yo da ku ni a ri ma su. de mo  
 それは 特別 列車 で、普通 の 人  
 so re wa toku betsu res sha de, fu tsū no hito  
 は 乗る こと が できません。②③④⑤  
 wa no ru ko to ga de ki ma se n.  
 8 天皇 陛下 も 皇后 陛下 も 夏 は  
 ten nō hei ka mo kō gō hei ka mo natsu wa  
 よく 那須 まで いらっしやいます。⑥⑦  
 yo ku na su made i ra s sha i ma su.

## Notes

- ③ お 住まい **o sumai**, high degree form of 家 **ie**, house.  
 ④ 天皇 陛下 の お 住まい である 皇居 は **tennō heika no o sumai de aru kōkyo wa**, *The Imperial Palace, which is the residence of His Majesty the Emperor.* です **desu**, which we know well as we use it ceaselessly, is the only truly irregular verb. It is missing many forms. We know that です **desu** (middle degree), だ **da** (low degree), and でしょう **deshō**, *it must be*, etc., go at the end of a sentence or preposition, but what happens when it comes before a noun, such as here? In such an instance, for all verbs, the low degree form is obligatory (cf. Lesson 28, paragraph 4.2). But, strangely, だ **da** cannot be used in this situation. We then have to use the formal verb-like form, (we know the system, with the adjective いい **ii**, cf. Lesson 35, paragraph 3), which is である **de aru**.

- 7 – Why yes. Often. The Imperial Palace, which is the Emperor's residence, is in Chiyoda-ku, near this station. But it's a special train, where ordinary people cannot go in.

*(so / it is / [engagement]) (often / [politeness]-get on-[goal]-become) (Emperor-Majesty / [relation] / [politeness]-residence / it is / Imperial Palace / [announce] / this / station / [relation] / near / [relation] / Chiyoda-district / [place] / exist) (however / that one / [announce] / special-train / it is // ordinary / [relation] / person / [announce] / get on / fact of / [subject] / not be possible)*

- 8 In summer the Emperor and the Empress often go to Nasu.

*(Emperor-Majesty / also / Empress-Majesty / also / summer / [emphasis] / often / Nasu / up to / go)*



- ▶ ⑤ 千代田 区 **chiyoda-ku**, the central district of Tōkyō, itself centered on the Imperial Palace. It is also the district where most of the largest companies are headquartered.
- ⑥ 那須 **nasu**. A renowned resort town full of hot springs, roughly 90 miles (150 km) directly north of Tōkyō.
- ⑦ いらっしやいます **irasshaimasu**. We have seen this verb work as the high degree form of 来る **kuru**, *to come* (cf. Lesson 12, item 4 and note 2; Lesson 18, item 1; Lesson 47, item 11 and note 6, Lesson 49, paragraph 2; Lesson 67, item 11), when the subject is **respected you** or **he**. But it can also become the high degree form of 行く **iku**, *to go*, again, always with the subject a **respected you** or **he**. Yes, indeed! And that's not the end of the surprises!

- 9 - <sup>りょう</sup>両 <sup>へいか</sup>陛下 <sup>こくみん</sup>に <sup>か</sup>国民 <sup>が</sup>が <sup>お</sup>お <sup>め</sup>目 <sup>に</sup>にかか  
 ryō hei ka ni kokumin ga o me ni  
 かれる <sup>とき</sup>時 <sup>が</sup>が <sup>あ</sup>あり <sup>ま</sup>ます <sup>か</sup>か。⑧  
 ka ka re ru toki ga a ri ma su ka.
- 10 - <sup>しょうがつ</sup>お正月 <sup>と</sup>と <sup>へいか</sup>陛下 <sup>の</sup>の <sup>お</sup>お <sup>たんじょうび</sup>誕生日  
 o shō gatsu to hei ka no o tan jō bi  
<sup>すがた</sup>には <sup>お</sup>お <sup>すがた</sup>姿 <sup>を</sup>を <sup>お</sup>お <sup>み</sup>見 <sup>せ</sup>せ <sup>に</sup>に  
 ni wa o sugata o o mi se ni  
 なります <sup>ので</sup>ので、<sup>こくみん</sup>国民 <sup>は</sup>は <sup>こうきょ</sup>皇居 <sup>に</sup>に  
 na ri ma su node, koku min wa kō kyo ni  
<sup>ご</sup>ご <sup>あい</sup>あい <sup>さつ</sup>さつ <sup>に</sup>に <sup>い</sup>い <sup>く</sup>く <sup>こ</sup>こ <sup>と</sup>と <sup>が</sup>が  
 go a i sa tsu ni i ku ko to ga  
 できます。 <sup>きゅうちゅうざん</sup>宮中参賀 <sup>が</sup>と <sup>い</sup>い <sup>ま</sup>ます。②  
 de ki ma su. kyū chū san ga to i i ma su.
- 11 <sup>こうきょ</sup>皇居 <sup>は</sup>は <sup>とうきょう</sup>東京 <sup>の</sup>の <sup>まんなか</sup>真中 <sup>に</sup>にあ <sup>っ</sup>つて、  
 kō kyo wa tō kyō no man naka ni a t te,  
<sup>えど</sup>江戸 <sup>じだい</sup>時代 <sup>の</sup>の <sup>しょうぐん</sup>将軍 <sup>の</sup>の <sup>お</sup>お <sup>しろ</sup>城  
 e do ji dai no shō gun no o shiro  
 でした。⑨⑩  
 de shi ta.

## Notes

- ⑧ Now for the opposite: Remember Lesson 49, paragraph 2: high degree verbs are specialized, some for a **respected you or he**, and others for **I and... a he who owes respect**. Here, it is used for people with regard to the Emperor. お目にかかります *o me ni kakarimasu*: high degree equivalent to <sup>あ</sup>会う *au*, *to meet*, where the subject is **I** or a **he who owes respect** (cf. Lesson 64, note 2). ▶

9 – Are there times when the citizens can meet their Majesties?

*(two-Majesties / [goal] / citizens / [subject] / [politeness]-eye-[goal]-be able to hang / time / [subject] / exist / [question])*

10 – For the first day of the year and for the Emperor's birthday, their Majesties go out in public, so citizens can go to the Imperial Palace to salute them. This is called "Public Hommage to the Emperor".

*([familiarity]-first day of the year / and / Majesty / [relation] / [politeness]-birthday / [time] / [emphasis] / [politeness]-aspect / [object] / [politeness]-show-[goal]-become / because // citizens / [announce] / Imperial Palace / [goal] / [politeness]-salute / [goal] / go / fact of / be possible) (Imperial Court-hommage / [quotation] / say)*

11 The Imperial Palace is right in the heart of Tōkyō, and was the fortress of the Shōgun in the Edo era.

*(Imperial Palace / [announce] / Tōkyō / [relation] / full middle / [place] / exist // Edo-era / [relation] / shogun / [relation] / [politeness]-fortress / it was)*



▶ ⑨ 江戸時代 *edo jidai*, cf. Lesson 17, note 3.

⑩ 将軍 *shōgun*. Originally, this was a military title meaning *General*. In fact, in the Edo era, this term designated the man with the actual political power and control of the country. The seat of the Shōgun was in Edo, far from the Imperial Court in Kyōto. The last Shōgun returned power back to the Emperor in the Imperial Restoration of 1868.

- 12 その <sup>まわ</sup>回り は ひろびろ と した  
 so no mawa ri wa hi ro bi ro to shi ta  
 公園 <sup>こうえん</sup> に なって いて、日曜日 <sup>にちようび</sup> の 朝 <sup>あさ</sup>  
 kō en ni na t te i te, nichi yō bi no asa  
 など、そこ に ジョギング を し に  
 na do, so ko ni jo gi n gu o shi ni  
 来る <sup>く</sup> 人 <sup>ひと</sup> が たくさん います。 □  
 ku ru hito ga ta ku sa n i ma su.

\*\*\*

れんしゅう  
 練習

## Exercise 1

- ① 子供 <sup>こども</sup> の 前 <sup>まえ</sup> で そんな <sup>はなし</sup> 話 を  
 kodomo no mae de sonna hanashi o  
 して は だめ です よ。  
 shite wa dame desu yo.
- ② 向かい <sup>むかい</sup> の 本屋 <sup>ほんや</sup> の 前 <sup>まえ</sup> で 待つて <sup>ま</sup>  
 mukai no honya no mae de matte  
 いる <sup>ひと</sup> 人 は だれ でしょう か。  
 iru hito wa dare deshō ka.
- ③ 東京 <sup>とうきょう</sup> エア・ターミナル で ある <sup>はこざき</sup> 箱崎  
 tōkyō ea. tāmīnaru de aru hakozaki  
 という <sup>ところ</sup> 所 は、町 <sup>まち</sup> の 真中 <sup>まんなか</sup> に あります。  
 to iu tokoro wa, machi no mannaka ni arimasu.

- 12 Surrounding it, is a large park, and there are many people who come to go jogging on Sunday morning.

(that / edge / [announce] / spacious-did / public park / [goal] / become // Sunday / [relation] / morning / this kind of thing / there / [goal] / jogging / [object] / do / [goal] / come / person / [subject] / many / exist)

\*\*\*

- ④ <sup>な</sup>ら <sup>い</sup>ち <sup>ばん</sup> <sup>ゆう</sup>めい <sup>な</sup> <sup>お</sup> <sup>てら</sup> <sup>で</sup> <sup>あ</sup>る  
nara no ichiban yūmei na o tera de aru  
<sup>とう</sup>だい <sup>じ</sup> <sup>え</sup>き <sup>の</sup> <sup>すぐ</sup> <sup>ちか</sup>く <sup>に</sup> <sup>あ</sup>ります。  
tōdaiji wa eki no sugu chikaku ni arimasu.
- ⑤ <sup>わ</sup>たし <sup>あ</sup>さ <sup>は</sup>や <sup>お</sup>き <sup>て</sup> <sup>も</sup> <sup>へ</sup>い <sup>き</sup> <sup>で</sup>す。  
watashi wa asa hayaku okite mo heiki desu.

### Answers to Exercise 1

- ① It's not good to tell these kinds of stories in front of children!  
② Who could that person be, who is waiting in front of the library opposite. ③ Hakozaki, which is the Air Terminal for Tōkyō, is in the middle of the city. ④ The Tōdaiji, which is the most famous temple of Nara, is very near to the station. ⑤ I don't mind waking up early in the morning.

68 Exercise 2

...に<sup>ことば</sup>言葉<sup>い</sup>を入れなさい

- ① The post office is between the electrician's and the tobacco shop.  
 ..... to .....
- ② Let's do it French style!  
 ..... de yarimashō ne
- ③ The Imperial Palace is the place where His Majesty the Emperor resides.  
 ..... ni natte  
 iru .....
- ④ In the summer, even if you go to Mount Fuji, all you can see are clouds.  
 ....., ..... no tokoro .....,  
 .....

\*\*\*

ひらがな <sup>れんしゅう</sup>の練習

hira ga na no ren shū

Hiragana Exercises (*hiragana* / *[relation]* / *exercise*)

ぱ

PA

ぴ

PI

ぷ

PU

ぺ

PE

ぽ

PO

These syllables are quite rare, the most common of which is a repeated P. That means it must be time to cover repeated consonants. We began speaking of the matter in Lesson 7, paragraph 6. The consonants that can be repeated in Japanese words are K – S (sh) – T (ch-ts) and P. In all cases, it is the mini-hiragana っ that indicates the double-consonant, whether it's っかい **ikkai**, *first floor*, ざっし **zasshi**, *magazine*, きて **kitte**, *stamp*, or っふん **ippun**, *one minute*.



- ⑤ Why doesn't the train stop at this station that is between Yoyogi and Harajuku?

.....  
 .. no desu ka

## Answers to Exercise 2

① yūbinkyoku wa denkiya – tabakoya no aida ni arimasu. ② furansu shiki –. ③ kōkyo wa tennō heika ga o sumi – tokoro desu. ④ natsu wa, fujisan – e itte mo, kumo shika miemasen. ⑤ densha wa naze yoyogi to harajuku no aida ni aru eki ni tomaranai –.

\*\*\*

## 書き取り kakitori – Dictation

① sanpo ni itta (I went on a walk) ② tsukeppanashi desu (that stays open) ③ kippu o katte uchi ni kaetta (I bought tickets and returned home) ④ shinpai shita (I was worried) ⑤ ongakkai (concert) ⑥ kekkon (marriage) ⑦ sassoku (immediately) ⑧ hassai (eight years old) ⑨ sanpun (three minutes) ⑩ eki ni haitta (he entered the station)

## Answers

①さんぽ に いった ②つけっぱなし です ③きっぷ を  
 かって うち に かえった ④しんぱい した ⑤おんがっかい  
 ⑥けっこん ⑦さっそく ⑧はっさい ⑨さんぷん ⑩えき に  
 はいった

## Second Wave: 第十九課 (Lesson 19)

69 第六十九課 dai roku jū kyū ka

お見合い①  
o mi a i

- 1 - 甥おいのかつあき勝明は日本にほん経済けいざい新聞しんぶんの  
oi no katsuaki wa ni hon kei zai shin bun no  
記者きしゃをししてていますが、だれかいい  
ki sha o shi te i ma su ga, da re ka i i  
人ひとがないでしょうかね。②③④  
hito ga na i de shō ka ne.
- 2 - 甥おいご御さんはおいくつですか。⑤  
oi go sa n wa o i ku tsu de su ka.
- 3 - 今年ことし二十八にじゅうはつ歳さいで、来年らいねんの秋あき  
ko toshi ni jū has sai de, rai nen no aki  
ブラジルに転勤てんきんすることに  
bu ra ji ru ni ten kin su ru ko to ni  
なりましたが、そのまえにけっこん結婚  
na ri ma shi ta ga, so no mae ni kekkon  
させたいのです。  
sa se ta i no de su.

Notes

- ① お見合い o miai. A practice still extremely popular in Japan today is introducing young men and women with the goal of marriage. First, photographs are exchanged ceremonially, and then a first date, chaperoned by both sets of parents. A friend of the family is often called upon to find the appropriate fiancé(e).
- ② 甥おいのかつあき勝明 **oi no katsuaki**, cf. Lesson 13, note 1. ▶

## The Arranged Marriage (Part One)

*([familiarity]-arranged marriage / part one)*

- 1 – My nephew Katsuaki works as a journalist for Nihon Keizai Shinbun, you wouldn't know someone good, by chance?  
*(my nephew / [apposition] / Katsuaki / [announce] / Nihon Keizai Shinbun / [relation] / journalist / [object] / do / but // someone / be good / person / [subject] / not exist / that must be / [question] / [agreement])*
- 2 – How old is your nephew?  
*(your nephew / [announce] / [politeness]-how much / it is / [question])*
- 3 – He will be 28 this year: he will be transferred to Brazil in autumn of next year, and I'd like him to get married before that.  
*(this year / two-ten-eight-years / it is /// next year / [relation] / autumn / Brazil / [place] / transfer-do / fact of / [goal] / became / but // this / before / [time] / marriage-I want to make him do / it's that)*



- ▶ ③ にほん けいざい しんぶん **Nihon keizai shibun**. One of Japan's five national daily newspapers. Its name literally means "Economic Newspaper of Japan" (Japan / economy / newspaper). But despite the title, it is actually a paper full of general news of all varieties.
- ④ だれか **daireka**, cf. Lesson 65, note 4. だれ **daire**, *who?*, だれか **daireka**, *someone*.
- ⑤ Note: *my nephew*, おにい **oi**; *your nephew*, おにいさん **oigosan**, cf. also Lesson 15, notes 1 and 3; Lesson 23, note 1; Lesson 26, note 2.

4 - どんな <sup>かた</sup>方 が いい の ですか。  
do n na kata ga i i no de su ka.

5 - そう ですね。やっぱり <sup>だいがく</sup>大学 は  
sō de su ne. ya p pa ri dai gaku wa  
<sup>そつぎょう</sup>卒業 して いて、でも <sup>はたら</sup>働いた  
sotsu gyō shi te i te, de mo hatara i ta

こと が なくて、向<sup>む</sup>こう では、  
ko to ga na ku te, mu kō de wa,

<sup>せつたい</sup>接待 が <sup>おお</sup>多い から、お <sup>りょうり</sup>料理 が  
set tai ga oo i ka ra, o ryō ri ga

<sup>じょうず</sup>上手 で、<sup>しゃこうせい</sup>社交性 が ある 人 が  
jō zu de, sha kō sei ga a ru hito ga

<sup>りそう</sup>理想 ですね。⑥  
ri sō de su ne.

6 - なかなか <sup>じょうけん</sup>むずかしい 条件 ですね。  
na ka na ka mu zu ka shi i jōken de su ne.

7 あ、ちょっと <sup>ま</sup>待って <sup>くだ</sup>下さい。  
a, cho t to ma t te kuda sa i.

8 そう <sup>い</sup>言えば、<sup>いっしゅうかん</sup>一週間 <sup>まへ</sup>ほど 前 に  
sō i e ba, is shū kan ho do mae ni

<sup>かない</sup>家内 が <sup>ゆうじん</sup>友人 の <sup>こっかい</sup>国会 <sup>ぎいん</sup>議員 の  
ka nai ga yū jin no kok kai gi in no

お <sup>じょう</sup>嬢 さん の <sup>しゃしん</sup>写真 を <sup>み</sup>見せて  
o jō sa n no sha shin o mi se te

くれました。

ku re ma shi ta.

9 - あ、それ は いい <sup>はなし</sup>話 ですね。  
a, so re wa i i hanashi de su ne.

- 4 – What kind of person would you like?  
*(what kind / person / [subject] / be good / it's that / [question])*
- 5 – Oh, well, uh... After thinking about it, the ideal would be a young woman who has graduated from university but who has not yet started working, and as she would have to entertain a lot over there, would be able to cook well and get along well with others.  
*(oh, uh) (all considered / university / [announce] / graduation-do /// however / worked / fact of / [subject] / not exist /// other side / [place] / [emphasis] / reception / [subject] / be many / it is / because // [familiarity]-cuisine / [subject] / skillful / it is /// social character / [subject] / exist / person / [subject] / ideal / it is / [agreement])*
- 6 – These are extremely difficult conditions!  
*(extremely / be difficult / condition / it is / [agreement])*
- 7 But... wait a minute...  
*(ah / a bit / wait)*
- 8 If that's it, a week ago my wife showed me the picture of the daughter of our friend who is a member of parliament.  
*(so / if you say // one-week-about-before / [time] / my wife / [subject] / friend / [apposition] / National Assembly-member / [relation] / daughter / [relation] / photo / [object] / show / did for me)*
- 9 – Ah, this is a pleasant story!  
*(ah / that one / [announce] / be good / story / it is / [agreement])*



## Notes

- ⑥ そう です ね *sō desu ne*. Literally: “it is so”. In fact, this phrase is often uttered by Japanese speakers to indicate a pause for the speaker to think of something to say.

10 - <sup>こんばん</sup> 今晚 さっそく <sup>か ない</sup> 家内 と <sup>はなし</sup> 話して  
 kon ban sa s so ku kanai to hana shi te  
 みます。⑦  
 mi ma su.

11 <sup>のち</sup> 後ほど <sup>れん ちく</sup> 連絡 いたします。⑧  
 nochi ho do ren raku i ta shi ma su.  
 ( <sup>つづ</sup> 続く ) ⑨ □  
 tsuzu ku

## Notes

- ⑦ <sup>はなし</sup> 話して みます **hanashite mimasu**, cf. Lesson 60, note 10.  
 ⑧ いたします **itashimasu**. High degree of する **suru**, *to do*, but only when the subject is I.  
 ⑨ <sup>つづ</sup> 続く **tsuzuku**, cf. Lesson 58, note 4. Another instance of the syllable ZU being written づ when the verb is written in hiragana.

\*\*\*

れんしゅう  
 練習

## Exercise 1

- ① <sup>ゆう</sup> 夕べ <sup>いもうと</sup> 妹 さん の <sup>み あ</sup> お見合い に ついて  
 yūbe imōto san no o miai ni tsuite  
<sup>か ない</sup> 家内 と <sup>おそ</sup> 遅く まで <sup>はな</sup> 話しました。  
 kanai to osoku made hanashimashita.  
 ② <sup>いのうえ</sup> 井上 さん が <sup>がい こく</sup> 外国 から <sup>かえ</sup> 帰って きた  
 inoue san ga gaikoku kara kaette kita  
 と 聞きました が、すぐ あいさつ に  
 to kikimashita ga, sugu aisatsu ni  
<sup>い</sup> 行った 方 が <sup>ほう</sup> いい でしょう ね。  
 itta hō ga ii deshō ne.

10 – I'm going right away to talk to my wife about it tonight. 69

(tonight / right away / my wife / with / speak / do to see)

11 And then I'll contact you.

(following / contact-I do)

To be continued...

(continue)

\*\*\*

③ 最近 フランス の 新聞 でも 日本 の  
saikin furansu no shinbun demo nihon no

経済 についての 記事 が よく 出ます。  
keizai ni tsuite no kiji ga yoku demasu.

④ 田辺 さんは、だれか いい 人 が  
tanabe san wa, dareka ii hito ga

いる かしら と 聞きました。  
iru kashira to kikimashita.

⑤ 来年 の 予算 は 九億 円 に  
rainen no yosan wa kyū oku en ni

なる そう です。  
naru sō desu.

### Answers to Exercise 1

① Last night I was speaking until late with my wife about the marriage plans for your younger sister. ② I heard that Mr. Inoue has come back from abroad, it would be best to good and greet him right away. ③ Recently, even in the French newspapers, there are often articles about the Japanese economy. ④ Mrs. Tanabe asked me if I by chance knew someone good. ⑤ They say that next year's budget will be nine hundred million yen.

## 69 Exercise 2

...に<sup>ことば</sup>言葉<sup>い</sup>を入れなさい

- ① In Japan, it is not good to eat while walking down the street.

....., .....  
koto wa ..... koto desu

- ② Because I am not at all interested in the economy, I don't read the newspapers.

....., ..... kyōmi ga  
.....

- ③ This chair cost me 43,600 yen.

.....  
.. kakarimashita

\*\*\*

ひらがな れんしゅう  
平仮名の練習  
hira ga na no ren shū  
Hiragana Exercises

Since the beginning of Volume 1, we've been asking you to pay attention to the "long vowels" in Japanese, and we've told you how they were written (Lesson 2, note 4). In the "purely" Japanese words—that is, in words of Japanese origin—rather than a long vowel, there's actually a double-vowel. Subtle! So we write that simply by writing the vowel again. There is no long U in **words of Japanese origin**. Only A, I, E, and O can be long (or doubled). For A, I, and E, elongations are only found in names of relatives: おばあさん **obaasan** (cf. Lesson 39, item 1; Lesson 59, exercise 2, item 4), *grandmother* (and by extension all older women). おじいさん **ojiisan** (cf. Lesson 39, item 1), *grandfather* (or older man), おねえさん **oneesan**, *older sister*.

The only "serious" case of double-vowels is with O. There is only a limited number of words of Japanese origin with a double-O, and





か と  
書き取り kakitori – Dictation

① sō desu ne (it is so) ② kekkō desu (it's perfect) ③ kinō (yesterday) ④ futsū (ordinary) ⑤ kōgō (Empress) ⑥ hōkō (direction) ⑦ kōkūbin (airmail) ⑧ dōbutsu (animal) ⑨ fūtō (envelope) ⑩ tennō (Emperor) ⑪ dōzō (bronze statue) ⑫ bōken (risk) ⑬ kōtsū (transportation) ⑭ kōtō gakkō (high school)

70 だい ななじゅう か  
第七十課 dai nana jū ka

まとめ

matome

Revision and Notes

1. We promised, so now it's time to deliver. There's a lot to cover today (as always with each seventh lesson), but we'll start by wrapping up our discussion of **numbers**. The way the Japanese developed their language, with parts coming from their original language and other parts imported from Chinese, certainly has complicated things a bit! The system of counting borrowed from Chinese, as you've seen in Lesson 63, is full and complete. The **original Japanese system** –or what's left of it– is actually rather limited. In common usage nowadays are no more than the numbers 1 to 10. And we've already seen a few of them:

one: <sup>ひと</sup>一 つ **hitotsu** (Lesson 65, item 1; Lesson 66, item 11)

two: <sup>ふた</sup>二 つ (Lesson 27, item 10, exercise 2, item 5; Lesson 39, exercise 2, item 5)

three: <sup>みつ</sup>三 つ **mittsu** (Lesson 59, item 9, exercise 2, item 1)

four: <sup>よつ</sup>四 つ **yottsu**

five: <sup>いつ</sup>五 つ **itsutsu** (Lesson 59, item 6, exercise 1, item 2)

six: <sup>むつ</sup>六 つ **muttsu**

seven: <sup>なな</sup>七 つ **nanatsu**

## Answers

- ① そう です ね ② けっこう です ③ きのう ④ ふつう  
 ⑤ こうごう ⑥ ほうこう ⑦ こうくうびん ⑧ どうぶつ  
 ⑨ ふうとう ⑩ てんのう ⑪ どうぞう ⑫ ぼうけん ⑬ こうつう  
 ⑭ こうとうがっこう

## Second Wave: 第二十課 (Lesson 20)

## Lesson Seventy 70

eight: 八<sup>やっ</sup>つ yattsu

nine: 九<sup>ここの</sup>つ kokonotsu

ten: 十<sup>とお</sup> tō

These numbers are used whenever you want to specify how many **objects** there are (obviously when there are fewer than 10...) but not which kind of object specifically. If you specify the kind of object, of course, then you must use a “measure word” (cf. Lesson 63) and the number with its “Chinese” pronunciation.

An important note: to say *one person*: 一<sup>ひと</sup>人 **hitori** (cf. Lesson 44, item 3; Lesson 47, note 5), with a very common expression, 一<sup>ひと</sup>人で **hitori de**, *all alone* (Lesson 47, item 12; Lesson 48, exercise 1, item 4). For *two people*: 二<sup>ふた</sup>人 **futari** (Lesson 15, item 4 and exercise 2, item 4; Lesson 41, exercise 2, item 3; Lesson 44, items 4 and 5, exercise 2, item 2). From *three people and up*, though, you return to the “Chinese” system, with 人<sup>にん</sup> as the “measure word”: *three people*, 三<sup>さん</sup>人 **san nin**, *four people*, 四<sup>よ</sup>人 **yo nin**, *five people*, 五<sup>ご</sup>人 **go nin**, etc. (cf. Lesson 47, item 11, exercise 2, item 1; Lesson 59, exercise 1, item 2).

And yet another important note: the “Japanese” system is the only system you can use in designating the **date** (the 5th of the month, the 10th of the month...), or **duration** of days (five days, ten days...), also with a limit of ten. But there are some irregularities you should know:

For *one* there are two different words, with two different uses:

一日 ついでち

一日 **tsuitachi**, *the first of the month* (Lesson 65, item 4)

一日 いちにち

一日 **ichinichi**, *one day* (Lesson 30, item 6; Lesson 39, item 14)

After which there is one word for both uses:

二日 ふつか

二日 **futsuka**, *the 2nd of the month or 2 days* (Lesson 45, item 5; Lesson 57, item 11; Lesson 61, exercise 2, item 1);

三日 みっか

三日 **mikka**, *the 3rd of the month or 3 days* (Lesson 20, item 12; Lesson 66, exercise 1, item 1);

四日 よっか

四日 **yokka**, *the 4th of the month or 4 days*;

五日 いつか

五日 **itsuka**, *the 5th of the month or 5 days*;

六日 むいか

六日 **muika**, *the 6th of the month or 6 days*;

七日 なつか

七日 **nanoka**, *the 7th of the month or 7 days*;

八日 ようか

八日 **yōka**, *the 8th of the month or 8 days*;

九日 ここのか

九日 **kokonoka**, *the 9th of the month or 9 days*;

十日 とおか

十日 **tōka**, *the 10th of the month or 10 days* (Lesson 61, item 3, exercise 2, item 4).

And after that? Well, of course, we fall back into the Chinese system:

十一日 じゅういちにち

十一日 **jū ichi nichi**, *the 11th of the month or 11 days*;

十二日 じゅうににち

十二日 **jū ni nichi** *the 12th of the month or 12 days* (Lesson 44, item 6);

十五日 じゅうごにち

十五日 **jū go nichi**, *the 15th of the month (or 15 days)*

Exceptions: *the 14th and 24th of the month (or 14 and 14 days)* are pronounced 十四日 じゅうよっか **jū yok ka** and 二十四日 にじゅうよっか **ni jū yok ka**, mixing the two systems. Go figure! Also, *the 20th (or 20 days)* is 二十日 はつか **hatsuka**.

There is one single other instance where there is a Japanese number for 20, which is for expressing **age**. This nice round age gets special treatment: *20 years old* is 二十 はたち **hatachi**, purely Japanese! All other ages follow the “Chinese” system, with the measure word 歳 さい **sai**, *years old*, following the number (Lesson 15, item 11; Lesson 69, item 3).

So there you are! Your lessons in Japanese numbers are over. We tested your patience, but you have succeeded. So now two large chunks are fully digested: the て *te* forms and the numbers. Well done!

And for now, a bit of revision. It will do you good!

**2.** From the beginning, we've been using a phrase we've translated as *it is* (or *it was*, or *it is not*). The first form, which you know from constant exposure, is です *desu*. Now is high time to take a look at all the forms of this verb together and see how it works.

です *desu* is a middle degree *it is*. Other middle degree forms are the negation: で は ありません *de wa arimasen*, *it isn't* (Lesson 19, item 6, note 2, exercise 2, item 4; Lesson 22, item 6, note 1, exercise 1, item 1; Lesson 36, item 6; Lesson 38, item 4; Lesson 43, item 12; Lesson 50, item 11). The past tense: でした *deshita*, *it was* (Lesson 23, item 3, note 3, exercise 1, item 1, exercise 2, item 3; Lesson 26, items 1 and 4; Lesson 29, exercise 1, item 2; Lesson 32, items 2 and 11; Lesson 33, item 5; Lesson 36, item 9; Lesson 39, items 2, 7, and 14, exercise 2, item 2; Lesson 59, exercise 2, item 3; Lesson 60, items 2 and 10, exercise 2, item 1; Lesson 67, item 9; Lesson 68, item 11).

We also have a parallel series in low degree: *it is*, だ *da* (Lesson 19, item 12, note 4; Lesson 21, paragraph 4; Lesson 29, item 1, note 1; Lesson 41, item 12; Lesson 44, item 12; Lesson 47, item 2; Lesson 50, item 8, note 3; Lesson 52, exercise 1, item 1; Lesson 53, exercise 2, item 2; Lesson 64, item 14, exercise 1, item 2); the negation *it is not*, で は ない *de wa nai* (Lesson 36, exercise 1, item 5; Lesson 46, items 2 and 8, exercise 1, item 1; Lesson 50, item 12, exercise 1, item 1; Lesson 55, item 3; Lesson 57, exercise 1, item 4; Lesson 66, exercise 1, item 3); the past tense: だった *datta* (Lesson 39, exercise 2, item 2; Lesson 41, item 12, note 3; Lesson 53, item 8; Lesson 58, item 2).

For high degree, there are two verbs, one for **I** ("what concerns ME is") and one for **you** ("what concerns YOU is"). What we have seen so far is で ございます *de gozaimasu*, *it is, concerning me* (Lesson 44, items 1, 9, and 11, notes 1 and 6, exercise 1, item 1; Lesson 49, paragraph 2). Don't forget the most common form for introducing on the telephone (cf. Lesson 44, exercise 1, item 11).

70 We have already discussed でしょう *deshō*, *that must be* (Lesson 39, item 11; Lesson 43, exercise 1, item 5; Lesson 46, item 8; Lesson 50, item 10, note 4; Lesson 53, item 8; Lesson 55, item 10, note 4; Lesson 57, exercise 1, item 4; Lesson 58, items 7 and 11, exercise 1, item 2, exercise 2, item 4; Lesson 60, items 9 and 10, exercise 1, items 2 and 3; Lesson 62, item 2, exercise 1, item 2; Lesson 64, item 6, exercise 2, item 1; Lesson 66, item 3; Lesson 67, items 10 and 12; Lesson 69, item 1). Then で *de*, *it is*, with an indication that the sentence is not finished (Lesson 50, items 10 and 11, note 5, exercise 1, items 3 and 4, exercise 2, item 4; Lesson 51, exercise 1, item 5, exercise 2, item 3; Lesson 60, exercise 1, item 1; Lesson 62, item 4; Lesson 68, item 7; Lesson 69, items 3 and 5). And finally, で ある *de aru*, *which is* (Lesson 68, item 7, note 4, exercise 1, items 3 and 4), だったら *dattara*, *if it is* (Lesson 62, item 9, note 5, exercise 1, item 1).

We have also spoken about the な *na* form (Lesson 33, note 1). But for today we'll stop here. We'll take care of な *na* a bit on down the road.

3. We should now spend some time discussing some of the ideas behind **high degree**. First you should go back and re-read the passages introducing it earlier in the text, in Lessons 21 (paragraph 4), 28 (paragraph 4), and 49 (paragraph 2). The most difficult for us to master is that we absolutely cannot confuse the high degree used with **I** (or people in MY family, or anyone who owes respect), and the high degree forms we can use only with **you** (or HE when referring to someone who is owed respect).

Let's recapitulate a bit of what we've already learned (cf. also Lesson 68, note 2):

–for saying I: 申します *mōshimasu*, *to say, to be called* (Lesson 15, item 1), equivalent of the verb 言う *iu*. This is the term used in saying your own name: *My name is John Doe*, ジョン ドー と 申します *jon dō to mōshimasu*.

で ございます *de gozaimasu*, *it is* (concerning myself), cf. above paragraph.

おります *orimasu*, equivalent of いる *iru*, *exist* (Lesson 44, item 7, note 4).

うかがいます **ukagaimasu**, which corresponds either to the verb 聞く **kiku**, meaning *to hear said* (Lesson 47, item 2, note 2), or to the verb たずねる **tazuneru**, *to pay a visit to* (Lesson 59, item 4, note 3).

お 目 に かかります **o me ni kakarimasu**, equivalent to 会う **au**, *to meet* (Lesson 68, item 9, note 8).

いたします **itashimasu**, equivalent to する **suru**, *to do* (Lesson 69, item 11, note 8).

– **for saying YOU:** いらっしゃいます **irasshaimasu**, equivalent of 来る **kuru**, *to come* (Lesson 12, item 4, note 2; Lesson 18, item 1; Lesson 47, item 11; Lesson 67, item 11, note 5), or else 行く **iku**, *to go* (Lesson 68, item 8, note 7), or else いる **iru**, *exist*. For example, if you call someone and want to ask *Is Mr. Kawaguchi there?* you say:

川口 さんは いらっしゃいます か。

**kawaguchi san wa irasshaimasu ka.**

(Kawaguchi-Mr. / [announce] / HE exists there / [question])

なさいます **nasaimasu**, equivalent of する **suru**, *to do* (Lesson 46, item 7, note 4; Lesson 47, items 4 and 6).

御覧 下さい **goran kudasai**, equivalent of 見て 下さい **mite kudasai**, *look* (Lesson 65, item 7, note 5).

**Don't forget the golden rule: each one of these high degree forms are necessarily linked either to "I" (or a "he" on the same side as I), either to "you" (or a "he" who is owned respect).**

Each language has its own peculiarities! Otherwise we'd lose the spice of life!

## Second Wave: 第二十一課 (Lesson 21)

71 <sup>だい ななじゅういっか</sup> 第七十一課 dai nana jū ik ka

お見<sup>み</sup>合<sup>あ</sup>い Ⅱ  
o mi a i

- 1 - とても <sup>かん</sup>感じ の <sup>いい</sup>いい <sup>かた</sup>方 ね。 <sup>きれい</sup>きれいで、  
to te mo kan ji no i i kata ne. ki re i  
で、はきはき <sup>して</sup>して <sup>いて</sup>いて、<sup>しゃこうてき</sup>社交的  
de, ha ki ha ki shi te i te, sha kōteki  
<sup>な</sup>な <sup>ところ</sup>ところが <sup>いい</sup>いい <sup>わ</sup>わ ね。①  
na to ko ro ga i i wa ne.
- 2 - <sup>しゅみ</sup>趣味 も <sup>あ</sup>合<sup>い</sup>い <sup>そう</sup>そう <sup>じゃ</sup>じゃ <sup>ない</sup>ない? ②  
shu mi mo a i sō ja na i.

Notes

- ① In a very familiar and colloquial conversation such as this, where the conversation is between a father, mother, and children, not only is the dialogue in low degree, but some other elements disappear as well. Such as the **です desu** (or **だ da**) you were expecting between the <sup>かた</sup>**kata** and **ね ne** (cf. also the end of item 4). In contrast, they use <sup>かた</sup>**kata** (high degree of <sup>ひと</sup>**hito**, *person*) to speak of the young woman introduced to the family.
- ② **じゃ ja**. cf. Lesson 64, note 3. <sup>あ</sup>合<sup>い</sup>い <sup>そう</sup>そう <sup>です</sup>です **ai sō desu** (で **wa nai**). We already know <sup>そう</sup>そう <sup>です</sup>です **sō desu** when it directly follows a verb (cf. Lesson 53, note 2), but here try to open your eyes and look closer: in Lesson 53 we had: <sup>にゅういん</sup>入院 <sup>して</sup>して <sup>いる</sup>いる <sup>そう</sup>そう <sup>です</sup>です **nyūin shite iru sō desu**. And look at Lesson 55, item 11: <sup>たいくつ</sup>退屈 <sup>しない</sup>しない <sup>そう</sup>そう <sup>です</sup>です **taikutsu shinai sō desu**. Before <sup>そう</sup>そう **sō**, what do we have? The *u* form, or else the negative equivalent. And in this case, <sup>そう</sup>そう ▶





3- 勝明 と 同じ よう に スポーツ や  
 katsu aki to ona ji yō ni su pō tsu ya

旅行、音楽 が 好き だ と 言っ て  
 ryo kō, on gaku ga su ki da to i t te

いた し、それ に 語学 も よく  
 i ta shi, so re ni go gaku mo yo ku

できる そう だ し、ブラジル へ  
 de ki ru sō da shi, bu ra ji ru e

行っ て も きつ と ポルトガル語 を  
 i t te mo ki t to po ru to ga ru go o

はやく 覚える でしょう。③  
 ha ya ku obo e ru de shō.

4- 向こう の お父さん も お母さん  
 mu kō no o tō sa n mo o kaa sa n

も 感じ が いい 方達 だ し、  
 mo kan ji ga i i kata tachi da shi,

彼女 も お父さん が 五 六 年  
 kano jo mo o tō sa n ga go roku nen

前 に アメリカ に 二 年 いた  
 mae ni a me ri ka ni ni nen i ta

時、一緒 に 外国 生活 を した  
 toki, is sho ni gai koku sei katsu o shi ta

から、ブラジル でも 大丈夫 よ。④  
 ka ra, bu ra ji ru de mo dai jō bu yo.

5- 背 も お兄さん より ちよつと  
 se mo o nii sa n yo ri cho t to

小さくて、お 似合い よ。  
 chii sa ku te, o ni a i yo.

- 3 – She said that, like Katsuaki, she liked sports, travel, and music; what's more, it seems that she has a gift for languages; she'd surely learn Portuguese quickly by going to Brazil.

*(Katsuaki / [comparison] / same / way / [adverbial] / sport / and / travel / music / [subject] / liked / it is / [quotation] / said / and // what's more / languages study / also / well / be possible / it seems that / and // Brazil / [destination] / even if to go / certainly / Portugal-language / [object] / quickly / learn / that must be)*

- 4 – Her father and mother are also people who make a good impression; she herself, when her father went to America five or six years ago and stayed there for two years, she went to live with him abroad, so she'd have no problem in Brazil.

*(the opposite side / [relation] / her father / also / her mother / also / impression / [subject] / be good / people / it is / and // herself / also / her father / [subject] / five / six / year / before / [time] / America / [place] / two / year / existed / when // together / [adverbial] / abroad-live / [object] / did / because // Brazil / even / without problem / [engagement])*

- 5 – Her size too, she's just a bit shorter than Katsuaki, so they'll go well together!

*(size / also / my older brother / more than / a little / be small // [familiarity]-go well / [engagement])*



## Notes

③ と 同じ <sup>おなじ</sup> **to onaji**. cf. Lesson 60, note 4.

④ 五 六 年 <sup>ご ろく ねん</sup> **go roku nen**, *five or six years*. Just as in English we might say “five, six years” instead of the more proper “five or six years”, in Japanese it is sufficient to let the numbers follow each other.

- 6- 勝明さん どう 思いますか。  
 katsu aki sa n dō omo i ma su ka.
- 7- うん うん。悪くない けれど、少し  
 u n u n. waru ku na i ke re do, suko shi  
 気になる 事がある。  
 ki ni na ru koto ga a ru.
- 8- あら、なあに?⑤  
 a ra, na a ni?
- 9- お見合いの 写真では 振り袖  
 o mi a i no sha shin de wa fu ri sode  
 を着ていた から わからなかった  
 o ki te i ta ka ra wa ka ra na ka t ta  
 けれど、足が 太い のが 気  
 ke re do, ashi ga futo i no ga ki  
 になる なあ。⑥⑦⑧  
 ni na ru na a.
- 10- 他が 皆 いい の だ から、  
 hoka ga minna i i no da ka ra,  
 そのぐらい は 我慢 しなさい。  
 so no gu ra i wa ga man shi na sa i.

## Notes

- ⑤ なあに **naani**. Expressive elongation of the vowel in the word 何 **nani**, *what?*
- ⑥ 振り袖 **furisode**. A kimono (and therefore made with fine silk) with long sleeves. Traditionally worn by a young woman on her wedding day, as well as on the day she takes pictures for her **omiai**.
- ⑦ 足が太い のが **ashi ga futoi no ga**, cf. Lesson 47, note 4.
- ⑧ わからなかった **wakaranakatta**. Yet another for you might find somewhat barbaric! Remember that (Lesson 64, note 4) ▶

- 6 – And you, Katsuaki, what do you think?  
(Katsuaki / how / think / [question])
- 7 – Yeah... She's not bad, but there's something  
that bothers me.  
(yeah...) (not be bad / although // a little / bother / thing /  
[subject] / exist)
- 8 – Oh? Well what?
- 9 – I couldn't tell from the introduction photo  
because she was wearing a long kimono, but I  
don't like that her legs are so big.  
([familiarity]-arranged marriage / [relation] / photo / [place] /  
[emphasis] / ceremonial kimono / [object] / wore / because //  
not be understandable / although /// leg / [subject] / be thick /  
fact of / be a topic of preoccupation / [reflection])
- 10 – But everything else is good, you should just put  
up with that.  
(other / [subject] / all / be good / it's that / because // this-  
degree / [announce] / patience-do)



- ▶ the suffix *ない* **nai**, which expresses a negation, for verbs as well as for adjectives, is itself an adjective, which means that it has all an adjective's forms. One of these forms, which we've known since the beginning, is the past tense (cf. Lesson 35, paragraph 3): instead of the final *i*, we have **katta**. *おいしい* **oishii**, *it's good*, *おいしかった* **oishikatta**, *it was good*. With the negative form of an adjective or verb, it's the same thing: *わからない* **wakaranai**, *not understandable*, *わからなかった* **wakaranakatta**, *was not understandable*.

## Exercise 1

- ① 僕<sup>ぼく</sup>は、大<sup>おお</sup>きく な<sup>と</sup>つたら、お父<sup>おた</sup>さんと 同<sup>おな</sup>じ  
boku wa, ookiku nattara, otōsan to onaji

よう に、お 医<sup>い</sup>者<sup>しや</sup> さん に な<sup>い</sup>りたい。  
yō ni, o isha san ni naritai.

- ② オーストラリア に 九<sup>きゅう</sup>年<sup>ねん</sup> か 十<sup>じゅう</sup>年<sup>ねん</sup>  
ōsutoraria ni kyūnen ka jūnen

滞<sup>たい</sup>在<sup>ざい</sup> した こと も ある し、大<sup>だい</sup>学<sup>がく</sup>  
taizai shita koto mo aru shi, daigaku

で オーストラリア の 経<sup>けい</sup>済<sup>ざい</sup> の こと  
de ōsutoraria no keizai no koto

を 勉<sup>べん</sup>強<sup>きょう</sup> した こと も ある し、  
o benkyō shita koto mo aru shi,

また そこの 新<sup>しん</sup>聞<sup>ぶん</sup>社<sup>しゃ</sup> で 働<sup>はたら</sup>いた  
mata soko no shibunsha de hataraita

こと も あり<sup>あ</sup>ます。  
koto mo arimasu.

\*\*\*

- ③ 子供<sup>こども</sup> が、転<sup>ころ</sup>んで、泣<sup>な</sup>き そう でした。  
 kodomo ga, koronde, naki sō deshita.
- ④ 新<sup>あたら</sup>しい ベッド を 買<sup>か</sup>った 日<sup>ひ</sup> から、よく  
 atarashii beddo o katta hi kara, yoku  
 眠<sup>ねむ</sup>れる そう です。  
 nemureru sō desu.
- ⑤ 時<sup>じ</sup>間<sup>かん</sup> が なか<sup>な</sup>った ので、鈴<sup>すず</sup>村<sup>むら</sup>  
 jikan ga nakatta node, suzumura  
 さん に 会<sup>あ</sup>えな<sup>な</sup>かった の です。  
 san ni aenakatta no desu.

### Answers to Exercise 1

- ① When I grow up, I want to be a doctor like my dad. ② He lived in Australia for nine or ten years, at university he studied Australian economy, and what's more he worked in a newspaper over there. ③ A child had fallen, and he seemed to be about to cry. ④ It seems that, since the day he bought a new bed, he has been able to sleep well. ⑤ I didn't have the time, so I could not meet Suzumura.

\*\*\*

## 71 Exercise 2

...に<sup>ことば</sup>言葉<sup>い</sup>を入れなさい

- ① It seems that Portuguese is more difficult than Spanish.  
.....  
.....
- ② He said that he would come the day after the day after tomorrow without fail.  
.....
- ③ I didn't do anything all day long!  
..... jū ..... yo
- ④ I haven't written a single page since the beginning of January.  
..... mo .....  
no desu
- ⑤ He says that he can't hold on any longer!  
..... dekinai .....

\*\*\*

ひら が な れんしゅう  
平假名の練習  
hira ga na no ren shū  
Hiragana Exercises

ま  
MA

み  
MI

む  
MU

め  
ME

も  
MO



## Answers to Exercise 2

- ① porutogarugo wa supeingo yori muzukashii sō desu. ② shiasatte tashika ni kuru to iimashita. ③ ichinichi – nanimo shinakatta –. ④ o shōgatsu kara ichi pēji – kakanakatta –. ⑤ mō gaman – to itte imasu.

\*\*\*

## か と 書き取り kakitori – Dictation

- ① tabemono (food) ② hajime (beginning) ③ migi (right) ④ mazu (first)  
⑤ nomu (to drink) ⑥ totemo (very) ⑦ imōto (little sister) ⑧ mihon  
(sample) ⑨ o medetō gozaimasu (congratulations) ⑩ mago (grand  
children) ⑪ heimin (common people) ⑫ semai (to be narrow)  
⑬ munashii (to be vain) ⑭ hōmen (direction) ⑮ musume (girl)

- ① たべもの ② はじめ ③ みぎ ④ まず ⑤ のむ ⑥ とても ⑦ いもうと  
⑧ みほん ⑨ おめでとう ⑩ ございます ⑪ まご ⑫ へいみん  
⑬ せまい ⑭ むなしい ⑮ ほうめん ⑯ むすめ

## Second Wave: 第二十二課 (Lesson 22)

72 第七十二課 dai nana jū ni ka

スキー  
su kī

- 1- ウィークエンド は 楽しかった？  
u ī ku e n do wa tanoshi ka t ta?
- 2- ひどい 目 に あった。もう 二度 と  
hi do i me ni a t ta. mō ni do to  
あいつ と は スキー に 行かない。①  
a i tsu to wa su kī ni i kana i.
- 3- あら、どう した の。②  
a ra, dō shi ta no.
- 4- いつも スキー が 上手 だと  
i tsu mo su kī ga jō zu da to  
自慢 して いる 谷沢 君 を  
ji man shi te i ru tani zawa kun o  
知っている だろう。③④  
shi t te i ru da rō.

Notes

- ① あいつ **aitsu**. This term is used to designate a third person, but only in specific instances. Do not use it indiscriminately, as it can be taken pejoratively. Here the speaker uses it in anger, expressing his displeasure with *that guy*.
- ② Once again, we have another の **no**, not to be confused with the others. We've already seen it – though rarely – used only by women, to indicate a question instead of か **ka** (cf. Lesson 29, note 14).

---

## Lesson Seventy-Two 72

### Skiing

(ski)

- 1 – Did you have a good weekend?  
*(weekend / [announce] / was pleasant)*
- 2 – It was horrible! I'll never go skiing again with that fool!  
*(horrible situation / [goal] / met) (again / two-times / [adverbial] / that one / with / [emphasis] / ski / [goal] / not go)*
- 3 – Really! What happened?  
*(oh really / how / did / [question])*
- 4 – You must know Tanizawa, who always brags about being a great skier.  
*(always / ski / [subject] / skill / it is / [quotation] / pride-do / Tanizawa / [object] / know / that must be)*

- ▶ ③ 谷沢 君 **tanizawa kun**. We already know さん **san**, to follow someone's name; we've seen ちゃん **chan** (Lesson 39, item 11 and note 7) used when speaking to children, and now here is 君 **kun**, used after naming a friend, or when you say a little boy's name.
- ④ だろう **darō**. Low degree of でしょう **deshō**, cf. Lesson 55, note 4.

- 5 リフトで山の上まで行って、  
 ri fu to de yama no ue ma de i t te,  
 きれいな雪景色を見たところ  
 ki re i na yuki ge shiki o mi ta to ko ro  
 まではよかったのだけれど、  
 ma de wa yo ka t ta no da ke re do,  
 皆が降りたのに、あいつだけ  
 minna ga o ri ta no ni, a i tsu da ke  
 降りてこないんだ。⑤  
 o ri te ko na i n da.
- 6 二十分近くふもとで待った  
 ni jup pun chikaku fu mo to de ma t ta  
 けれど、来ないから心配して、  
 ke re do, ko na i ka ra shinpai shi te,  
 わざわざ又上まで見  
 wa za wa za mata ue ma de mi ni  
 行ったら、こわくて降りられない  
 i t ta ra, ko waku te o ri ra re na i  
 とべそをかいていた。⑤⑥  
 to be so o ka i te i ta.
- 7- それでどうしたの。  
 so re de dō shi ta no.

## Notes

- ⑤ こない **konai**, negative low degree equivalent to the middle degree 来ません **kimasen**, *not to come*. It's an irregular form of the verb 来る **kuru**, *to come*. This verb, like する **suru** (cf. Lesson 42, paragraph 4) has only one root, き **ki**, to which all suffixes are added. The only exception is the root こ **ko**, onto which the suffix ない **nai** alone is attached. ▶

- 5 It was all fine when we got to the top of the mountain by chairlift and we were looking at the beautiful snowy scenery, but when we'd all come down, only he hadn't made it.

*(chairlift / [means] / mountain / [relation] / top / up to / go // beautiful / it is / snow-scenery / [object] / looked / moment / up to / [announce] / was good / it's that / even though /// all / [subject] / came down / even though // this one / only / come down / not come / it's that)*

- 6 We waited nearly twenty minutes at the foot of the mountain, but he never showed up, so I got worried; when I went back up to see, he was sniveling that he couldn't go down, because he was too scared.

*(two-ten-minute / close to / foot of the mountain / [place] / waited / even though /// not come / because // anguish-do /// on purpose / anew / top / up to / see / [goal] / when I went // be scared / not be able to go down / [quotation] / snivel)*

- 7 – So, what did you do?

*(so / how / did / [question])*



- ▶ ⑥ 降りられない **orirarenai**, *not to be able to go down*. The negation of 降りられる **orirareru**, *to be able to go down*. Does this remind you of anything? The rule of “**be able + verb**”? Ah, but of course! Lesson 64, note 2. In that note we explained the case of verbs with multiple roots, but here we have verbs with just one. Of course we can create a new form meaning *to be able to...* out of verbs with just one root: 降りる **oriru**, *to go down*; 降りられる **orirareru**, *to be able to go down*. Instead of the final *u*, we add **areru**. But only verbs with one root can be modified this way. Thus the negative form in low degree would be: root 降りられ **orirare** + ない **nai** = 降りられない **orirarenai**. The low degree form in past tense (item 10) is 降りられた **orirareta**.

- 8- だから 子供 に スキー を 教えて  
 da ka ra ko do mo ni su kī o oshi e te  
 やる よう に、あいつ の 前 を  
 ya ru yō ni, a i tsu no mae o.  
 ゆっくり と 道 を 作って やり  
 yu k ku ri to michi o tsuku t te ya ri  
 ながら 降りて いった ん だ。①  
 na ga ra o ri te i t ta n da.
- 9 でも 上手 に カーブ を 曲がれない  
 de mo jō zu ni kā bu o maga re na i  
 から、スピード が 出て、すぐ 転ぶ。⑦  
 ka ra, su pī do ga de te, su gu koro bu.
- 10 その上 一人 で 起き上がれない  
 so no ue hito ri de o ki a ga re na i  
 から、その たんび に 起こして  
 ka ra, so no ta n bi ni o ko shi te  
 やり、半日 かかって、やっと 一つ  
 ya ri, hannichi ka ka t te, ya t to hito tsu  
 の 山 から 降りられた。⑥⑧⑨  
 no yama ka ra o ri ra re ta.

## Notes

- ⑦ 曲がれない **magarenai**, from 曲がる **magareru**, to be able to turn, which comes from 曲がる **magaru**, to turn, a multiple-root verb (cf. Lesson 64, note 2).
- ⑧ 起き上がれない **okiagarenai**, which comes from 起き上がる **okiagaru**, to get up, multiple-root verb (cf. Lesson 64, note 2).
- ⑨ 半日 かかって **han nichi kakatte** (cf. Lesson 55, note 3).

- 8 – So I went down slowly in front of him as he followed my steps, like how you teach a child to ski.

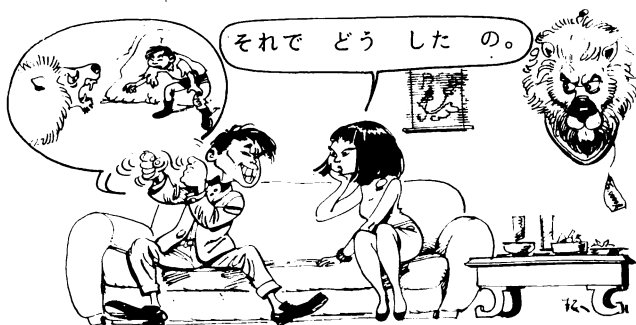
*(so / child / [attribution] / ski / [object] / teach / do for someone / so that // this one / [relation] / before / [object] / slowly / path / [object] / make / do for someone / while / go down / go / it's that)*

- 9 But because he couldn't turn, picked up speed and fell down right away.

*(but / skill / [adverbial] / bend / [object] / not be able to turn / because /// speed / [subject] / appear // right away / fall)*

- 10 And then, because he couldn't get back up on his own, each time I had to pick him up, which took half the day just for me to get him down one slope.

*(what's more / alone / not be able to get up / because // each time / [adverbial] / get up / do for someone /// half-day / use // finally / one / [relation] / mountain / from / was able to go down)*



11 その <sup>あと</sup>後 は くたびれて <sup>やまごや</sup>山小屋  
 so no ato wa ku ta bi re te yama go ya  
 から <sup>ゆき</sup>雪 が <sup>ふ</sup>降って いる の を  
 ka ra yuki ga fu t te i ru no o  
 見て <sup>み</sup>いた だけ な ん だ。  
 mi te i ta da ke na n da.

12 - あら あら、せっかく の ウィークエンド  
 a ra a ra, se k kaku no u ī ku e n do  
 が だいなし だった わ ね。  
 ga da i na shi da t ta wa ne.

\*\*\*

れんしゅう  
 練習

Exercise 1

- ① <sup>らいしゅう</sup>来週 できません か と <sup>ともだち</sup>友達 に  
 raishū dekimasen ka to tomodachi ni  
 聞きました が、どうしても だめ だと  
 kikimashita ga, dōshitemo dame da to  
 答えました ので、とても こまりました。  
 kotaemashita node, totemo komarimashita.
- ② <sup>くうこう</sup>空港 へ <sup>い</sup>行く バス は <sup>こ</sup>混んで いて、  
 kūkō e iku basu wa konde ite,  
<sup>の</sup>乗れなかった。  
 norenakatta.
- ③ この <sup>きかい</sup>機械 の <sup>つか</sup>使い方 <sup>かた</sup>わからない？  
 kono kikai no tsukaikata wakaranai?  
 おれ が <sup>おし</sup>教えて やる よ。  
 ore ga oshiete yaru yo.



11 After that, exhausted, I could do nothing but watch the snow fall from the chalet.

(this / after / [emphasis] / be exhausted // chalet / from / snow / [subject] / fall / fact of / [object] / saw / only / it is / it's that)

12 – Oh! A precious weekend wasted!

(oh / precious occasion / [relation] / weekend / [subject] / wasted / it was / [softener] / [agreement])

\*\*\*

④ 山道<sup>やまみち</sup> は カーブ<sup>か</sup> が 多くて、その上<sup>おお</sup>  
yamamichi wa kābu ga ookute, sonoue  
雪<sup>ゆき</sup> が 降<sup>ふ</sup>って いて、車<sup>くるま</sup> が ホテル  
yuki ga futte ite, kuruma ga hoteru  
の 前<sup>まえ</sup> に 止<sup>と</sup>まった 時<sup>とき</sup> は、もう  
no mae ni tomatta toki wa, mō  
夜中<sup>よなか</sup> でした。皆<sup>みんな</sup> くたびれて、  
yonaka deshita. minna kutabirete,  
何<sup>なに</sup>も 食<sup>た</sup>べないで、寝<sup>ね</sup>て しまいました。  
nanimo tabenaide, nete shimaimashita.

⑤ お祖父<sup>じい</sup>さんは、これ<sup>こ</sup>を 聞<sup>き</sup>いて、  
ojiisan wa, kore o kiite,  
子<sup>こ</sup>供<sup>ども</sup> の よう に 泣<sup>な</sup>きました。  
kodomo no yō ni nakimashita.

### Answers to Exercise 1

- ① I asked my friend if he couldn't do it next week, but he answered that it was absolutely impossible, so I was very annoyed.
- ② The bus that goes to the airport was packed, and I couldn't get on.
- ③ You don't know how to use this machine? I'll teach you. ④ The mountain path was winding (the curves were many), and what's more it was snowing; when the car stopped in front of the hotel, it was already late at night. All of us, exhausted, went to bed without eating. ⑤ Grandpa cried like a baby when he heard this.

72 Exercise 2

...に<sup>ことば</sup>言葉<sup>い</sup>を入れなさい

① I can read. I can walk. I can take. I can swim.  
I cannot sit down. I cannot use (it). I could not rest.

.....  
.....

② (in low degree) I can remember. I cannot forget. I cannot sleep.  
I can go out.

.....  
.....

③ These Chinese characters are (too) small, I can't read them.  
.... kanji .. .., .....

④ The chalet was small, but the snowy scenery was magnificent.  
..... sema. ...., .....

\*\*\*

ひら が な れんしゅう  
平假名の練習  
hira ga na no ren shū  
Hiragana Exercises

や  
YA

ゆ  
YU

よ  
YO

わ  
WA

⑤ Even though I rested for a week, I am still tired.

72

..... , .....  
.....

## Answers to Exercise 2

① yomeru. arukeru. toreru. oyogeru. suwarenai. tsukaenai. yasumenakatta. ② oboerareru. wasurerarenai. nerarenai. derareru. ③ kono – wa chiisakute, yomemasen. ④ yamagoya wa – katta desu ga, yukigeshiki wa utsukushikatta desu. ⑤ issjukan yasunda noni, mada kutabirete imasu.

\*\*\*

## か と 書き取り kakitori – Dictation

① yomu (read) ② yūbe (last night) ③ hiyake (sunlight) ④ watakushi (me) ⑤ oyogu (swim) ⑥ heiwa (peace) ⑦ omiyage (gift) ⑧ yōfuku (clothing) ⑨ yūmei (famous) ⑩ nigiyaka (animated) ⑪ yūbin (mail) ⑫ wakusei (planet) ⑬ getsuyōbi (Monday) ⑭ denwa (telephone) ⑮ yubune (bathtub) ⑯ heya (room)

① よむ ② ゆうべ ③ ひやけ ④ わたくし ⑤ およぐ ⑥ へいわ  
⑦ おみやげ ⑧ ようふく ⑨ ゆうめい ⑩ にぎやか ⑪ ゆうびん  
⑫ わくせい ⑬ げつようび ⑭ でんわ ⑮ ゆぶね ⑯ へや

Second Wave: 第二十三課 (Lesson 23)

hyaku hachi jū hachi • 188

73 <sup>だい ななじゅうさん か</sup> 第七十三課 **dai nana jū san ka**

しず                      な                      ばん  
**静か                      な                      晩**  
**shizu ka                      na                      ban**

1 - ただいま。①

ta da i ma.

2 - あっ、お父さん。お 帰り なさい。①②  
a t, o tō san. o kae ri na sa i.

3 今日 は 早かった の ね。夕食  
kyō wa haya ka t ta no ne. yū shoku

の 支度 が まだ できて ない  
no shitaku ga mada de ki te na i

から、お 風呂 に でも 入って、  
ka ra, o fu ro ni de mo hai t te,

疲れ を 落として いて 下さい。③  
tsukare o o to shi te i te kuda sa i.

4 - うん。

u n.

**Notes**

① This exchange of greetings signifies a return home: the child home from school or the husband home from work calls out **ただいま *tadaima***, literally: “right now (I’m back)”; those at home answer **お 帰り なさい *o kaeri nasai***, literally: “return (home)”, often abbreviated as **お 帰り *o kaeri***.

② **お父さん *otōsan*** means *dad*. Normally spoken by children, it is sometimes used by a wife to refer to her husband (just like in English, from time to time). She borrows the word from her children.

**A Quiet Night**

(quiet / it is / night)

- 1 – Good evening!  
(right now)
- 2 – Ah! Dad! Good evening!  
(ah / dad) ([familiarity]-come back)
- 3 You're back early today! I haven't finished preparing dinner yet, so take a bath, have a rest.  
(today / [emphasis] / was early / it's that / [agreement])  
(meal / [relation] / preparation / [subject] / not yet / not finished / because /// [familiarity]-bath / [goal] / even / enter // tiredness / [object] / make fall)
- 4 – All right.



- ▶ ③ 今日<sup>けふ</sup>は早<sup>はや</sup>かったのね **kyō wa hayakatta no ne**. This の no here, in this familiar conversation between a husband and wife, is all that's left of の です **no desu!** (cf. Lesson 30, note 2).

5- あなた、<sup>しょくじ</sup>食事 が できました よ。  
 a na ta, shoku ji ga de ki ma shi ta yo.

いつでも <sup>た</sup>食べられます よ。お  
 i tsu de mo ta be ra re ma su yo. o

かん <sup>ひと</sup>一つ つけましよう か。④⑤  
 ka n hitotsu tsu ke ma shō ka.

6- うん、いい な。お前 <sup>まえ</sup>も <sup>いっぱい</sup>一杯  
 u n, i i na. o mae mo ip pai

どう だ。⑥  
 dō da.

7- あたし は お <sup>ちゃ</sup>茶 の <sup>ほう</sup>方が いい  
 a ta shi wa o cha no hō ga i i

から、お <sup>ゆ</sup>湯 を <sup>わ</sup>沸かして きます。⑦  
 ka ra, o yu o wa ka shi te ki ma su.

8- ああ、<sup>こんばん</sup>今晚 は <sup>ひさぶ</sup>久し振り に <sup>はや</sup>早く  
 a a, kon ban wa hisa shi bu ri ni hayaku

<sup>ね</sup>寝られる な。⑧  
 ne ra re ru na.

9- そう です よ。たま に は <sup>すいみん</sup>睡眠  
 sō de su yo. ta ma ni wa suimin

を <sup>じゅうぶん</sup>十分 <sup>と</sup>取って いた <sup>だ</sup>だかない と  
 o jū bun to t te i ta da ka na i to

<sup>からだ</sup>体 が もちません よ。  
 karada ga mo chi ma se n yo.

## Notes

④ できる **dekiru** means *to be possible*. This is the definition we've been coming across until today. It also means *to be finished*.

⑤ <sup>た</sup>食べられます **taberaremasu**, *to be able to eat*, a verb derived from <sup>た</sup>食べる **taberu**, *to eat*, cf. Lesson 72, note 6. ▶

- 5 – It's ready. We can have dinner when you want.  
You'll have a bit of sake.  
*(you / meal / [subject] / to be ready / [engagement]) (when-  
ever / be able to eat / [engagement]) ([familiarity]-hot sake /  
one / let's put / [question])*
- 6 – Yes, I'd love some. You'll have a glass, too?  
*(all right / be good / [reflection]) (you / also / one-glass /  
how / it is)*
- 7 – I prefer tea. I'm going to boil some water.  
*(me / [announce] / [familiarity]-tea / [relation] / side /  
[subject] / be good / because // [familiarity]-hot water /  
[object] / make boil / come)*
- 8 – Ah... We can get to bed early tonight, which we  
haven't been able to do in a long time.  
*(ah / tonight / [emphasis] / after a long time / [adverbial] /  
early / be able to go to bed / [reflection])*
- 9 – Yes. You have to get a good night's sleep from  
time to time, or else you won't last very long.  
*(so / it is / [engagement]) (from time to time / [adverbial] /  
[emphasis] / sleep / [object] / enough / take / not receive /  
when // body / [subject] / not bear / [engagement])*



- ▶ ⑥ お前 <sup>まえ</sup> **omae**, *you*. Take another look at Lesson 66, note 4. You could also say it's a low degree *あなた* **anata**. It is very familiar, and used only by men.
- ⑦ お茶 <sup>ちや</sup> **o cha**. This is specifically green tea, made from non-roasted tea leaves.
- ⑧ 寝られる <sup>ね</sup> **nerareru**, *to be able to sleep*, a verb derived from 寝る <sup>ね</sup> **neru**, *to sleep*, with one root. cf. in that case, Lesson 72, note 6.

- 10 - こんばん は。自動車 が あった  
 ko n ba n wa. ji dō sha ga a t ta  
 ので、いらっしゃると 思って…⑨  
 no de, i ra s sha ru to omo t te
- 11 - ああ、せっかく 今晚 は 早く  
 a a, se k ka ku konban wa haya ku  
 寝られる と 思って いた のに…  
 ne ra re ru to omo t te i ta no ni...
- 12 - あいつ が 先月 行った ヨーロッパ  
 a i tsu ga sen getsu i t ta yō ro p pa  
 旅行 の 話 を 始める と、夜中  
 ryo kō no hanashi o haji meru to, yo naka  
 の 一時 まで かかって しまう  
 no ichi ji ma de ka ka t te shi ma u  
 から なあ。  
 ka ra na a.
- 13 前 から おしゃべり だった のに、  
 mae ka ra o sha be ri da t ta no ni,  
 あの 旅行 に 行って から  
 a no ryokō ni i t te ka ra  
 ますます おしゃべり に なって  
 ma su ma su o sha be ri ni na t te  
 帰って きた から なあ。⑩  
 kae t te ki ta ka ra na a.
- 14 - さあ、ようこそ いらっしゃいました。  
 sa a, yō ko so i ra s sha i ma shi ta.  
 ちょうど お噂 を して いた  
 chō do o uwasa o shi te i ta  
 ところ です… どうぞ、どうぞ…⑪  
 to ko ro desu... dō zo, dō zo...



- 10 – Good evening. I saw your car, so I thought you were there.  
*(good evening) (car / [subject] / existed / because // exist / [quotation] / think)*
- 11 – Ah! Here I thought I could get to sleep early!  
*(ah / precious occasion / tonight / [emphasis] / early / be able to sleep / [quotation] / thought / even though)*
- 12 – When this guy starts to talk about that trip to Europe he made last month, you're at it until at least one in the morning...  
*(this guy / [subject] / last month / went / Europe-trip / [relation] / talk / [object] / begin / when // night / [relation] / one-o'clock / up to / be used / do until end / because / [reflection])*
- 13 He was already a big talker before, but since he made that trip, he's become even worse.  
*(before / from / [familiarity]-chitchat / it was / even though /// this / trip / [goal] / go / since / more and more / [familiarity]-chitchat / [goal] / become // returned / because / [reflection])*
- 14 – Welcome. We were just talking of you... Please, come in, come in.  
*(welcome) (just / [politeness]-gossip / [object] / did / moment / it is) (please / please)*



## Notes

- ⑨ いらっしゃる *irassharu*. We have already seen this high degree verbs several times. But in fact it is the high degree form of three verbs. Until now (Lesson 12, item 4; Lesson 18, item 1; Lesson 47, item 11; Lesson 67, item 11) it has been the high degree version of 来る *kuru*, to come, and of 行く *iku*, to go, (Lesson 68, item 8, note 7). Now we find it as the high degree equivalent of いる *iru*, to exist, to be somewhere.
- ⑩ Pay attention not to confuse the *u* or *ta* + から *kara*, because, and the *te* form + から *kara*, since, after which. 行って から *itte kara*, since he went.
- ⑪ cf. Lesson 40, note 1.

## Exercise 1

- ① <sup>いま</sup> 今 <sup>せいかつ</sup> の 生活 <sup>むかし</sup> は 昔 <sup>くら</sup> と 比べる  
 ima no seikatsu wa mukashi to kuraberu  
 と、<sup>ずいぶん</sup> 随分 <sup>べんり</sup> 便利 <sup>に</sup> になりました ね。  
 to, zuibun benri ni narimashita ne.
- ② <sup>じょうけん</sup> 条件 <sup>き</sup> が 決まって から、<sup>かんたん</sup> 簡単 <sup>に</sup>  
 jōken ga kimatte kara, kantan ni  
 になりました。  
 narimashita.
- ③ この <sup>おお どの</sup> 大通り <sup>わた</sup> を 渡って から、<sup>いち</sup> 一キロ  
 kono oodoori o watatte kara, ichikiro  
 ぐらい まっすぐ <sup>ある</sup> 歩く と、<sup>びょういん</sup> 病院 <sup>に</sup>  
 gurai massugu aruku to, byōin ni  
 着きます。  
 tsukimasu.
- ④ <sup>えき</sup> 駅 <sup>はい</sup> に 入る と ちょうど <sup>きしや</sup> 汽車 <sup>が</sup>  
 eki ni hairu to chōdo kisha ga  
<sup>しゅっぱつ</sup> 出発 <sup>した</sup> した <sup>ところ</sup> ところ <sup>でした</sup> でした。  
 shuppatsu shita tokoro deshita.

\*\*\*

- ⑤ この <sup>さかな</sup>魚 は <sup>しん せん</sup>新鮮 です。今 <sup>いま</sup> <sup>つ</sup>釣った

kono sakana wa shinsen desu. ima tsutta

ところ です。

tokoro desu.

- ⑥ <sup>じゅっ ぶん</sup>十分 で <sup>じゅう ぶん</sup>十分 だ。

juppun de jūbun da.

### Answers to Exercise 1

① When compared to before, today's life is much easier. ② Since the conditions were fixed, it's become easier. ③ If you walk straight for about one kilometer after crossing this avenue, you arrive at the hospital. ④ When I entered the station, the train was just pulling out. ⑤ This fish is fresh. It was just caught this moment. ⑥ Ten minutes would be enough.

\*\*\*

73 Exercise 2

...に<sup>こと</sup>言葉<sup>ば</sup>を<sup>い</sup>入れなさい

- ① Sit down on this chair. Look there.  
Take this magazine. Stick out your tongue. Stand up.

.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

- ② Let's sit down here. Let's look there. Let's take these magazines. Let's stick out our tongues. Let's stand up.

.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

\*\*\*

ひらがな <sup>れんしゅう</sup>の練習  
 hira ga na no ren shū  
 Hiragana Exercises

ら  
RA

り  
RI

る  
RU

れ  
RE

ろ  
RO

- ③ Even though it's early, there are a lot of people taking a walk in the park.

....., kōen o sanpo .....

- ④ It is only used in specific instances.

..... na .....

- ⑤ Since I got back from Europe, I've begun to study Italian.

....., .....

## Answers to Exercise 2

① kono isu ni suwatte kudasai. asoko o mite kudasai. kono zasshi o totte kudasai. shita o dashite kudasai. tatte kudasai. ② koko ni suwarimashō. asoko o mimashō. kono zasshi o torimashō. shita o dashimashō. tachimashō. ③ hayai noni, – shite iru hito ga takusan imasu. ④ tokubetsu – baai ni shika tsukaimasen. ⑤ yōroppa kara kaette kara, itariago no benkyō o hajimemashita.

\*\*\*

## か と 書き取り kakitori – Dictation

① wasureru (forget) ② reizōko (refrigerator) ③ karappo (completely empty) ④ tsumori (intention) ⑤ odoroku (be surprised) ⑥ oboeru (remember) ⑦ owari (end) ⑧ kanarazu (without fail) ⑨ monogatari (recite) ⑩ nukeru (to slip out) ⑪ mochiron (of course) ⑫ tempura (fried fish and vegetables) ⑬ mamoru (keep) ⑭ reibō (air conditioned) ⑮ yoroshii (to be good, high degree)

① わすれる ② れいぞうこ ③ からっぽ ④ つもり ⑤ おどろく  
⑥ おぼえる ⑦ おわり ⑧ かならず ⑨ ものがたり ⑩ ぬける  
⑪ もちろん ⑫ てんぷら ⑬ まもる ⑭ れいぼう ⑮ よろしい

## Second Wave: 第二十四課 (Lesson 24)

おも ちが  
思い違い  
omo i chiga i

- 1 (十二月、三十一日、五時、ミネ さん  
jū ni gatsu, san jū ichi nichi, go ji, mi ne sa n  
は シャンペン を 持って 一張羅  
wa sha n pe n o mo t te it chō ra  
の 背広 を 着て、藤村 さんの  
no se biro o ki te, fuji mura sa n no  
ドア の ベル を 鳴らす。)  
do a no be ru o na ra su.
- 2- あ、来て くれて ちょうど よかった。  
a, ki te ku re te chō do yo ka t ta.  
たすかった わ。  
ta su ka t ta wa.
- 3 いい の? そんな すてき な 洋服  
i i no? so n na su te ki na yō fuku  
を 着て…  
o ki te…
- 4 それに おみやげ に シャンペン  
so re ni o mi yage ni sha n pe n  
まで。冷蔵庫 に 入れて 冷やして  
ma de. rei zō ko ni i re te hi ya shi te  
おきましょう。①  
o ki ma shō.

## Misunderstanding

*(misunderstanding)*

- 1 (December 31st, at five o'clock, Mr. Minet, carrying a bottle of champagne and dressed in his nicest suit, rings Miss Fujimura's doorbell.)  
*(ten-two-month / three-ten-one-day / five-o'clock / Minet-Mr. / [announce] / champagne / [object] / hold // unique suit / [apposition] / suit / [object] / wear clothing // Fujimura-Miss / [relation] / door / [relation] / doorbell / [object] / make ring)*
- 2 – Ah, you've come. Right on time!  
*(ah / come / did for me / just / was good) (helped / [softener])*
- 3 Really? With such a fancy suit!  
*(be good / [question]) (in this manner / ravishing / it is / clothing / [object] / wear)*
- 4 And a gift of champagne, too! Let's put it in the refrigerator.  
*(what's more / [familiarity]-gift / [goal] / champagne / up to) (refrigerator / [place] / put in // make cool / let's do in advance)*

### Notes

- ① 冷<sup>ひ</sup>やして おきましょう **hiyashite okimashō**. This **て** form verb sure shows up everywhere, doesn't it? It's economical, but not always obvious. We often use it to build verbal compounds, combining one verb with another, used like a suffix, to indicate something about how the first verb is done. The second verb loses its "normal" meaning, and becomes solely the conduit for expressing the action of the first verb. We have long known **て+いる te + iru** (cf. Lesson 35, paragraph 4), as well as **て+みる te + miru** (cf. Lesson 51, note 2 and Lesson 60, note 10). Here **て+おく te + oku** indicates that we're going to do something (in this case, cool something down) *for later*.

- 5 (夜<sup>よる</sup>の八時<sup>はちじ</sup>。午後<sup>ごご</sup>の五時<sup>ごじ</sup>から  
 (yoru no hachi ji. go go no go ji ka ra  
 始<sup>はじ</sup>めた大掃除<sup>おおそうじ</sup>がまだ<sup>お</sup>終わらない。  
 hajime ta oo sō ji ga ma da o war a na i.  
 ミネさんが心配<sup>しんぱい</sup>そうに：)  
 mi ne sa n ga shinpai sō ni:)
- 6- いつお料理<sup>りょうり</sup>を作<sup>つく</sup>りはじめますか。②  
 i tsu o ryō ri o tsuku ri ha ji mema su ka.
- 7- お節料理<sup>せちりょうり</sup>はもうできているから、  
 o sechi ryō ri wa mō de ki te i ru kara,  
 後<sup>あと</sup>二時間<sup>にじかん</sup>我慢<sup>がまん</sup>すれば、家中<sup>いえじゅう</sup>が  
 ato ni ji kan ga man su re ba, ie jū ga  
 きれいになって、お正月<sup>しょうがつ</sup>を  
 ki re i ni na t te, o shō gatsu o  
 迎<sup>むか</sup>える準備<sup>じゅんび</sup>が整<sup>ととの</sup>うわ。③④  
 muka e ru jun bi ga totono u wa.
- 8- お正月<sup>しょうがつ</sup>の準備<sup>じゅんび</sup>って大掃除<sup>おおそうじ</sup>  
 o shō gatsu no jun bi t te oo sō ji  
 のことですか。他<sup>ほか</sup>のお客<sup>きやく</sup>  
 no ko to de su ka. hoka no o kyaku  
 さんはいつ来<sup>く</sup>るんですか。  
 sa n wa i tsu ku ru n de su ka.

## Notes

- ② In Japanese we often come across compound verbs, which is when one verb follows the other. Verbs are attached by the root of the single-root verb or by the *i* root for multiple-root verbs. We often find 始<sup>はじ</sup>める **hajimeru**, *to begin*, as the second verb in these compounds. For example, 作<sup>つく</sup>る **tsukuru**, *to make*, becomes 作<sup>つく</sup>りはじめる **tsukurihajimeru**, *to begin making*. In this case, the final verb is always written in hiragana. ▶



- 5 (Eight o'clock at night. The big cleaning, which began at five in the afternoon, is not yet finished. Mr. Minet, seeming worried:  
*(night / [relation] / eight-o'clock) (afternoon / [relation] / five-o'clock / from / began / big cleaning / [subject] / not yet / not be finished) (Minet-Mr. / [subject] / worry-aspect / [adverbial])*)
- 6 – When will you begin cooking?  
*(when / [familiarity]-cooking / [object] / make-begin / [question])*
- 7 – The New Year's Cuisine is already ready. And, if you can hold on another two hours, the whole house will be perfect and all will be ready to welcome the New Year.  
*([familiarity]-New Year's cuisine / [announce] / already / be ready / because //// after / two-hours / endurance-if you do /// whole house / [subject] / clean / [goal] / become // [familiarity]-New Year / [object] / welcome / preparation / [subject] / be accomplished / [softener])*
- 8 – New Year's preparation is the big cleaning?  
 When do the other guests come?  
*([familiarity]-New Year / [relation] / preparation / so-called / big cleaning / [apposition] / fact / it is / [question]) (other / [relation] / [politeness]-guest / [announce] / when / come / it's that / [question])*



- ▶ ③ New Year's Day celebration is Japan's only true holiday: just about everything is closed for three to five days, including schools, offices, banks, and stores... The celebration begins the night of December 31st and lasts until January 1st with the visit to the temple. The woman of the house must be ready to receive visitors (stores being closed, of course...). Traditionally, it was custom to prepare all necessary food before the 1st, which are special recipes prepared only for these days each year. This is called お節料理 *o sechi ryōri*.
- ④ The adjective きれいな *kirei* means *beautiful*, but also *clean*. できて いる *dekite iru*. cf. Lesson 73, note 4.

9- お客さん? 今晚は、だれも来ない  
 o kyaku sa n? kon ban wa, da re mo kona i

わよ。お掃除が終わったら、  
 wa yo. o sō ji ga o wa t ta ra,

年越蕎麦を食べて、明日の朝、  
 toshi koshi so ba o ta be te, ashita no asa,

日の出を拝みに行って、  
 hi no de o oga mi ni i t te,

それから年始のあいさつ回りを  
 so re ka ra nen shi no a i satsu mawa ri o

するのよ。⑤⑥⑦  
 su ru no yo.

10- え、今晚何もしないんですか。  
 e, kon ban nani mo shi na i n de su ka.

11- ああ、ごめんなさいね。忘れて  
 a a, go me n na sa i ne. wasu re te

いたわ。フランスでは、大晦日  
 i ta wa. fu ra n su de wa, oomiso ka

に皆でレヴェイヨンをするん  
 ni minna de re ve i yo n o su ru n

だったわね。すっかりフランス  
 da t ta wa ne. su k ka ri fu ra n su

の習慣を忘れていたわ。  
 no shūkan o wasure te i ta wa.

12 それではシャンペンでも二人  
 so re de wa sha n pe n demo futa ri

で飲みましょうか。今日は  
 de no mi ma shō ka. kyō wa

本当にご苦労様。カンパイ。⑧  
 hon tō ni go ku rō sama. ka n pa i.

- 9 – Guests? No one is coming tonight! Once the cleaning is finished, people would eat “New Year’s noodles”, then tomorrow morning they’d go greet the new sun, and then make the greeting tour of New Year’s visits.

*([politeness]-guest) (tonight/[emphasis]/no one/not to come/[softener] / [emphasis] ([familiarity]-cleaning / [subject] / when it’s finished /// change year-noodles / [object] / eat // tomorrow / [relation] / morning / sun / [relation] / go out / [object] / worship/[goal] / go // then / start of year / [relation] / greeting-tour / [object] / do / it’s that / [engagement])*

- 10 – Oh! We’re not doing anything tonight?

*(oh / tonight / nothing / not do / it’s that / [question])*

- 11 – Oh, I’m sorry! I forgot! In France, you celebrate New Year’s the last day of the year! I completely forgot French custom!

*(ah / excuse me / [agreement]) (forgot / [softener]) (France / [place] / [emphasis] / last day of the year / [time] / all / [means] / New Year’s Eve / [object] / do / it was that / [softener] / [agreement]) (completely / France / [relation] / custom / [object] / forgot / [softener])*

- 12 – What if we just drink this champagne just the two of us? Thank you so much for today! Kampai!

*(so / champagne / even / two people / [means] / let’s drink / [question]) (today / [announce] / true / [adverbial] / thank you for your trouble) (kampai)*

## Notes

- ⑤ 来ない **konai**, cf. Lesson 72, note 5.
- ⑥ 年越蕎麦 **toshi koshi soba**: a frugal, traditional dish eaten the night of December 31st. Literally, “noodles for passing from one year to another” (year / pass / noodle).
- ⑦ The suffix たら **tara**, which we’ll visit again later on, attaches to verbs the same way as て **te** and た **ta**. Take another look at Lesson 56 to refresh your memory!
- ⑧ ご苦労様 **go kurō sama**. Another formula for thanking someone who has gone out of his or her way to help you. Literally: “(I thank you for) your pain.”

## Exercise 1

- ① 目<sup>め</sup> が 痛<sup>いた</sup>くて 読<sup>よ</sup>めません から、  
me ga itakute yomemasen kara,  
この 記<sup>き</sup>事<sup>じ</sup> を 読<sup>よ</sup>んで くれませんか。  
kono kiji o yonde kuremasen ka.
- ② トランク を いろいろ 見<sup>み</sup>せて  
toranku o iroiro misete  
くれました が、軽<sup>かる</sup>い の が なかった  
kuremashita ga, karui no ga nakatta  
ので、何<sup>なに</sup>も 買<sup>か</sup>いません でした。  
node, nanimo kaimasen deshita.
- ③ お 茶<sup>ちや</sup> を 飲<sup>の</sup>みましよう。お 湯<sup>ゆ</sup> を  
o cha o nomimashō. o yu o  
沸<sup>わ</sup>かして おきました。  
wakashite okimashita.

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

...に 言<sup>こと</sup>葉<sup>ば</sup> を 入<sup>い</sup>れなさい

- ① He was wearing a strange old suit.  
..... ita
- ② I rang but no one came.  
.....  
no desu
- ③ I examined them all slowly, but really nothing was suitable.  
....., hontō  
ni .....

④ 先月<sup>せんげつ</sup> 出<sup>で</sup>た 新<sup>あたら</sup>しい S. F. 映<sup>えい</sup>画<sup>が</sup> を  
sengetsu deta atarashii esu efu eiga o

一<sup>いっ</sup>緒<sup>しょ</sup> に 見<sup>み</sup> に 行<sup>い</sup>って みません か。  
issho ni mi ni itte mimasen ka.

⑤ サンドウイッチ を たくさん 作<sup>つく</sup>って  
sandouitchi o takusan tsukutte

おきました。すぐ 食<sup>しょく</sup>事<sup>じ</sup> が できます よ。  
okimashita. sugu shokuji ga dekimasu yo.

### Answers to Exercise 1

① I cannot read because my eyes hurt, also couldn't you read me this article? ② They showed me all kinds of suitcases, but because they didn't have any light ones, I didn't buy anything. ③ What if we had some tea! The water is already hot. ④ Won't you come with me to see the new science fiction movie that came out last month? ⑤ I already prepared a lot of sandwiches. We can eat right away.

\*\*\*

④ We both went to greet the rising sun.

.....

⑤ I certainly didn't put anything in that box.

.....

.....

### Answers to Exercise 2

① furukute okashii sebiro o kite -. ② beru o narashimashita ga daremo konakatta -. ③ minna yukkuri shirabemashita ga - doremo aimasen. ④ futari de hi no de o ogami ni ikimashita. ⑤ tashika ni kono hako ni nanimo iremasen deshita.

## 平仮名の練習

**hira ga na no ren shū**  
**Hiragana Exercises**

Before we polish off our hiragana exercises, there remain a few special syllables for us to take care of. These syllables are not, in fact, part of the original Japanese pronunciation system, but rather are what is left over from the Chinese words (a more varied pronunciation system) when they were imported over a thousand years ago. We've been pointing these out to you from the beginning (cf. Lesson 4, note 1; Lesson 5, note 2; Lesson 6, note 3; Lesson 7, paragraph 6).

The first series, which we'll cover today, is composed of the sounds from the table below:



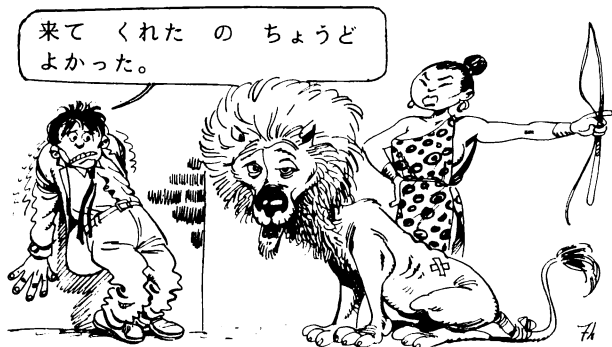
That is, **kya, kyu, kyo, gya, gyu, gyo, nya, nyu, nyo**, etc.

And while some of these syllables are used very frequently (like **kyo**), some of them are virtually never used at all.

For all of them, the principle is the same. There is not a hiragana for writing just a simple consonant, for example K. Instead, we can only write KA, KI, KU, KE, and KO. So, for these special syllables we use the hiragana for that consonant + i: KI, GI, NI, HI, etc., and the hiragana YA, YU, and YO. But... to avoid confusion, the YA, YU, and YO hiragana are written smaller.

Example: きやく (with three hiragana of the same size) is pronounced **kiyaku**, meaning *rules, code*. きやく (where the YA is written smaller) is pronounced **kyaku**, and means *guest*.

The syllables of this sort most commonly used are きや **kya**, きよ **kyo**, ひゃ **hya**, びゃ **bya**, ぴゃ **pya**, りゃ **rya**, and りよ **ryo**.



か と  
書き取り kakitori – Dictation

① sakkyoku (musical composition) ② hyaku (hundred) ③ kyonen (last year) ④ kyaku (guest) ⑤ sanbyaku (three hundred) ⑥ kyodai (huge) ⑦ yūbinkyoku (post office) ⑧ ryokō (travel) ⑨ roppyaku (six hundred) ⑩ shinryaku (invasion)

① さっきよく ② ひやく ③ きよねん ④ きやく ⑤ さんびやく  
⑥ きよだい ⑦ ゆうびんきよく ⑧ りょこう ⑨ ろっぴやく  
⑩ しんりやく

Second Wave: 第二十五課 (Lesson 25)

キャンプ  
kya n pu

- 1 — ここ は <sup>け しき</sup>景色 が いい から、  
ko ko wa ke shiki ga i i ka ra,  
こ こ で テント を <sup>は</sup>張ろう か。  
ko ko de te n to o ha rō ka.  
ああ、<sup>つか</sup>疲れた なあ…①  
a a, tsukare ta na a...
- 2 空<sup>くう</sup>気<sup>き</sup> が <sup>す</sup>澄んで いて、<sup>きもち</sup>気持 が  
kū ki ga su n de i te, ki mochi ga  
いい な。  
i i na
- 3 <sup>きみ</sup>君 が テント を <sup>は</sup>張っている <sup>あいだ</sup>間に、  
kimi ga te n to o ha t te i ru aida ni,  
<sup>ぼく</sup>僕 は <sup>ばんめし</sup>晩飯 の <sup>じゅんび</sup>準備 を しよう。②③④  
boku wa banmeshi no jun bi o shi yō

Notes

- ① Two friends are going camping together. Their conversation would generally be in low degree. By now we know the low degree forms pretty well, with the possible exception of the low degree of ましょう **mashō** (cf. Lesson 35, paragraph 4), 張ろう **harō** is in this low degree. The verb 張る **haru**, *to set up*, is a multiple-root verb. *Let's set up* in middle degree would be …張りましよう **harimashō**. All you need to do to make low degree forms out of multiple-root verbs is replace the final **u** with an **ō**: 張る **haru**, *to set up*, 張ろう **harō**, *let's set up*. For verbs with only one ▶



## Lesson Seventy-Five 75

### Camping

(camping)

- 1 – The countryside here is magnificent, why don't we put up our tent here? Ah, I'm tired...  
(here / [announce] / countryside / [subject] / be good / because // here / [place] / tent / [object] / let's set up / [question]) (ah / be tired / [reflection])
- 2 The air is clear, I feel good.  
(air / [subject] / be clear // feeling / [subject] / be good / [reflection])
- 3 While you pitch the tent, I'm going to prepare dinner.  
(you / [subject] / tent / [object] / set up / while // me / [announce] / dinner / [relation] / preparation / [object] / let's do)



- ▶ root, just add よう **yō** to the end. cf. Lesson 19, item 12: やめる **yameru**, to stop, やめよう **yameyō**, let's stop, low degree.
- ② 君 **kimi**. We are adding to our collection of terms for saying "you" or "me". Here, it's *you*, but used exclusively for males. Very common between friends. 僕 **boku**, cf. Lesson 20, note 3.
  - ③ 晩飯 **banmeshi**. Even for food there are degrees! Here it's in low degree, to fit with the rest of the conversation. The middle degree would be 晩御飯 **ban go han**, or 夕御飯 **yū go han**.
  - ④ しよう **shiyō**, low degree, which corresponds to the middle degree しましよ **shimashō**, let's do. To the single root し **shi**, add よう **yō**. (cf. note 1).

4 この <sup>ばしょ</sup>場所 で テント を <sup>は</sup>張る  
 ko no ba sho de te n to o ha ru  
 と <sup>あたま</sup>頭 が <sup>きたまくら</sup>北枕 に なる よ。  
 to atama ga kita makura ni na ru yo

5- それじゃ だめ な の かい。⑤  
 so re ja dame na no ka i

6- <sup>にほん</sup>日本 で は <sup>しにん</sup>死人 を <sup>きたまくら</sup>北枕 に  
 ni hon de wa shi nin o kita makura ni  
 寝かせる。つまり、<sup>きた</sup>北 の <sup>ほう</sup>方 へ  
 ne ka se ru. tsuma ri, kita no hō e

<sup>あたま</sup>頭 を <sup>む</sup>向ける。  
 atama o mu ke ru.

7 だから <sup>にほんじん</sup>日本人 は <sup>きた</sup>北 の <sup>ほうこう</sup>方向 に  
 da ka ra ni hon jin wa kita no hō kō ni

<sup>あたま</sup>頭 を <sup>む</sup>向ける こと を <sup>きら</sup>嫌う んだ。  
 atama o mu ke ru ko to o kira u n da

8- <sup>あたま</sup>頭 が <sup>みなみ</sup>南 の <sup>ほう</sup>方 に <sup>く</sup>来る よう  
 atama ga minami no hō ni ku ru yō

に すれば いい の だろう。⑥  
 ni su re ba i i no da rō

## Notes

⑤ の **no**: all that's left over from の です **no desu** (cf. also the end of item 12). As for かい **kai**... it's another way to say か **ka**, which means that it's another way to turn a sentence into a question. But watch out, because かい **kai** is used exclusively by males.

⑥ だろう **darō**, cf. Lesson 72, note 4.

- 4 If we put the tent up here, we'll have their heads facing north.  
*(this / place / [place] / tent / [object] / set up / if // head / [subject] / north-pillow / [goal] / become / [engagement])*
- 5 – So, that's not good?  
*(so what / forbidden / it is / it's that / [question])*
- 6 – In Japan we bury the dead oriented towards the north. That is, we turn their heads northward.  
*(Japan / [place] / [emphasis] / dead person / [object] / north-pillow / [goal] / put to bed) (that is / north / [relation] / side / [destination] / head / [object] / turn)*
- 7 That's why Japanese don't like to have their heads turned to the north.  
*(that's why / Japan-person / [announce] / north / [relation] / direction / [goal] / head / [object] / turn / fact of / [object] / hate / it's that)*
- 8 – What if we made it so our heads face south, is that better?  
*(head / [subject] / south / [relation] / side / [goal] / come / way / [goal] / if we did // be good / it must be)*



- 9  でも そう する と、ここ は <sup>しゃめん</sup> 斜面 だ  
 de mo sō su ru to, ko ko wa sha men da  
 から、足 の 方 が <sup>たか</sup> 高くなる よ。⑦  
 ka ra, ashi no hō ga taka ku na ru yo.
- 10 <sup>りょうり</sup> 料理 の 方 は どう だい？  
 ryō ri no hō wa dō da i?  
 うまく <sup>い</sup> 行っ て る？⑧  
 u ma ku i t te ru?
- 11 - <sup>じつ</sup> 実 は お しょうゆ を <sup>わす</sup> 忘れた から、  
 jitsu wa o shō yu o wasu re ta ka ra,  
<sup>あじ</sup> 味 が よくない かもしれない。それに  
 aji ga yoku na i kamoshi re na i. so re ni  
 マッチ が <sup>みあた</sup> 見当らない んだ。⑨⑩  
 ma t chi ga mi ata ra na i n da.
- 12 - え、お しょうゆ も マッチ も  
 e, o shō yu mo ma t chi mo  
 ない の か。  
 na i no ka.
- 13 ここ まで <sup>く</sup> 来る 途中 <sup>とちゅう</sup> に <sup>みんしゆく</sup> 民宿  
 ko ko ma de ku ru to chū ni min shuku  
 が <sup>ひと</sup> 一つ あった だろう。今夜 <sup>こんや</sup> は  
 ga hito tsu a t ta da rō. kon ya wa  
 そこ へ <sup>い</sup> 行っ た 方 <sup>ほう</sup> が いい  
 so ko e i t ta hō ga i i  
 かもしれない ね。⑥⑩  
 ka mo shire na i ne.
- 14 - うん。そう しよう。④  
 u n. sō shi yō.

- 9 But in that case, because of the slope, our feet will be higher!  
*(but / so / do / if /// here / [announce] / slope / it is / because // feet / [relation] / side / [subject] / be high / become / [engagement])*
- 10 And the food, how's it coming? It's going all right?  
*(food / [relation] / side / [announce] / how / it is) (successfully / go)*
- 11 – Actually, because we forgot the shōyu, it won't taste too great. And I can't find any matches, either.  
*(in reality / [emphasis] / [familiarity]-shōyu / [object] / forgot / because // taste / [subject] / not be good / I believe that) (what's more / matches / [subject] / not findable / it is)*
- 12 – What? We have neither matches nor shōyu?  
*(what? / [familiarity]-shōyu / also / matches / also / not exist / it's that / [question])*
- 13 On our way here, it seemed that there was a guesthouse, maybe it would be better if we went there for the night.  
*(here / up to / come / on the way / [place] / guesthouse / [subject] / one / existed / that must be) (tonight / [emphasis] / there / [destination] / went / side / [subject] / be good / I believe that / [agreement])*
- 14 – Good. Let's go!  
*(good) (so / let's do)*

## Notes

- ⑦ 高い <sup>たか</sup>takai, which we've seen until now meaning *to be expensive*, here means *to be high*.
- ⑧ だい dai: exclusively male low degree formula for です か desu ka. As we are in a very familiar conversation, we leave out certain syllables, as all languages will... What we know of the form ...ています ...teimasu, becomes first, in low degree, ...ている ...te iru, and then dropping the *i* we get ...てる ...te ru.
- ⑨ おしょうゆ o shōyu. Not much Japanese cooking is possible without this brown, salty sauce. You're likely to know it as *soy sauce*.
- ⑩ かもしれない kamoshirenai means the same things as かしら kashira (cf. Lesson 59, note 5). If かしら kashira is feminine, かもしれない kamoshirenai is neuter, and can be used in all cases.

### Exercise 1

- ① 今年ことしの夏なつ江えの島しまへ キャンプ  
kotoshi no natsu enoshima e kyanpu  
に 行いこう と 思おもいます。  
ni ikō to omoimasu.
- ② 先月せんげつから 全ぜん然ぜん 疲つかれが とれないので、  
sengetsu kara zenzen tsukare ga torenai node,  
ジョギングを やめよう と 思おもいます。  
jogingu o yameyō to omoimasu.
- ③ ガレージは 車くるまが 三さん台だい 入いれられる  
garēji wa kuruma ga san dai irerareru  
よう に しました。  
yō ni shimashita.

\*\*\*

### Exercise 2

...に 言ことば葉いを 入いれなさい

- ① (*low degree*) Let's go. Let's walk. Let's rest. Let's get up. Let's think. Let's begin. Let's look.  
.....
- ② You must not get discouraged and give up along the way.  
..... akirame. ....
- ③ HASHIMOTO Akio, who is a famous journalist, just published a very interesting book about animals' sleep.  
..... na shinbun kisha ... hashimoto akio ... ,  
dōbutsu .. jitsu ni .....  
... shuppan ..... desu

- ④ <sup>こん や</sup>今夜 <sup>ね</sup>寝る <sup>まえ</sup>前に <sup>あした</sup>明日 <sup>の</sup>の <sup>じゅん び</sup>準備  
 konya neru mae ni ashita no junbi  
 を <sup>ほう</sup>した <sup>あん ぜん</sup>方が <sup>安全</sup>安全 です。  
 o shita hō ga anzen desu.
- ⑤ <sup>みなみ</sup>南 <sup>くに</sup>の <sup>ほう</sup>国 <sup>の</sup>の <sup>ほう</sup>方が <sup>あたた</sup>暖かい です。  
 minami no kuni no hō ga atatakai desu.
- ⑥ <sup>ゆう めい</sup>あの <sup>じょ ゆう</sup>有名 <sup>な</sup>な <sup>じょ ゆう</sup>女優 <sup>に</sup>に <sup>き</sup>聞いて <sup>みたい</sup>みたい  
 ano yūmei na joyū ni kitte mitai  
 です <sup>ことわ</sup>が、断られる <sup>かもしれない</sup>かもしれない。  
 desu ga, kotowarareru kamoshirenai.

### Answers to Exercise 1

- ① This summer I think I'll go camping in Enoshima. ② Since last month I can't clear myself of being tired, so I think I'll stop jogging. ③ For the garage, I made it so we could put three cars in. ④ It seems more safe to make the preparations for tomorrow before going to bed tonight. ⑤ It is hotter in the southern countries. ⑥ I would love to ask this famous actress, but there is a chance she'll refuse.

\*\*\*

- ④ This work must be tiring.  
 . . . . . sō desu

### Answers to Exercise 2

- ① ikō. arukō. yasumō. okiyō. kangaeyō. hajimeyō. miyō. ② tochū de - te yameru no wa dame desu. ③ yūmei - de aru - wa, - no suimin ni tsuite - omoshiroi hon o - shita tokoro -. ④ kono shigoto wa tsukare -.

ひらがな れんしゅう  
**平仮名の練習**  
**hira ga na no ren shū**  
**Hiragana Exercises**

Let's keep moving ahead with our special syllables. This time we have a small brigade of syllables that fit into the following table:

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{SH J CH} \\ \underbrace{\hspace{1.5cm}} \\ + \\ \underbrace{\hspace{1.5cm}} \\ \text{A U O} \end{array}$$

That is, **sha, shu, sho, ja, ju, jo, cha, chu, cho**. The principle is the same: we use the hiragana where the consonant is linked with *i*: **shi** し, **ji** じ, **chi** ち, and follow them with や **ya**, ゆ **yu**, or よ **yo**, written small.

Don't confuse しよく (three hiragana of equal size) pronounced **shiyoku**, *self interest*, with しよく (the よ is smaller), pronounced **shoku**, *work*.

The syllables are written: しや **sha**, しゅ **shu**, しょ **sho**, じゃ **ja**, じゅ **ju**, じょ **jo**, ちゃ **cha**, ちゅ **chu**, ちょ **cho**.

\*\*\*



か と  
書き取り kakitori – Dictation

- ① joyū (actress) ② jimusho (office) ③ chotto (a bit) ④ shuppatsu (departure) ⑤ ressha (train) ⑥ basho (place) ⑦ chawan (teacup) ⑧ bijutsukan (art museum) ⑨ oshaberi (chitchat) ⑩ hisho (avoiding the heat) ⑪ danjo (men and women) ⑫ shujutsu (surgery) ⑬ obotchan (your little boy) ⑭ rikkōhōsha (electoral candidate)

- ① じょゆう ② じむしょ ③ ちよつと ④ しゅっぱつ ⑤ れっしや  
⑥ ばしょ ⑦ ちやわん ⑧ びじゅつかん ⑨ おしゃべり ⑩ ひしよ  
⑪ だんじよ ⑫ しゅじゅつ ⑬ おぼっちゃん ⑭ りっこうほしや

Second Wave: 第二十六課 (Lesson 26)

\*\*\*

76 <sup>だい なな じゅう ろっ か</sup> 第七十六課 dai nana jū rok ka

お <sup>かね</sup> 金 が あれば  
o kane ga a re ba

1- ああ、お <sup>かね</sup> 金 が あれば、こんな  
a a, o kane ga a re ba, ko n na

<sup>すきま</sup> 隙間 <sup>だらけ</sup> だらけ の <sup>さむい</sup> 寒い <sup>いえ</sup> 家 に  
suki ma da ra ke no samu i ie ni

<sup>す</sup> 住まないで、コンクリート <sup>だて</sup> 建て で、  
su ma na i de, ko n ku rī to da te de,

セントラル・ヒーティング の ある  
se n to ra ru hī ti n gu no a ru

<sup>いえ</sup> 家 に <sup>す</sup> 住みたい なあ。①②  
ie ni su mi ta i na a.

2 もし お <sup>かね</sup> 金 が あれば、<sup>やまなか こ</sup> 山中湖  
mo shi o kane ga a re ba, yama naka ko

の <sup>そば</sup> そば に <sup>べっそう</sup> 別荘 を <sup>いっけん</sup> 一軒 <sup>た</sup> 建て て  
no so ba ni bessō o ik ken ta te te

<sup>なつ</sup> 夏 の <sup>にかげつ</sup> 二ヶ月 <sup>ひしよ</sup> 避暑 に <sup>い</sup> 行けば、  
natsu no ni ka getsu hi sho ni i ke ba,

いい <sup>げんこう</sup> 原稿 が <sup>か</sup> 書ける だろう な。③④  
i i genkō ga ka ke ru da rō na.

Notes

- ① あれば **areba**. The only form for expressing a **hypothesis**: *if I had*. It's simple to construct: for all verbs, the system is the same. Instead of the final *u*, put in **eba**. ある **aru**, *to exist*, あれば **areba**, *if it existed, if I had*. 行く **iku**, *to go*, 行けば **ikeba**, *if I went* (item 2). 言う **iu**, *to say*, 言えば **ieba**, *if I said, if* ▶

## Lesson Seventy-Six 76

### If I had money...

([familiarity]-money / [subject] / if existed)

- 1 – Ah, if I had money, I wouldn't live in this house full of cracks and cold, I'd live in a concrete house with central heating.

(ah) ([familiarity]-money / [subject] / if existed //// in this way / crack-full of / [relation] / be cold / house / [place] / not live in /// concrete-construct / it is // central heating / [subject] / exist / house / [place] / I want to live in / [reflection])

- 2 If I had money I'd build a villa on the shore of Lake Yamanaka, and if I went there for two months in the summer to get away from the heat, I'd surely write an excellent manuscript.

(if / [familiarity]-money / [subject] / if existed // Yamanaka-lake / [relation] / proximity / [place] / villa / [object] / one-house / build /// summer / [relation] / two months / flee heat / [goal] / if I went // be good / manuscript / [subject] / able to write / this must be / [reflection])

- ▶ someone said (Lesson 69, item 8). する **suru**, to do, すれば **sureba**, if I/you, someone did (Lesson 67, item 11; Lesson 74, item 7; Lesson 75, item 8). Sometimes at the beginning of the clause you can put a もし **moshi**, if (cf. item 2), but this isn't necessary. Not to be confused with もしもし **moshi moshi**, hello? (cf. Lesson 27, item 1).

- ② セントラル・ヒーティング の ある 家 **sentoraru.hītingu no aru uchi**, cf. Lesson 55, note 5.

- ③ 書ける **kakeru**. 書く **kaku**, to write, 書ける **kakeru**, to be able to write, cf. Lesson 64, note 2. Also note that it's 原稿 **genkō ga** 書ける **genkō ga kakeru**.

- ④ 山中湖 **yamanakako**. One of the large lakes at the base of Mount Fuji. The place of a well-known and loved resort, not too far from Tōkyō. In the summer it gets as crowded as Martha's Vineyard or the Florida Keys.

- 3- ああ。あたし は お <sup>かね</sup>金 が あれば、  
 a a. a ta shi wa o kane ga a re ba,  
 ミンク の コート と <sup>わに</sup>鱈 の  
 mi n ku no kō to to wani no  
 ハンド・バッグ と <sup>おお</sup>大きな  
 ha n do ba g gu to oo ki na  
 ダイヤモンド の <sup>ゆび わ</sup>指輪 が ほしい わ。  
 da i ya mo n do no yubiwa ga ho shi i wa.
- 4- お <sup>かね</sup>金 が あれば <sup>みんな</sup>皆 <sup>か</sup>買って やる よ。  
 o kane ga a re ba minna ka t te ya ru yo.
- 5 おれ は <sup>こうりん</sup>光琳 の <sup>え</sup>絵 が <sup>いちまい</sup>一枚  
 o re wa kō rin no e ga ichi mai  
 ほしい な。⑤  
 ho shi i na.
- 6 それに、<sup>せ かい</sup>世界 <sup>いっしゅう</sup>一周 も <sup>か</sup>したくない か。⑥  
 so re ni, se kai is shū mo shi ta ku na i ka.
- 7 <sup>せ かい</sup>世界 <sup>じゅう</sup>中 の <sup>しゅ と</sup>首都 を <sup>か</sup>すべて  
 se kai jū no shu to o su be te  
<sup>けん ぶつ</sup>見物 <sup>か</sup>しよう よ。⑦  
 ken butsu shi yō yo.

## Notes

- ⑤ <sup>こうりん</sup>光琳 **kōrin**. Full name <sup>お がた</sup>尾形 <sup>こうりん</sup>光琳 **ogata kōrin** (1658–1716). One of the greatest painters of the Edo era, his landscapes are some of the greatest masterpieces of Japanese art. Also note that when speaking of famous men of the past in Japanese, they are referred to by their personal names (Kōrin, here) names individually chosen for individuals, not their family names (here Ogata). All grand masters of Japan – Utamaro, Hiroshige, etc. – are known by their personal names only.

- ⑥ <sup>か</sup>したくない **shitakunai**. Yet another conglomeration of suffixes! Hang on, are you ready? Let's go! Let's begin with the ▶

- 3 – Ah, if I had money, I'd want a mink coat, a crocodile handbag, and a ring with a large diamond!  
*(ah) (me / [announce] / [familiarity]-money / [subject] / if existed // mink / [relation] / coat / and / crocodile / [relation] / handbag / and / big / it is / diamond / [relation] / ring / [subject] / be the object of my desire / [softener])*
- 4 – If I had money, I'd buy all that for you!  
*([familiarity]-money / [subject] / if existed // all / buy / do for you / [engagement])*
- 5 – And me, I'd want a painting by Kōrin!  
*(me / [announce] / Kōrin / [relation] / painting / [subject] / one-flat object / be the object of my desire / [reflection])*
- 6 – And you wouldn't want to take a world tour?  
*(what's more / world-tour / also / not want to do / [question])*
- 7 – Let's visit all the world capitols!  
*(in the world / [relation] / capitol / [object] / all / tourist visit-let's do / [engagement])*



- ▶ verb する **sugu**, *to do*. After its single root し **shi** add the suffix たい **tai** that expresses will: したい **shitai**, *to want to do*. This is where it gets tricky (remember a similar example in Lesson 71, note 8), because the suffix たい **tai** is itself an adjective and must decline like all other adjectives (this is a good chance for revision: Lesson 21, paragraph 2; Lesson 35, paragraph 3), so it can also be put in negative form. Follow the model of おいしい **oishii**, *to be good*, and おいしくない **oishikunai**, *not to be good*, we can turn したい **shitai**, *I want to do*, into したくない **shitakunai**, *I don't want to do*.
- ⑦ しょう **shiyō**, cf. Lesson 75, note 4. やめよう **yameyō**, cf. Lesson 75, note 1.

76 8- 全 世界 の 首都 に 行く つもり?  
zen se kai no shu to ni i ku tsumo ri

数年 は かかる わ よ。  
sū nen wa ka ka ru wa yo.

9- 世界 一周 は 大変 だ から  
se kai is shū wa tai hen da ka ra

やっぱり やめよう。⑦  
ya p pa ri ya me yō.

10 それ より タヒチ に 行って  
so re yo ri ta hi chi ni i t te  
きれいな 娘 さん達 と 海岸 で  
ki re i na musume sa n tachi to kaigan de

踊ったり 泳いだり したい な。⑧⑨  
odo t ta ri oyo i da ri shi ta i na.

11- そんな 夢 を 見る 時間 が  
so n na yume o mi ru ji kan ga

あったら、書けない と 言って  
a t ta ra, ka ke na i to i t te

いる 原稿 を 書き なさい。③  
i ru genkō o ka ki na sa i.

12 お 金 が あれば、借金 を 返す  
o kane ga a re ba, shak kin o kae su

こと が 先決 でしょう。  
ko to ga sen ketsu de shō.

## Notes

- ⑧ おどったり 泳いだり したい **odottari oyoidari shitai**.  
A new suffix: たり **tari**. Two characteristics: 1) most of the time you have two verbs in たり **tari** form and the whole expression will end with する **suru**: verb + たり **tari**, verb + たり **tari** + する **suru**; 2) たり **tari** attaches itself to verbs the same way as ▶

- 8 – You want to go to all the world capitols? That'll take years!  
(whole world / [relation] / capitol / [goal] / go / intention) (several years / [emphasis] / be used / [softener] / [engagement])
- 9 – The world tour would be too complicated, so let's forget it after all.  
(world-tour / [announce] / terrible / it is / because // in conclusion / let's abandon)
- 10 I'd prefer to go to Tahiti and dance or swim by the seashore with those beautiful girls!  
(that / rather than / Tahiti / [goal] / go // beautiful / it is / girls / with / seashore / [place] / and dance / and swim / I want to do / [reflection])
- 11 – If you have time to make these dreams, you'd better put yourself to that manuscript you can't write!  
(such / dream / [object] / watch / time / [subject] / if exist // not be able to write / [quotation] / say / manuscript / [object] / write)
- 12 If we had money, the most urgent thing would be to pay back our debts.  
([familiarity]-money / [subject] / if existed // debt / [object] / return / fact of / [subject] / first urgency / that must be)

▶ て **te** and た **ta** (cf. Lesson 56). It is used whenever you want to present a group of possible actions of the same quality, all of which you will do or consider doing.

- ⑨ 娘 <sup>むすめ</sup>さん <sup>たち</sup> **musume san tachi**. Since there is no singular or plural in Japanese, 娘 <sup>むすめ</sup>さん **musume san** can mean *one girl* just as easily as it can mean *girls*. For words indicating people, however, we have the option of being specific about whether we want one or many, by adding <sup>たち</sup> **tachi**. For instance the noun 人 <sup>ひと</sup> **hito** is *a person* or *persons*, while 人 <sup>ひと</sup> **hitotachi** specifically means *people* (cf. Exercise 1, item 1). It also works with pronouns: 私 <sup>わたくし</sup> **watakushi**, *me*, 私 <sup>わたくし</sup> **tachi** **watakushitashi**, *us*. And even for proper nouns: 山村 <sup>やまむら</sup>さん **yamamura san**, *Mr. or Mrs. Yamamura*, 山村 <sup>やまむら</sup>さん <sup>たち</sup> **yamamura san tachi**, *the Yamamuras, the Yamamura family, or even Yamamura and friends, the Yamamura group.*

## 練習

## Exercise 1

- ① 子供達<sup>こどもたち</sup> は 入<sup>はい</sup>ったり 出<sup>で</sup>たり して、  
 kodomotachi wa haittari detari shite,  
 うるさい です。  
 urusai desu.
- ② 五月<sup>ごがつ</sup> の 一日<sup>ついたち</sup>、テレビ<sup>てれび</sup> を 見<sup>み</sup>たり、  
 gogatsu no tsuitachi, terebi o mitari,  
 雑誌<sup>ざっし</sup> を 読<sup>よ</sup>んだり、隣<sup>となり</sup> の 公園<sup>こうえん</sup> を  
 zasshi o yondari, tonari no kōen o  
 歩<sup>ある</sup>いたり しました。  
 aruitari shimashita.
- ③ ヨーロッパ<sup>よーろっぱ</sup> の 首都<sup>しゅと</sup> に 泊<sup>と</sup>まったり、  
 yōroppa no shuto ni tomattari,  
 有名<sup>ゆうめい</sup> な 建物<sup>たてもの</sup> の 写真<sup>しゃしん</sup> を とったり  
 yūmei na tatemono no shashin o tottari  
 して、すばらしい 旅行<sup>りょこう</sup> を しました。  
 shite, subarashii ryokō o shimashita.

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

...に言葉<sup>ことば</sup>を 入<sup>い</sup>れなさい

- ① If I knew Tahitian, I could speak with the wife of the doctor  
 next door.  
 ..... ga ..... , .....  
 ..... deshō
- ② At night I don't watch television, I quietly listen to music or  
 else I write letters.  
 ..... , .....  
 ..... shimasu



- ④ 東京とうきょう に 住すめば、毎まい晩ばん 銭湯せんとう に  
tōkyō ni sumeba, maiban sentō ni

行いける な。  
ikeru na.

- ⑤ 原稿げんこう が 終おわったら、二週にしゅうかん間かん の  
genkō ga owattara, nishūkan no

休やすみ を 取とる つもり です。  
yasumi o toru tsumori desu.

### Answers to Exercise 1

- ① The children won't stop coming in and going out, it's so noisy.  
② The first of May I was watching television, I read magazines,  
and I took a walk in the public park next door. ③ We stayed in the  
European capitols, took photos of famous monuments, we had a  
marvellous trip. ④ If I lived in Tōkyō I could go to the public baths  
every night. ⑤ I have the intention of taking a two week vacation  
when my manuscript is finished.

\*\*\*

- ③ He says that he absolutely doesn't want to go abroad.  
zenzen . . . . . to itte imasu  
④ I want to pay back my debts before next month.  
. . . . . to  
omotte imasu  
⑤ I would like to have a villa with a Japanese style bathroom.  
. . . . fū . . . . . aru . . . . .  
. . . . .

### Answers to Exercise 2

- ① tahichigo - dekireba, tonari no isha no okusan to hanaseru -.  
② yoru wa terebi o minaide, yukkuri to ongaku o kiitari tegami o  
kaitari -. ③ - gaikoku e ikitakunai -. ④ raigetsu made ni shakkin o  
kaeshitai -. ⑤ nihon- no o furo no - bessō ga hoshii naa.

ひらがな れんしゅう  
 平仮名の練習  
 hira ga na no ren shū  
 Hiragana Exercises

Now for the grande finale!

To be complete, the syllables we've studied in Lessons 74 and 75 must be prepared to take on a long **o** or long **u**. In this case, it's simple. We saw in Lesson 69 how adding a hiragana **u** う – written in normal size – will take care of elongating these vowels. As for exceptions... there's no exception to this rule!

And to cap off our hiragana lessons, we've made the dictation a bit longer today, just to make sure we know how to write each one.

And don't forget: a long line over a vowel in the transcription means that the vowel is long.

77 だい ななじゅう なな か  
 第七十七課 dai nana jū nana ka

まとめ  
 matome

Revision and Notes

1. Let's jump right into discussion of some material we've owed you for a long time. It's intellectually stimulating to ask yourself questions and figure things out for yourself, but by now it's time we go through this thoroughly and make sure everything is set up right.

By now you should be pretty comfortable with **adjectives**, those words ending in い **i**, and you've gotten to know some of their forms: negative, past tense (cf. Lesson 21, paragraph 2 and 227 • ni hyaku ni jū shichi (nana)

か と  
書き取り kakitori – Dictation

① kyō (today) ② shōgun (Shogun) ③ chōdo (only) ④ nyūkyo (entrance in a new house) ⑤ chikyū (the earth) ⑥ shokugyō (profession) ⑦ shūmatsu (weekend) ⑧ denwachō (telephone book) ⑨ jōzu (skill) ⑩ benkyō (study) ⑪ ryōheika (their two Majesties) ⑫ myōji (family name) ⑬ shitsugyōsha (unemployment) ⑭ shōbai (commerce) ⑮ jūsho (address) ⑯ byōki (sickness) ⑰ raishū (next week) ⑱ hikōjō (airport) ⑲ jūbun (sufficient) ⑳ shiyōryō (utilization fee) ㉑ chūkaryōri (Chinese food) ㉒ kyūchūsanga (public visit to the Emperor)

① きょう ② しょうぐん ③ ちょうど ④ にゅうきょ  
⑤ ちきゅう ⑥ しょくぎょう ⑦ しゅうまつ ⑧ でんわ  
ちょう ⑨ じょうず ⑩ べんきょう ⑪ りょうへいか  
⑫ みょうじ ⑬ しつぎょうしゃ ⑭ しょうばい  
⑮ じゅうしょ ⑯ びょうき ⑰ らいしゅう ⑱ ひこうじょう  
⑲ じゅうぶん ⑳ しょうりょう ㉑ ちゅうかりょうり  
㉒ きゅうちゅうさんが

Second Wave: 第二十七課 (Lesson 27)

Lesson Seventy-Seven 77

Lesson 35, paragraph 3). There isn't much mysterious about them anymore. All these words come with a bit of a hint to their usage when listed in the word-for-word translation as "to be + adjective" (such as 広い <sup>ひろ</sup>hiroi, to be wide) to show that by themselves they represent this grouping. But...

You have probably also noticed that there is a good number of other words we've translated as English adjectives. It shouldn't be much trouble to go back and find them. Here, Lesson 74, item 3: すてきな <sup>ようふく</sup>洋服 suteki na yōfuku, a fancy suit, item 8: 他 <sup>ほか</sup>のお客さん hoka no o kyaku san, the other guests, or fur-

77 ther back Lesson 57, item 4: 有名 <sup>ゆうめい</sup> な お寺 <sup>てら</sup> **yūmei na o tera**, *famous temples*, and item 6: 静か <sup>しずか</sup> な お寺 <sup>てら</sup> **shizuka na o tera**, *a peaceful temple*.

So in fact, in addition to the series of adjectives ending in い i, there exists yet another series of adjectives, which are **invariable**. This second series is in fact far more numerous than the first, as it contains words that are Japanese by origin, but also words that come from Chinese, as well as words that come from English! And for this series, they really are true adjectives: すてき **suteki**, *lovely*, 他 <sup>ほか</sup> **hoka**, *other*, 有名 <sup>ゆうめい</sup> **yūmei**, *famous*, 静か <sup>しずか</sup> **shizuka**, *peaceful*. But because they are invariable, they are used in sentences almost like nouns, with a few properties all their own:

– At the end of a sentence or phrase, in order to say “it is + adjective”, the adjective must be followed by a form of です **desu** (including だ **da**, でした **deshita**, だった **datta** for *it was...* etc.). We have seen a great many examples, but to keep it to Volume 2: cf. Lesson 52, item 9, 好き <sup>すき</sup> です **suki desu**. 好き **suki** is one of these words, which we have translated here as *to be liked* to indicate that it is a quality of an object, rather than an action implied in the looser translation “I like...”, “do you like...”, etc. To avoid all ambiguity, it would be best to translate it as “likeable to my eyes, to your eyes...”. cf. Lesson 62, item 2: 不便 <sup>ふべん</sup> でしょう **fuben deshō**, *that must be inconvenient*; item 10, 平気 <sup>へいき</sup> です **heiki desu**, *to be indifferent*; Lesson 64, item 10: まじめ <sup>まじめ</sup> です **majime desu**, *you are serious*; Lesson 72, item 4: 上手 <sup>じょうず</sup> です **jōzu da**, *he is skilled*; Lesson 76, item 9: 大変 <sup>たいへん</sup> だ **taihen da**, *that's terrible*.

Most of these words will be found only at the end of a sentence, such as 大丈夫 <sup>だいじょうぶ</sup> **daijōbu**, *no problem*, Lesson 27, item 6; Lesson 41, item 12; Lesson 46, item 12; Lesson 51, item 12; Lesson 71, item 4 (an exception, as it appears without です **desu** in a family conversation).

– These adjectives can, of course, fit in sentences with more than one clause. In this case, they will be followed, like nouns, with で **de** (from です **desu**) and which means that the sentence continues

(cf. Lesson 50, note 5); cf. examples Lesson 62, item 4: 立派<sup>りっぱ</sup>で **rippa de**; Lesson 69, item 5: 上手<sup>じょうず</sup>で **jōzu de**; Lesson 71, item 1: きれい<sup>きれい</sup>で **kirei de**; Lesson 76, item 1: コンクリート建て<sup>だ</sup>で **konkurīto date de**.

– A number of these adjectives can in fact be used as adverbs. In this case, they are simply followed by the particle に **ni**. 簡単<sup>かんたん</sup> **kantan** means *simple, easy*; 簡単<sup>かんたん</sup>です **kantan desu**, *it's simple*, and 簡単<sup>かんたん</sup>に **kantan ni**, *simply* (Lesson 45, item 2). 本当<sup>ほんとう</sup> **hontō**, *true, truth*, 本当<sup>ほんとう</sup>です **hontō desu**, *it's true*, and 本当<sup>ほんとう</sup>に **hontō ni**, *truly* (Lesson 67, item 1; Lesson 74, item 12). 確か<sup>たし</sup> **tashika**, *certain, sure*, 確か<sup>たし</sup>です **tashika desu**, *it's certain*, and 確か<sup>たし</sup>に **tashika ni**, *certainly* (Lesson 60, item 10).

– We've kept the most delicate feature for the end! What happens when one of these words is used before a noun? To begin with, many adjectives are only used with nouns rarely. Those that are used in front of nouns more regularly, however, are split into two camps, which alas seem always unable to be reconciled. The first group is of adjectives linked to their nouns by の **no**, as if they were nouns themselves. For example: 次<sup>つぎ</sup> **tsugi**, *following* (cf. Lesson 59, item 4: 次<sup>つぎ</sup>の<sup>ひ</sup>日 **tsugi no hi**, *the following day*); 普通<sup>ふつう</sup> **futsū**, *ordinary* (cf. Lesson 68, item 7: 普通<sup>ふつう</sup>の<sup>ひと</sup>人 **futsū no hito**, *ordinary people*); 他<sup>ほか</sup> **hoka**, *other* (cf. Lesson 74, item 8: 他<sup>ほか</sup>の<sup>きやく</sup>お客さん **hoka no o kyakusan**, *the other guests*).

The other group are more adamant about their status as adjectives, and are connected to nouns by な **na** (there it is: finally a solution! We've already outlined Lesson 33, note 1...), which we have used often: Lesson 48, item 9: ロマンチックな<sup>かた</sup>方 **romanchikku na kata**, item 11: 現実的<sup>げんじつてき</sup>な<sup>ひと</sup>人 **genjitsuteki na hito**; Lesson 50, item 7: 不思議<sup>ふしぎ</sup>な<sup>え</sup>絵 **fushigi na e**; Lesson 51, item 10: にぎやか<sup>きよだい</sup>な<sup>あみ</sup>ところ **nigiyaka na tokoro**; Lesson 52, item 1: 巨大<sup>きよだい</sup>な<sup>あみ</sup>網 **kyodai na ami**; Lesson 57, item 4: 有名<sup>ゆうめい</sup>な<sup>てら</sup>お寺 **yūmei na o tera**, item 6: 静か<sup>しずか</sup>な<sup>てら</sup>お寺 **shizuka na o tera**; Lesson 58,

item 1: 変<sup>へん</sup>な自動車<sup>じどうしや</sup> **hen na jidōsha**; Lesson 62, item 6: 便利<sup>べんり</sup>な設備<sup>せつび</sup> **benri na setsubi**; Lesson 65, item 6: 簡単<sup>かんたん</sup>なカメラ<sup>カメラ</sup> **kantan na kamera**; Lesson 68, item 4: 特別<sup>とくべつ</sup>な場合<sup>ばあい</sup> **tokubetsu na baai**; Lesson 71, item 1: 社会的<sup>しゃくわいてき</sup>なところ **shakōteki na tokoro**; Lesson 72, item 5: きれい<sup>きれい</sup>な雪景色<sup>ゆきげしき</sup> **kirei na yukigeshiki**; Lesson 74, item 3: すてきな洋服<sup>ようふく</sup> **suteki na yōfuku**; Lesson 76, item 10: きれい<sup>きれい</sup>な娘<sup>むすめ</sup> **kirei na musume**.

The only problem: how do we know which adjectives go in the の **no** group and which go in the な **na** group? Unfortunately, only common use will tell you. But here's a hint: many words end with the kanji 的<sup>てき</sup> **teki**—these words are always な **na** adjectives.

Some further notes:

- The word 同じ<sup>おなじ</sup> **onaji**, which means *identical, same*, is an adjective neither in the の **no** group nor in the な **na** group. Instead, it's in its own, somewhat rebellious group: it is placed directly before the noun (cf. Lesson 36, item 2; Lesson 44, items 8 and 12; Lesson 65, item 12; Lesson 71, item 3).
- There are two double-agents, which normally belong to the series of い **i** adjectives. These are 大きい<sup>おおき</sup> **ookii**, *to be big*, and 小さい<sup>ちい</sup> **chiisai**, *to be small*. When they are before a noun, they can function either as い **i** adjectives or change form and enter the な **na** group (cf. Lesson 76, item 3, 大きい<sup>おお</sup>なダイヤモンド **ooki na daiyamondo**). This variation is used often.
- And one more to single out: いろいろ **iroiro**, *numerous, of all kinds*. When it acts as an adverb, it doesn't even need the に **ni**. It can be placed as is before the verb (cf. Lesson 62, item 6).

And finally, this な **na** can be used in another instance: when a sentence would otherwise end in です **desu** (or だ **da**) but you add a の **no desu**, *it's that*, then you cannot keep the first です **desu** or だ **da**. It must be replaced by な **na**. cf. Lesson 61, item 6: 私<sup>わたし</sup>は有名<sup>ゆうめい</sup>です

watashi wa yūmei desu, but: 私<sup>わたし</sup>は有名<sup>ゆうめい</sup>な<sup>な</sup>の<sup>の</sup>です  
 watashi wa yūmei na no desu; Lesson 75, item 5: だめ<sup>だめ</sup>です  
 dame desu, but だめ<sup>だめ</sup>な<sup>な</sup>の<sup>の</sup>かい<sup>かい</sup> dame na no kai. In fact, what  
 instigates the switch from です desu or だ da to な na is the very  
 presence of の no. This is why we find this な na before the の<sup>の</sup>  
 node we usually translate as *because* (and which was, originally,  
 の no) (cf. Lesson 47, note 4) + で de (cf. Lesson 50, note 5), lit-  
 erally: “given the fact that...”. The same before の<sup>の</sup>に noni, *even*  
*though* (cf. Lesson 53, exercise 1, item 4). And again before の<sup>の</sup> no  
 (cf. Lesson 38, note 1) for example Lesson 52, item 11: 僕<sup>ぼく</sup>が<sup>が</sup>すき<sup>すき</sup>  
 な<sup>な</sup>の<sup>の</sup>は boku ga suki na no wa, *what I love*.  
 And easy as that, the mystery of な na is solved!

**2.** Get ready for some **irregular forms of certain verbs** (oh, but of course!). For all verbs, it is possible to create another verb meaning “be able to...” (all verbs, that is, but ある aru). This is what we’ve seen in the last few lessons, specifically Lesson 64, note 2 and Lesson 72, note 6. There are two verbs –and just two, always the same– する suru, *to do*, and 来る kuru, *to come*, for which this process is a little bit different. *Be able to do* is said “to be possible”: できる dekiru; *be able to come* is 来られる korareru.

**3.** For a long time, you have been aware of how to make the **low degree negative verb form**. For verbs with just one root, add ない nai to this root. For verbs with multiple bases, just add ない nai to the *a* root (cf. Lesson 49, paragraph 1). But there are a few multiple-root verbs that, for reasons of phonetic evolution, give us a bit of a problem today. These are the **verbs that end with one vowel: U**. As in: 言う iu, *to say*, 思う omou, *to think*, 買う kau, *to buy*, 習う narau, *to study*, 使う tsukau, *to use*, 払う harau, *to pay*. Their *i* root, on which most other suffixes are added, doesn’t create any problems – 思います omoimasu, 使います tsukaimasu, 買います kaimasu, etc.– but long ago these verbs were pronounced something between \*kafu, \*ifu, \*omofu and \*kawu, \*iwu, \*omowu.

77 And like all other verbs, they ended with a syllable: a consonant + *u*. But then the *w* disappeared, except for the *a* root, where it still leaves a trace. So the low degree negative forms are: 言わない **iwana*i***, *I don't say*, 思わない **omowa*o*nai**, *I don't think*, 買わない **kawa*ka*nai**, *I don't buy*, 習わない **narawa*na*nai**, *I don't study*, 使わない **tsukawa*tsu*nai**, *I don't use*, and 払わない **harawa*ha*nai**, *I don't pay*.

4. For another angle on 払わない **harawa*ha*nai**, let's go back to Lesson 45, item 12, where we have a long expression: 払わなければなりません **harawanakereba narimasen**, which we translated laconically as *must pay*. Now that you've mastered more and have a richer sense of Japanese grammar, we can explain this expression piece by piece. There are two parts, of course: 払わなければ **harawanakereba**, and なりません **narimasen**. The なりません **narimasen** should seem familiar: it's the verb なる **nar*u*** in middle degree negative *not become, not happen*. But 払わなければ **harawanakereba** it looks something like 払わない **harawa*ha*nai**, *I don't pay*. Indeed, that's where part of its formation comes from. Never forget that this suffix ない **nai** is an adjective, too (cf. Lesson 64, note 4; Lesson 71 note 8). It can, therefore, have a conditional form, like all verbs. Where verbs drop a *u*, replaced by **eba** (cf. Lesson 76, note 1), for *i* adjectives, the *i* is replaced by **kereba**. So once more from the top: 払わない **harawa*ha*nai**, *I don't pay*, 払わなければ **harawanakereba**, *if I didn't pay*. The whole expression means, then, *if I didn't pay, that would not happen*, or in other words *I must pay*. This expression is, in fact, the normal Japanese way of expression **obligation**. We have met other examples, and now might be a good time to go back and remember how to say "must go" (Lesson 53, item 1), "must get up" (Lesson 53, exercise 1, item 4), and more.

5. Let's talk a bit about **writing**. First of all, don't worry too much about the **Chinese characters**, or kanji. From the beginning, we've given you fair warning. Sometimes their use can appear completely incoherent (it is!), but we have a full volume (Volume 3, which is about nothing but how to write and what the characters mean) to busy ourselves with in detail. For the moment, look at them, an act  
233 • ni hyaku san jū san



which should by now be second-nature, recognize them in passing, but don't look to understand too much just yet. Otherwise you'll find yourself pounding your head for no reason.

For the moment, and until you finish Volume 2, just concentrate your efforts on the **hiragana** and **katakana**. For the latter, we'll start working on them beginning with the next lesson, based on the same rhythm we've already built up with the hiragana.

Right now, you should be pretty secure with your hiragana, so we're going to make a couple **modifications in the presentation of our lessons**. Since you know how to write the hiragana, you should have no problem reading them! So we're going to phase out the transcription (or at any rate, not to rely on them except as a way to verify what we know).

For the first step, we'll leave the transcription in the text, but will begin by getting rid of the transcription in the notes, and by separating the transcription from the Japanese in the exercises. This should give you a boost in practicing your reading.

And then, later on, we'll go further, taking out the transcriptions piece by piece until in the end, you're just reading Japanese!

**So you don't lose your grasp, we advise you to continue with the hiragana dictations.** For this, you can use the language recordings from Volume 1: these are sentences you know well, and you'll be able to understand quickly. You'll also be able to correct your dictations yourself by looking at the text afterwards, as the hiragana is written above each kanji from the beginning. Just remember to keep your ears open for foreign-import words that should be written in katakana! In the beginning, of course, you can leave a blank space, but as you begin to get more comfortable with the katakana in the following lessons, you'll be able to fill those blank spaces in. And that's it! But this is, as they say, when things begin to get serious!

**Don't forget about going back to Volume 1 for the Second Wave exercises at the end of each new chapter!** Listen to the dialogues, read them again, and then create them on your own by looking at the translations. Take an active role in learning Japanese!

## Second Wave: 第二十八課 (Lesson 28)

78 <sup>だい なな じゅう はっ か</sup> 第七十八課 dai nana jū hak ka

お <sup>しょうがつ</sup> 正月 の <sup>あい さつ</sup> 挨拶  
o shō gatsu no ai satsu

- 1 - <sup>しんねん</sup> 新年 あけまして おめでとう  
shin nen a ke ma shi te o me de tō  
ございます。①  
go za i ma su.
- 2 - あけまして おめでとう ございます。  
a ke ma shi te o me de tō go za i ma su. ,
- 3 - <sup>さくねんちゅう</sup> 昨年中 は <sup>いろいろ</sup> 色々 と <sup>せわ</sup> お世話 に  
saku nen chū wa iro iro to o se wa ni  
なり、ありがとう ございました。 <sup>ほんねん</sup> 本年  
na ri, a ri ga tō go za i ma shi ta. honnen  
も よろしく お願い いたします。②  
mo yo ro shi ku o ne ga i i ta shi ma su.
- 4 - いや、こちらこそ、すっかり お  
i ya, ko chi ra ko so, su k ka ri o  
<sup>せわ</sup> 世話 に なりました。 <sup>ことし</sup> 今年 も  
se wa ni na ri ma shi ta. kotoshi mo  
どうぞ よろしく。②  
dō zo yo ro shi ku.

Notes

- ① All languages have forms of expressing **politeness** or etiquette, where the form is practically ossified within the language. Not only is Japanese not an exception to the rule, but it is perhaps the greatest exemplar of that rule, possessing a huge stock of such formulae. Plenty of verb phrases abound in Japanese with a specific meaning of politeness, such as あけまして. It comes from ▶

---

## Lesson Seventy-Eight 78

### The New Year's Visit

([familiarity]-new year / [relation] / salutation)

- 1 – Best wishes for the New Year!  
(New Year / open / be material for rejoicing)
- 2 – Happy New Year!
- 3 I thank you for all you've done for me in the past year. And I thank you in advance for all you will do for me this year.  
(all last year / [emphasis] / of all kinds / [adverbial] / [politeness]-service / [goal] / become // thank you) (this year / also / well / please)
- 4 – No, no, I should be the one to truly thank you for this past year. And I thank you in advance for this year.  
(no / this side / rather / completely / [politeness]-service / [goal] / became) (this year / also / please / well)

▶ the verb あける, *to open*, in its *—ます: あけます* form, where the suffix *—ます* can itself also take on other suffixes, such as *た: ...ました*. You've been practicing this since the beginning! Here's it's *て*, with the same old meaning: the sentence ain't over yet—there's another clause coming (cf. Lesson 52, note 2). These *まして* verb forms are rare in common conversation, but they're often found in dialogue to express politeness, such as in the current example, either in a highly polite conversation, or else as something of a high degree version of *て* form. *おめでとう ございます* (cf. Lesson 23, note 4).

② Don't let these formulae trick you: they're only verb formulae, and don't need to correspond to reality. Even if the person to whom you're speaking has done nothing to go out of his or her way to help you—or even if you hardly know the person at all—it's still common to use these phrases. Think of it as a mutual declaration of honor (cf. also Lesson 65, note 3). *いたします* cf. Lesson 69, note 8. *なり* cf. Lesson 58, note 2.

5 あ、<sup>ち え こ</sup>智恵子 ちゃん は <sup>き もの</sup>着物 が  
a, chi e ko cha n wa ki mono ga

<sup>に あ</sup>似合<sup>あ</sup>って、かわいい ね。③  
ni a t te, ka wa i i ne.

6- <sup>ただしくん</sup>正君 も ちゃんと お <sup>じ ぎ</sup>辞儀  
tadashi kun mo cha n to o ji gi

して… おじさんは <sup>ことし</sup>今年 <sup>がいこく</sup>外国  
shi te... o ji sa n wa kotoshi gai koku  
へ いら<sup>い</sup>っしゃる の よ。④⑤  
e i ra s sha ru no yo.

7- <sup>せい ふ</sup>政府 の <sup>りゅうがくせい</sup>留学生 と して、ドイツ  
sei fu no ryū gaku sei to shi te, do i tsu

へ <sup>かがく</sup>科学 の <sup>けんきゅう</sup>研究 に <sup>に ねん</sup>二年 ほど  
e ka gaku no ken kyū ni ni nen ho do

行きます。  
i ki ma su.

8 向こうでは <sup>がくせい</sup>学生 <sup>せいかつ</sup>生活を する  
mu kō de wa gaku sei sei katsu o su ru

こと になる と <sup>おも</sup>思います。⑥  
ko to ni na ru to omo i ma su.

## Notes

- ③ ちゃん, cf. Lesson 72, note 3.
- ④ Pretty soon we'll take another look at **terms of relationships** (cf. Lesson 84), which set up quite a complicated little system. Here, おじさん normally means *my uncle*, when spoken by a child, but it can also be a child's way of referring to any man of roughly the same age as one's father, even if there's no familial relation. A friend of your parents or even a stranger can become your *uncle*.

- 5 Oh, Chieko, that kimono looks so good on you, you're so cute!  
*(oh / Chieko / [announce] / kimono / [subject] / suit // be cute / [agreement])*
- 6 – Tadashi, you too, come salute... Uncle will spend this year abroad.  
*(Tadashi / also / suitably / [[familiarity]-bow / do) (uncle / [announce] / this year / abroad / [destination] / go / it's that / [engagement])*
- 7 – I am moving to Germany for two years for scientific research, as an exchange student for the government.  
*(government / [relation] / exchange student / as / Germany / [destination] / science / [relation] / research / [goal] / two-years-about / go)*
- 8 I think I'll lead the life of a student there.  
*(other side / [place] / [emphasis] / student-lifestyle / [object] / do / fact of / [goal] / become / [quotation] / think)*



- ▶ ⑤ いらっしゃる の よ, cf. Lesson 68, note 7 and Lesson 75, note 5.
- ⑥ ことになる、ことがある, go back for a bit of review: cf. Lesson 42, paragraph 3.

- 9 - ドイツ ですか。私<sup>わたし</sup>は オーストリア  
do i tsu de su ka. watashi wa o su to ri a  
の ウィーン に 音楽<sup>おんがく</sup> の 勉強<sup>べんきょう</sup> に  
no uī n ni ongaku no ben kyō ni  
一年<sup>いちねん</sup> ほど 行<sup>い</sup>った こと が あります。  
ichi nen ho do i t ta ko to ga a ri ma su.  
ドイツ と オーストリア は 似<sup>に</sup>て  
do i tsu to o su to ri a wa ni te  
いる ん でしょう ね。 なつかしい  
i ru n de shō ne. na tsu ka shi i  
わ。 思<sup>おも</sup>い 出<sup>だ</sup>す わ。 あ の 頃<sup>ころ</sup> の  
wa. omo i da su wa. a no koro no  
オーストリア で の 生活<sup>せいかつ</sup>。⑥  
o su to ri a de no sei katsu.
- 10 あちら に いらしたら、時々<sup>ときどき</sup> 手紙<sup>てがみ</sup>  
a chi ra ni i ra shi ta ra, tokidoki tegami  
を 下<sup>くだ</sup>さい ね。⑦  
o kuda sa i ne.
- 11 - なるべく 書<sup>か</sup>く よう に します  
na ru be ku ka ku yō ni shi ma su  
が、最<sup>さい</sup>初<sup>しよ</sup> は いそがしい から、  
ga, sai sho wa i so ga shi i ka ra,  
そんな に 書<sup>か</sup>け ない と 思<sup>おも</sup>います。  
so n na ni ka ke na i to omo i ma su.
- 12 - 出<sup>しゅつ</sup>発<sup>ぱつ</sup> の 日<sup>ひ</sup> に は 兄<sup>あに</sup> と お  
shupatsu no hi ni wa ani to o  
見<sup>み</sup>送<sup>おく</sup>り に 行<sup>い</sup>き ます ね。  
mi oku ri ni i ki ma su ne.

- 9 – In Germany? I went to Vienna, Austria, for a year to study music. Germany and Austria must be a lot alike. I get nostalgic. I remember... my life in Austria in those days.

*(Germany / it is / [question]) (me / [announce] / Austria / [relation] / Vienna / [goal] / music / [relation] / study / [goal] / one-year-about / went / fact of / [subject] / exist) (Germany / and / Austria / [announce] / be alike / that must be / [agreement]) (be nostalgic / [reflection]) (remember / [reflection] / those days / [relation] / Austria / [place] / [relation] / life)*

- 10 Once you get there, write us from time to time!

*(that side / [place] / when you will be // from time to time / letter / [object] / give us / [agreement])*

- 11 – I'll write as much as I can, but at the beginning, I'll be busy, so I don't think I'll be able to write that much.

*(as much as possible / write / so as / do / but // at the beginning / [emphasis] / be busy / because // such / [adverbial] / not be able to write / [quotation] / think)*

- 12 – The day you depart my brother and I will accompany you.

*(departure / [relation] / day / [time] / [emphasis] / my older brother / with / [politeness]-accompany for departure / [goal] / go / [agreement])*



## Notes

- ⑦ いらしたら, a fixed form, derived from いらっしゃる. Third take! After Lesson 49, paragraph 2 and Lesson 68, note 7, いらっしゃる is the high degree of yet another verb: いる, to exist. いらしたら, when you exist, when you will be (cf. Lesson 73, note 9).

## 練習

## Exercise 1

- ① アウン さん です か。  
-はい、アウン です。
- ② ウオン さん で いらっしゃいます か。  
-はい、ウオン で ございます。
- ③ あの <sup>かしゅ</sup>歌手 は、フランス の <sup>うた</sup>歌  
しか <sup>うた</sup>歌わない よ。
- ④ なるべく 今日 までに この <sup>しごと</sup>仕事 が  
<sup>お</sup>終わる よう に しました けれども、  
<sup>びょうき</sup>病気 になった ので、できません でした。
- ⑤ 私 は <sup>きしゃ</sup>記者 として、よく <sup>こっかいぎいん</sup>国会議員  
と <sup>はな</sup>話す こと が あります。
- ⑥ 明日 までに <sup>よ</sup>読まなければ ならない  
<sup>しんぶん</sup>新聞 が たくさん <sup>のこ</sup>残って います  
から、とても こまります。

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

...に <sup>ことば</sup>言葉を <sup>い</sup>入れなさい

- ① If I had the time, I would take a world tour.

....., .....  
.....

- ② Time alone is not enough. Money is also necessary.

..... de wa muri .....  
.....



## Answers to Exercise 1

① – Are you Mr. Aun? – Yes. ② – Are you Mrs. Uon? – Yes. ③ This singer only sings French songs. ④ I really tried to have this work finished by today, but because I got sick, I couldn't. ⑤ It often happens to me, as a journalist, that I speak with members of the Diet. ⑥ I am quite annoyed because there are still many newspapers to read before tomorrow.

## Transcription

① – aun san desu ka. – hai, aun desu. ② – uon san de irasshaimasu ka. – hai, uon de gozaimasu. ③ ano kashu wa furansu no uta shika utawanai yo. ④ narubeku kyō made ni kono shigoto ga owaru yō ni shimashita keredomo, byōki ni natta node, dekimasen deshita. ⑤ watashi wa kisha toshite, yoku kokkaigiin to hanasu koto ga arimasu. ⑥ ashita made ni yomanakereba naranai shinbun ga takusan nokotte imasu kara, totemo komarimasu.

\*\*\*

③ He only buys products that come from Germany.

..... nai.

④ I have to pay back my debts before next month.

.....  
.....

⑤ I will make a point of coming tonight.

.....

## Answers to Exercise 2

① jikan ga areba, sekai issshū o shitai to omoimasu. ② jikan dake – desu. o kane mo hitsuyō desu. ③ doitsu kara kuru mono shika kawa -. ④ raigetsu made ni shakkin o kaesanakereba narimasen. ⑤ konban kuru yō ni shimasu.

かたかな れんしゅう  
**片仮名の練習**  
**kata ga na no ren shū**  
**Katakana Exercises**

Before we begin the exercise, let's take a second or two to discuss what katakana are really all about. It'll be a nice breather before heading into new territory.

Katakana is another writing system where one syllable is, like hiragana, represented by one character. While historically the two systems were invented at the same time (at the end of the first millennium), in modern usage the Japanese relegated **katakana** specifically to a **limited set of words**: they are written to write foreign words.

To give two instances:

- **notation of foreign proper names**: countries, cities, rivers, names of people...
- **notation of common terms borrowed from foreign languages** (specifically from American English): we have already distinguished, at least visually, these words.

A few remarks before moving on:

1. For proper names of foreign places and people, katakana transcription is taken from the pronunciation of the word in its original language. This is true for cities, for mountains, for people...: フランス **furansu**, *France* (Lesson 13, item 1), ナポレオン **naporeon**, *Napoleon* (Lesson 51, item 1), パリ **pari**, *Paris* (Lesson 55, item 7), モスクワ **mosukuwa**, *Moscow* (Lesson 55, item 7), ウイーン **uīn**, *Vienna* (Lesson 78, item 9). By contrast, country names are usually taken from the English pronunciation: スペイン **supein**, *Spain* (instead of España; Lesson 38, item 6), ブラジル **burajiru**, *Brazil* (instead of Brasil Lesson 69, item 3), オーストリア **ōsutoria**, *Austria* (instead of Österreich; Lesson 78, item 9).

2. The Japanese language cannot accommodate **consonant blends**. This means that very often foreign words have to be finagled with before they can easily fit out of a Japanese-speaker's mouth: Try Springfield or San Francisco: スポリングフィールド **suporingufirudo** or サン・フランシスコ **san furanshisuko**. And for many common words that may be a bit longer than most Japanese words, they've found ways to abbreviate: ビル **biru** (Lesson 24, item 10) is *building*, or what is left over from ビルディング **birudingu**. スト **suto** is *to strike*, as it's shortened from ストライキ **sutoraiki**. And many other words, even if they come from English, are abbreviated beyond recognition: how about ワー・プロ **wā.puro** for *word processor* or エア・コン **ea.kon** for what we often call *A/C, air conditioning*?

A big problem with grasping vocabulary after being transformed from English is that it's hard to have any true sense of the life span of many of these words. Some words come in with a bang and are gone in a flash, and others linger on long after their English equivalents are long out of date (try パト・カー **pato.kā** from **patrol car**, or *police car*, Lesson 32, item 12). And then there's a personal snobbism that varies from speaker to speaker: many Japanese people pepper their language with all sorts of katakana, while others refrain from imported words at all costs. Either way, it's become a part of the language we're just going to have to cope with. And with that, on to the next lesson!

## Second Wave: 第二十九課 (Lesson 29)

しん じゆく えき  
**新宿 駅** ①  
 shinjuku eki

- 1 - ごめん なさい。  
 go me n na sa i.
- 2 - 遅かった ですね。約束 より  
 oso ka t ta de su ne. yaku soku yo ri  
 三十分 遅れて います よ。②  
 sanjūpun okure te i ma su yo.
- 3 - すみません。新宿 駅 で ひどい  
 su mi ma se n. shinjuku eki de hi do i  
 目 に あった の です。  
 me ni a t ta no de su.
- 4 - どう した ん です か。  
 dō shi ta n de su ka.
- 5 - もう 新宿 駅 は こりごり です。  
 mō shinjuku eki wa ko ri go ri de su.  
 あれ は 駅 じゃ なくて、迷路 です。③  
 a re wa eki ja na ku te, mei ro de su.

## Notes

- ① 新宿, cf. Lesson 65, note 1. Shinjuku station proper is huge, with underpasses running in many directions and exits spread far apart from each other.
- ② 三十分, *thirty minutes*. The only way in Japanese to say *half an hour*. After one hour, of course, you can say 一時半 *いちじはん* for an ▶

## Shinjuku Station

(Shinjuku-station)

- 1 – My apologies!
- 2 – You got here late! You're a half hour late for our date!  
(was late / it is / [agreement]) (date / in relation to / three-ten-minute / be late / [engagement])
- 3 – I'm sorry. It was horrible in Shinjuku station.  
(I'm sorry) (Shinjuku-station / [place] / awful situation / [goal] / met / it's that)
- 4 – What happened?  
(how / did / it's that / [question])
- 5 – I've had enough of that Shinjuku station! It's not a station, it's a labyrinth!  
(already / Shinjuku-station / [announce] / be disgusted / it is) (that thing / [announce] / station / it is not // labyrinth / it is)



- ▶ *hour and a half*. Neither does the concept of a “quarter-hour” exist in Japanese. Simply say the number of minutes: 15, 45... (cf. Lesson 57, note 9).
- ③ cf. Lesson 64, note 4. *なくて* in *て* form of the negative suffix *ない*, which is, from the point of view of its form, an adjective.

- 6 ホーム から 地下 の 通路 まで  
 hō mu ka ra chi ka no tsū ro ma de  
 降りた 後、どっち へ 行ったら いい  
 o ri ta ato, do t chi e i t ta ra i i  
 の か わからなく なって しまいました。  
 no ka wa ka ra naku na t te shi ma i ma shi ta.
- 7 右 の 方 に も 左 の 方 に も 同じ  
 migi no hō ni mo hidari no hō ni mo ona ji  
 よう に 人 が 大勢 歩いて 行く ので、  
 yō ni hito ga oo ze i aru i te i ku no de,  
 まず 左 へ 行って みました。④  
 ma zu hidari e i t te mi ma shi ta.
- 8 改札口 で 切符 を 渡した 後、  
 kai satsu guchi de kip pu o wa ta shi ta ato,  
 エスカレーター が 見えた ので、  
 e su ka rē tā ga mi e ta no de,  
 上 が 出口 か と 思いました。⑤  
 ue ga de guchi ka to o mo i ma shi ta.
- 9 ところが、それは デパート へ  
 to ko ro ga, so re wa de pā to e  
 入る 入口 でした。  
 hai ru iri guchi de shi ta.

## Notes

- ④ 大勢 means *much, many*, but can only be used when speaking of people. In other situations, use *たくさん*.
- ⑤ In the Tōkyō subway, you have to turn in your ticket before being allowed to leave. So don't throw your ticket away before you exit the station! Also, price varies depending on the distance traveled, so don't change your mind after buying your ticket, or you'll have to pay the difference at the exiting ticket-window.

- 6 I didn't know which way to go after descending from the platform to the underpass. 79

(platform / from / underground / [relation] / passage / up to / descended / after // which side / [destination] / when I go / be good / it's that / [question] / was not understandable / become / do completely)

- 7 The people were going left and right equally, so first I went to the left.

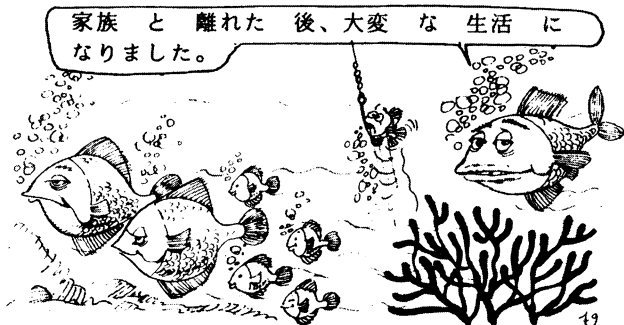
(right / [relation] / side / [place] / also / left / [relation] / side / [place] / also / same / way / [adverbial] / person / [subject] / many people / walk / go / because // first / left / [destination] / go / have done to see)

- 8 After giving my ticket at the ticket window, I saw an escalator and thought the exit would be at the top.

(ticket-window / [place] / ticket / [object] / handed over / after // escalator / [subject] / be visible / because // above / [subject] / exit / [question] / [quotation] / thought)

- 9 But it was an entrance for a department store.

(but / that one / [announce] / department store / [destination] / enter / entrance / it was)



79 10 やつと の おもいで、新宿 駅 の  
 ya t to no o mo i de, shin juku eki no  
 地下 の 通路 へ 戻って、又 切符  
 chi ka no tsū ro e modot te, mata kip pu  
 を 買って、右 へ 行きました。⑥  
 o ka t te, migi e i ki ma shi ta.

11 今度 は やつと 外 へ 出る こと  
 kon do wa ya t to soto e de ru ko to  
 が できました が、東口 じゃ なくて  
 ga de ki ma shi ta ga, higashi guchi ja na ku te  
 西口 だったので、どこ が どこ  
 nishi guchi da t ta no de, do ko ga do ko  
 だ か わからなくて、タクシー で  
 da ka wa ka ra na ku te, ta ku shī de  
 ここ まで 来ました。⑦  
 ko ko ma de ki ma shi ta.

12- そう ですか。新宿 駅 は 簡単 です  
 sō de su ka. shin juku eki wa kan tan de su  
 よ。乗り換る 場合 には 電車 と  
 yo. no ri kae ru ba ai ni wa den sha to  
 同じ 色 の 表示板 が あります  
 ona ji iro no hyō ji ban ga a ri ma su  
 し、「出口」「入口」も ちゃんと  
 shi, de guchi iriguchi mo cha n to  
 書いて あります から、気 を 付けて  
 ka i te a ri ma su ka ra, ki o tsu ke te  
 見れば、すぐ わかる はず です。⑧⑨  
 mi re ba, su gu wa ka ru ha zu de su.

## Notes

⑥ 戻る, cf. Lesson 35, paragraph 5.

⑦ じゃ, cf. Lesson 64, note 3.



- 10 At last, I went back to the station underpass, I bought a ticket, and went to the right.  
*(at last / [relation] / feeling / Shinjuku-station / [relation] / underground / [relation] / passage / [destination] / retrace steps // anew / ticket / [object] / buy // right / [destination] / went)*
- 11 This time, I finally made it out of the station. However, it wasn't the East exit but the West, so I didn't know where I was, and so I took a taxi and came here.  
*(this time / [emphasis] / finally / outside / [destination] / go out / fact of / [subject] / was possible / but /// East exit / it wasn't // West exit / it was / because /// where / [subject] / where / it is / [question] / not be understandable // taxi / [means] / here / up to / came)*
- 12 – Did you?! Shinjuku station is really quite simple! When you have to make a change, there are lighted signs the same color as the trains, and “Exit” and “Entrance” are often written, so if you pay attention, you should be able to understand right away!  
*(really) (Shinjuku-station / [announce] / simple / it is / [engagement]) (change train / case / [time] / [emphasis] / suburban train / [comparison] / identical / color / [relation] / indicator panel / [subject] / exist / and // / “exit” / “entrance” / also / regularly / be written / because /// attention / [object] / apply / if you look // right away / be understandable / probability / it is)*

- ▶ ⑧ し. This little word connects two clauses, whenever you have a list of facts that add up to a single explanation or defense of one point. cf. Lesson 71, item 3 and exercise 1, item 2.
- ⑨ 書いて あります. For a very small number of action verbs, this combination: て form + ある(あります) can be used to express a passive state: 書いて ある, *was written*. But it is only used in specific instances: the action is viewed from the point of view of its result and the perpetrator of the action is unknown. We often see it with the verb 書く, *to write* (cf. Lesson 17, item 13; Lesson 50, item 13; Lesson 61, item 4) as well as the verb 置く, *to place*, 置いて ある, *is placed, is located* (cf. Lesson 40, item 5; Lesson 62, item 7).

13 - そう ですか。でも 私 みたい  
 sō de su ka. de mo watashi mi ta i  
 に 色盲 の 人 は どう したら  
 ni shiki mō no hito wa dō shi ta ra  
 いい ン ですか?  
 i i n de su?

\*\*\*

れんしゅう

## 練習

## Exercise 1

- ① 時計 が 止まって いて、何時 か  
 わからなくて、遅く なって しまいました。
- ② 着いた 時 は、もう 七時 十五分  
 前 でした。
- ③ やっと 政府 は 科学研究 の ため  
 の 予算 を 決めました。
- ④ -キエ さんは いらっしゃいます か。  
 -はい、います。
- ⑤ 家 に 帰った 後 で、すごい 雨  
 が 降り はじめました。
- ⑥ 家族 と 離れた 後、大変 な 生活  
 に なりました。

- 13 – Ah! What do you do if you're colorblind, like me? 79  
*(really) (but / me / same / [adverbial] / colorblind / [relation] /  
person / [announce] / how / if one does / be good / it's that)*

\*\*\*

### Answers to Exercise 1

- ① My watch stopped, I didn't know what time it was, and I was late.
- ② When I arrived, it was already fifteen minutes to seven o'clock.
- ③ The government finally settled the budget for scientific research.
- ④ –Is Mr. Kie there? –Yes. ⑤ After I went home, it started to pour.
- ⑥ After he left his family, his life turned very difficult.

### Transcription

- ① tokei ga tomatte ite, nanji ka wakaranakute, osoku natte shimaimashita.
- ② tsuita toki wa, mō shichiji jūgofun mae deshita.
- ③ yatto seifu wa kagakukenyū no tame no yosan o kimemashita.
- ④ –kie san wa irasshaimasu ka. –hai, imasu. ⑤ ie ni kaetta ato de, sugoi ame ga furihajimemashita.
- ⑥ kazoku to hanareta ato, taihen na seikatsu ni narimashita.

79 Exercise 2

...に <sup>ことば</sup>言葉 <sup>い</sup>を 入れなさい

- ① This isn't a labyrinth here, it's a station.  
 ..... , .....
- ② The train leaves exactly at twenty before four o'clock.  
 .....  
 demasu
- ③ If you saw it, you would understand right away.  
 sore o ....., .....
- ④ Such a color does not fit at all.  
 ..... na
- ⑤ If it's expensive, I won't buy it.  
 ..... wa yo
- ⑥ I studied until a quarter past nine o'clock, then I went to take a trip to Shinjuku.  
 ..... , .....  
 . asobi .. .....

\*\*\*

かた か な れんしゅう  
 片假名の練習  
 kata ga na no ren shū  
 Katakana Exercises

ア    イ    ウ    エ    オ    シ  
 A    I    U    E    O    N

Don't forget to respect the stroke order and direction!

## Answers to Exercise 2

① koko wa meiro de wa nakute, eki desu. ② kisha wa chōdo yo ji ni  
 jup pun mae ni -. ③ - mireba, sugu wakarū deshō. ④ konna iro wa  
 zenzen awanai -. ⑤ takakereba kawanai -. ⑥ ku ji jū go fun made  
 benkyō shite, shinjuku e - ni ikimashita.

\*\*\*

## か と 書き取り kakitori - Dictation

① ea (air) ② ai (eye) ③ ia (year) ④ uea (wear) ⑤ on ("on") ⑥ in  
 (inn)

① エア ② アイ ③ イア ④ ウエア ⑤ オン ⑥ イン

Second Wave: 第三十課 (Lesson 30)

だい はち じゅう か  
80 第八十課 dai hachi juk ka

がく せい の へ や  
学生 の 部屋  
gaku sei no he ya

1 - 今週 の 金曜日 に おふくろ が  
kon shū no kin yō bi ni o fu ku ro ga  
田舎 から 出て くる ので、少し  
inaka ka ra de te ku ru no de, suko shi  
部屋 を 片付けなければ いけない  
he ya o kata zu ke na ke re ba i ke na i  
んだ。①②  
n da.

2 - どう やって この 部屋 を  
dō ya t te ko no he ya o  
片付ける つもり?③  
kata zu ke ru tsu mo ri?

3 蒲団 は いつ から 畳んで ない  
fu ton wa i tsu ka ra tata n de na i  
の。④⑤  
no.

Notes

- ① おふくろ. While the literal translation of this word may mean *bag*, it actually means *mother*—and in a non-derogatory way. It is a very familiar, colloquial word that gives off something of a down-home feeling, used particularly by men to say *my mom*.
- ② We saw in Lesson 77, paragraph 4, an expression used to indicate **obligation**. Here is another one: 片付けなければ いけません. The first part is identical, and means *if I don't clean up*. The second ▶

## A Student's Room (student / [relation] / room)

- 1 – Because my mother is coming in from the country this Friday, I have to clean up my room a bit.  
(this week / [relation] / Friday / [time] / my mother / [subject] / countryside / from / go out / come / because // a bit / room / [object] / I must clean up / it's that)
- 2 – How do you intend to clean up this room?  
(how / do // this / room / [object] / clean up / intention)
- 3 – When was the last time you rolled up your futon?  
(futon / [announce] / when / from / not be folded / [question])

▶ part is made from いけません, which comes from いける, which itself is derived from いく. いける, *able to go*; いけません, *that won't go*. Literally, “if I don't clean up, it won't go”. That is, *I must clean up*. There is an important difference between this phrase and the last one, though. An expression whose second part is *ならない / なりません* is used for an obligation under external circumstances, or an obligation created by others. When the second part is *いけない / いけません*, the obligation is interior, coming from oneself.

③ cf. Lesson 71, note 1.

④ <sup>たた</sup>畳んで ない の。For の cf. Lesson 72, note 2. <sup>たた</sup>畳んで ない is just <sup>たた</sup>畳んで いない where the *い* is left off (cf. Lesson 75, note 8). The same later (item 6: *して* る instead of *して* いる).

⑤ While Western-style beds have begun to be adopted little by little in Japan, the traditional style is still used by the vast majority of the population. It consists of a mattress and something of a quilt, unrolled each night on the tatamis and rolled up again each morning in a large cabinet made specially for the purpose. There is not, then a special bedroom as such: the mattress (futon) can be placed in any room of the house.

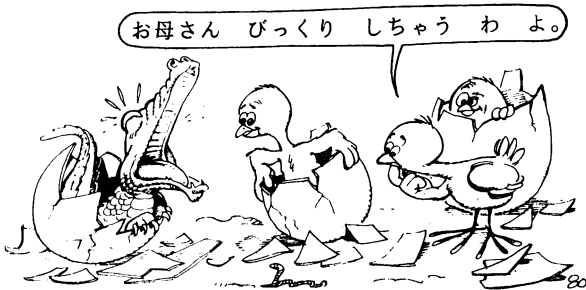
- 4 つくえ の 上 に た く さ ん の 物  
tsukue no ue ni ta ku sa n no mono  
が 乗 っ て い る ん じ ゃ な い ?  
ga no t te i ru n ja na i ?
- 5 ふ とん と つくえ で へ や が、いっ ぱい で、  
fu ton to tsukue de he ya ga, ip pai de,  
畳 たたみ なん か み 見 え な い じ ゃ な い ? ⑥⑦⑧  
tatami na n ka mi e na i ja na i ?
- 6 こ の なか で どう や っ て べんきょう  
ko no naka de dō ya t te ben kyō  
し て る の。  
shi te ru no.
- 7 ワイ シャ ツ の 上 に や さ い 野 菜 が  
wa i sha tsu no ue ni ya sai ga  
お 置 い て あ っ て、し た ぎ の よ こ に  
o i te a t te, shita gi no yoko ni  
さ と う が お 置 い て あ っ て … ⑨  
sa tō ga o i te a t te…
- 8 き た な い ナ イ フ や フ ォ ー ク や  
ki ta na i na i fu ya fō ku ya  
は し 箸 が つくえ の し た に お っ こ ち て  
hashi ga tsukue no shita ni o k ko chi te  
い る わ よ。⑩  
i ru wa yo.

## Notes

- ⑥ 一杯 is one of the measure words we spoke of in Lesson 63, page 105.
- ⑦ 畳, cf. Lesson 34, note 4.
- ⑧ なんかも, same meaning as など cf. Lesson 36, note 2.



- 4 Isn't there a heap of things on your table?  
*(table / [relation] / top / [place] / many / [relation] / thing / [subject] / pile / it's not that)*
- 5 With just the futon and table, the room is so crowded you can't even see the floor.  
*(futon / and / table / [means] / room / [subject] / full / it is // tatami / this kind of thing / not be visible / it's not)*
- 6 How can you study in there?  
*(this / inside / [place] / how / do // study / [question])*
- 7 There are vegetables on your shirts, and sugar next to your underwear!  
*(shirt / [relation] / top / [place] / vegetables / [subject] / be placed // underwear / [relation] / side / [place] / sugar / [subject] / be placed)*
- 8 There are dirty knives, forks, and chopsticks that have fallen under the table!  
*(be dirty / knife / or / fork / or / chopsticks / [subject] / table / [relation] / bottom / [place] / fall / [softener] / [engagement])*



- ▶ ⑨ お置いて あって, cf. Lesson 79, note 9; cf. also Lesson 74, note 1.
- ⑩ おっこちて いる. The Japanese language loves sounds that create an image (cf. Lesson 39, note 5), whether created by words used for nothing but this image or for existing words transformed to become more expressive. Here we have one of these transformations: the normal form would be おちて いる from おちる, *to fall*.

- 9 時計<sup>とけい</sup> が せっけん<sup>せ</sup> の 上<sup>うえ</sup> に 置いて<sup>お</sup>  
 to kei ga se k ke n no ue ni o i te  
 あるわ。このせっけん<sup>せいぶん</sup> 随分<sup>ずいぶん</sup> ひからびて  
 a ru wa. ko no se k ke n zui bun hi ka ra bi te  
 いるけど、使う<sup>つか</sup> こと ある の。  
 i ru ke do, tsuka u ko to a ru no.
- 10 - そりゃ たまにはあるさ。僕は<sup>ぼく</sup>  
 so rya tama ni wa a ru sa. boku wa  
 大学<sup>だいがく</sup> と アルバイト<sup>あ</sup> で 夜<sup>よる</sup> 帰<sup>かえ</sup>って  
 dai gaku to a ru ba i to de yoru kae t te  
 くる と、くたくた<sup>か</sup> で、部屋<sup>へや</sup> なんか  
 ku ru to, ku ta ku ta de, he ya na n ka  
 片<sup>かたづ</sup>付ける 余裕<sup>よゆう</sup> なんて ない よ。⑩  
 kata zu ke ru yo yū na n te na i yo.
- 11 - あなた この前<sup>まえ</sup> 片<sup>かたづ</sup>付けた の は  
 a na ta ko no mae kata zu ke ta no wa  
 いつ な の。⑪  
 i tsu na no.
- 12 - この前<sup>まえ</sup> おふくろ が 上京<sup>じょうきょう</sup> した  
 ko no mae o fu ku ro ga jō kyō shi ta  
 時<sup>とき</sup> だ から、六ヶ月<sup>ろっかげつ</sup> 前<sup>まえ</sup> だ よ。  
 toki da ka ra, rok ka getsu mae da yo.
- 13 - それ に して も、ちょっと ひどい  
 so re ni shi te mo, cho t to hi do i  
 じゃ ない？ お母<sup>かあ</sup>さん びっくり  
 ja na i o kaa sa n bi k ku ri  
 しちゃうわ よ。⑬  
 shi cha u wa yo.
- 14 - 片<sup>かたづ</sup>付 け 手<sup>て</sup>伝<sup>つた</sup>って くれ ない か。  
 kata zu ke te tsuda t te ku re na i ka.  
 たのむ よ。  
 ta no mu yo.

- 9 You have a watch on top of your soap. The soap is completely dry. Do you ever use it?  
*(watch / [subject] / soap / [relation] / top / [place] / be placed / [softener]) (this / soap / extremely / be dry / even though // use / fact of / exist / [question])*
- 10 – Sometimes! It's just that between university and my job, when I get home late, I'm exhausted and I don't have the time to clean up.  
*(this one-[announce] / rarely / [adverbial] / [emphasis] / exist / [softener]) (me / [announce] / university / and / job / [means] / night / return / come / when // exhausted / it's // room / this kind of thing / clean up / availability / what is called / not exist / [engagement])*
- 11 – When was the last time you cleaned up?  
*(you / this-before / cleaned up / fact of / [announce] / when / it is / [question])*
- 12 – It was the last time my mother came to Tōkyō, so that was six months ago.  
*(this-before / my mother / [subject] / go to the capital-did / when / it is / because // six-month-before / it is / [engagement])*
- 13 – All the same, it's a bit horrid, isn't it? Your mother will be surprised.  
*(all the same / a bit / be horrible / it is not) (your mother / surprise / do-do completely / [softener] / [engagement])*
- 14 – You're not going to help me clean up? Please...  
*(cleaning / help / not do for me / [question]) (request // [engagement])*

## Notes

- ⑪ さ is one more final particles. This one is used specifically by men, with a meaning quite similar to the わ of women. We give the same translation: [softener].
- ⑫ な, cf. Lesson 77, end of paragraph 1.
- ⑬ しちやう is what remains, in casual language, from the contraction of して and しまう. しまう added to a て form verb means that the action expressed by the verb is done to completion. (cf. Lesson 31, item 14; Lesson 45, item 11; Lesson 48, item 6; Lesson 60, item 11). Here: *your mother will be completely surprised.*

## Exercise 1

- ① 「アルバイト」という日本語の言葉は、ドイツから来た言葉です。だから片仮名で書きます。
- ② 日本では、一番普通なのは、ベッドより蒲団で寝ることです。
- ③ 子供達は、あの人が毎日遠い田舎から町まで歩いて来るのを知って、感心に思いました。
- ④ 昨日冷蔵庫に入れたシャンペンがなくなったのを見て、不思議に思いました。
- ⑤ 約束があるから必ずちょうど五時に出掛けなければならないが、その前にちょっと部屋を片付けなければいけないんだ。

\*\*\*

## Answers to Exercise 1

① The Japanese word “arubaito” is a word that comes from the German. That’s why it’s written in katakana. ② In Japan it’s most common to sleep on a futon rather than on a bed. ③ When the children learned that this man came to the city everyday from the far countryside by foot, they were full of admiration. ④ When I saw that the champagne I’d put in the refrigerator yesterday had disappeared, I found that strange. ⑤ I have an appointment, so I absolutely must leave the house at five o’clock, but before that, I have to clean up my room a bit.

## Transcription

① arubaito to iu nihongo no kotoba wa, doitsugo kara kita kotoba desu. dakara katakana de kakimasu. ② nihon de wa, ichiban futsū na no wa, beddo yori futon de neru koto desu. ③ kodomotachi wa, ano hito ga mainichi tooi inaka kara machi made aruite kuru no o shitte, kanshin ni omoimashita. ④ kinō reizōko ni ireta shanpen ga nakunatta no o mite, fushigi ni omoimashita. ⑤ yakusoku ga aru kara kanarazu chōdo goji ni dekenakereba naranai ga, sono mae ni chotto heya o katazukenakereba ikenai n da.

\*\*\*

80 Exercise 2

...に<sup>ことば</sup>言葉<sup>い</sup>を入れなさい

- ① I put my watch on the table.  
 ..... wa .....
- ② My younger sister's friend put her suitcase on the table in the entrance.  
 .....  
 .....
- ③ He took a large wallet out of his bag.  
 .....
- ④ This week I must see my father, whom I have not seen for three months.  
 ..... atte inai .....

\*\*\*

かた か な れんしゅう  
 片仮名の練習  
 kata ga na no ren shū  
 Katakana Exercises

カ  
KA


キ  
KI

ク  
KU

ケ  
KE

コ  
KO

From now on we'll also be using **long vowels**, as their system is much more simple in katakana than it is in hiragana (and it isn't that complicated in hiragana, is it?). Just write out a dash — after the syllable that needs lengthening (usually the accented syllable in the original language). This dash follows the direction of the text: horizontal if you're writing horizontally, vertical if you're writing vertically.

Example: kī (key): キー or 

⑤ I only use it rarely, so my soap is completely dry.

..... node, .....

.....

## Answers to Exercise 2

① tokei – tsukue no ue ni okimashita. ② imōto no tomodachi wa toranku o genkan no tsukue no shita ni iremashita. ③ baggu no naka kara ookii saifu o dashimashita. ④ san ka getsu mae kara – chichi ni konshū awanakereba ikemasen. ⑤ tama ni shika tsukawanai – sekken ga hikarabite shimaimashita.

\*\*\*

## か と 書き取り kakitori – Dictation

① inki (ink) ② kōku (Coke) ③ kea (care) ④ ōkē (okay) ⑤ kōn (corn) ⑥ kēki (cake) ⑦ ea.kon (air con(ditioning)) ⑧ koin (coin)

① インキ ② コーク ③ ケア ④ オーケー ⑤ コーン ⑥ ケーキ  
⑦ エア・コン ⑧ コイン

## Second Wave: 第三十一課 (Lesson 31)

だい はち じゅう いっ か  
 81 第八十一課 dai hachi jū ik ka

かぜ  
 風邪  
 kaze

- 1 - 元気 が なさ そう です ね。①  
 gen ki ga na sa sō de su ne.
- 2 - ええ、風邪 を ひきました。  
 e e, kaze o hi ki ma shi ta.
- 3 - 熱 も ある よう です ね。②  
 netsu mo a ru yō de su ne.
- 4 - ええ、今朝 三十九度 以上 ありました。  
 e e, kesa san jū kyū do i jō a ri ma shi ta.
- 5 - 薬 を 飲む か 医者 に 見せた  
 kusuri o no mu ka i sha ni mi se ta  
 方 が いい です よ。③  
 hō ga i i de su yo.
- 6 - 医者 も 薬 も 嫌い です。  
 i sha mo kusuri mo kira i de su.
- 7 - じゃあ、どう やって 直す の ですか。  
 ja a, dō ya t te nao su no de su ka.

Notes

- ① なさ そう です, cf. Lesson 71, note 2. Here, そう です also means: *based on what I see, quickly and generally, it seems...* It is not used, however, after a verb, but after an adjective: *ない*, which is the negative form of ある (cf. Lesson 35, end of paragraph 4), with the meaning *not to exist*. This そう です must then follow the root of the adjective (which is before the い). "...seem interesting" is おもしろ そう です (cf. Lesson 25, item 9 and note 1). But for *ない*, Japanese never ▶



# Lesson Eighty-One 81

## A Cold

- 1 – You don't look well!  
*(good health / [subject] / it looks like there isn't / it is / [agreement])*
  - 2 – Yes, I've caught a cold.  
*(yes / a cold / [object] / pull)*
  - 3 – It seems to me that you also have a fever.  
*(fever / also / exist / appearance / it is / [agreement])*
  - 4 – Yes, this morning I was over 39°.  
*(yes / this morning / three-ten-nine-degree / above / existed)*
  - 5 – You'd better take some medicine, or see a doctor.  
*(medicine / [object] / swallow / or else / doctor / [attribution] / show / side / [subject] / be good / it is / [engagement])*
  - 6 – I hate doctors and medicine.  
*(doctor / also / medicine / also / hated / it is)*
  - 7 – So how will you treat it?  
*(so / how / do // get better / it's that / [question])*
- ▶ uses a root that would otherwise be な… Thus, we make it longer: なさ. So, なさ そう, “based on what I see, it seems that there isn't...”
- ② ある そう です **To affirm something about the person to whom you are speaking** is quite tricky in Japanese speech, because you cannot really affirm something about someone other than yourself. Logical, isn't it? And so are born a grand array of phrases, each with a slightly different meaning. そう です of the above note expresses, as it were, the first reaction. よう です, on the other hand, presents that a deduction has been made following a detailed observation. よう です: “based on observation of certain facts, I deduce that...” The affirmation is, therefore, stronger.
- ③ The verb 飲む<sup>の</sup> that we have earlier translated as *to drink* is, in fact, a bit more broad than that. It can also apply to anything you swallow without chewing. In English, we “eat” soup, but the Japanese verb is again 飲む<sup>の</sup>. The same goes for pills – at least the kind you swallow!

- 8 - 私<sup>わたし</sup>は病<sup>びょう</sup>気<sup>き</sup>にな<sup>な</sup>ると、一<sup>いっ</sup>切<sup>さい</sup>化<sup>か</sup>学<sup>がく</sup>  
 watashi wa byō ki ni na ru to, is sai ka gaku  
 薬<sup>やく</sup>品<sup>ひん</sup>や抗<sup>こう</sup>生<sup>せい</sup>物<sup>ぶつ</sup>質<sup>しつ</sup>を<sup>つか</sup>使<sup>つか</sup>わ<sup>つか</sup>ない<sup>ない</sup>で、  
 yaku hin ya kō sei bus shitsu o tsuka wa na i de,  
 鍼<sup>はり</sup>や指<sup>し</sup>圧<sup>あつ</sup>や漢<sup>かん</sup>方<sup>ぼう</sup>薬<sup>やく</sup>で直<sup>なお</sup>し<sup>し</sup>ま<sup>ま</sup>す。  
 hari ya shi atsu ya kan pō yaku de nao shi ma su.  
 風<sup>かぜ</sup>邪<sup>ぜ</sup>の<sup>の</sup>時<sup>とき</sup>は何<sup>なに</sup>もし<sup>し</sup>ない<sup>ない</sup>で暖<sup>あた</sup>か<sup>か</sup>く  
 kaze no toki wa nani mo shi na i de atata kaku  
 して、寝<sup>ね</sup>て<sup>て</sup>い<sup>い</sup>る<sup>る</sup>だ<sup>だ</sup>け<sup>け</sup>です。<sup>④⑤</sup>  
 shi te, ne te i ru dake desu.
- 9 - それ<sup>それ</sup>で直<sup>なお</sup>る<sup>る</sup>の<sup>の</sup>です<sup>です</sup>か。<sup>か。</sup>  
 so re de nao ru no de su ka.
- 10 - はい、直<sup>なお</sup>り<sup>り</sup>ま<sup>ま</sup>す。し<sup>し</sup>か<sup>か</sup>し<sup>し</sup>薬<sup>くすり</sup>を<sup>の</sup>飲<sup>の</sup>む<sup>む</sup>  
 ha i, nao ri ma su. shi ka shi kusuri o no mu  
 より<sup>より</sup>は時<sup>じ</sup>間<sup>かん</sup>が<sup>が</sup>か<sup>か</sup>か<sup>か</sup>り<sup>り</sup>ま<sup>ま</sup>す。  
 yo ri wa ji kan ga ka ka ri ma su.
- 11 - 僕<sup>ぼく</sup>はせ<sup>せ</sup>っ<sup>っ</sup>か<sup>か</sup>ち<sup>ち</sup>な<sup>な</sup>ので、病<sup>びょう</sup>気<sup>き</sup>が<sup>が</sup>  
 boku wa se k ka chi na no de, byō ki ga  
 自<sup>し</sup>然<sup>ぜん</sup>に直<sup>なお</sup>る<sup>る</sup>ま<sup>ま</sup>で<sup>で</sup>待<sup>ま</sup>っ<sup>っ</sup>て<sup>て</sup>  
 shi zen ni nao ru ma de ma t te  
 い<sup>い</sup>ら<sup>ら</sup>れ<sup>れ</sup>ま<sup>ま</sup>せ<sup>せ</sup>ん。<sup>⑥</sup>  
 i ra re ma se n.

## Notes

- ④ 使<sup>つか</sup>わ<sup>つか</sup>ない<sup>ない</sup>で (cf. also Lesson 76, item 1, 住<sup>す</sup>ま<sup>ま</sup>ない<sup>ない</sup>で).  
 By now you should be pretty comfortable with て verbs, used to finish one clause while indicating that the sentence continues with others (cf. Lesson 52, note 2). When the verb is in negative form, there are two possibilities. The verb + ない in the て form: なくて (cf. Lesson 79, note 3), where the て form maintains the same value, or else we have the verb + ないで, as in the current ▶

- 8 – When I get sick I absolutely never use chemical medicines or antibiotics, I treat myself by acupuncture, acupressure, or Chinese pharmacology. When it's a cold, I don't do anything, I go to bed, in the warmth, and that's it!  
*(me / [announce] / sickness / [goal] / become / when // absolutely not / chemistry-medicine / or / antibiotic / [object] / without use // acupuncture needles / or / acupressure / or / Chinese pharmacology / [means] / treat) (a cold / [relation] / when / [emphasis] / nothing / without doing // hot / do // be in bed / only / it is)*
- 9 – And you heal like that?  
*(that one / [means] / heal / it's that / [question])*
- 10 – Yes, I get better. But it takes longer than with medicine.  
*(yes / heal) (but / medicine / [object] / swallow / more than / [emphasis] / time / [subject] / be used)*
- 11 – I'm too busy, I am incapable of staying and waiting for the sickness to get better naturally!  
*(me / [announce] / busy / it is / because // sickness / [subject] / nature / [adverbial] / heal / up to / not able to stay and wait)*

▶ example. Here, it not only indicates that there are more clauses in the sentence, but also, more specifically: “**I avoid** doing one thing, but rather I do another”. In this sentence: “**I avoid** using chemical medicine and antibiotics, but rather...”

⑤ Aside from standard western medicine, three other kinds of medicine are practiced in Japan. Chinese pharmacology is based on utilization of natural elements. Acupressure is related to acupuncture: it is also based on a system of points along the nervous system, but here without needles, only fingers pressed against the body.

⑥ 待<sup>ま</sup>って いら<sup>ま</sup>せん (cf. Lesson 72, note 6) comes from 待<sup>ま</sup>って いる, *to be waiting, staying and waiting*. But here: *I can't stay waiting*. The auxiliary いる (with a single root) that leads to the derived verb: いら<sup>ま</sup>れる / いら<sup>ま</sup>れます, negative: いら<sup>ま</sup>れない / いら<sup>ま</sup>せん.

12 <sup>い しゃ</sup> 医 者 の と ころ へ <sup>い</sup> 行 っ て <sup>く す り</sup> 薬  
 i sha no to ko ro e i t te kusuri  
 を も ら っ て、 は や く <sup>な お</sup> 直 し た <sup>ほう</sup> 方  
 o mo ra t te, ha ya ku nao shi ta hō  
 が い い と <sup>おも</sup> 思 い ま す。  
 ga i i to omo i ma su.

\*\*\*

れんしゅう

## 練習

## Exercise 1

- ① <sup>いま</sup> 今 の <sup>じょうけん</sup> 条件 は む ず か し く な っ た  
 け れ ど、 あ き ら め な い で、 <sup>べんきょう</sup> 勉 強 し て  
 い ま す。
- ② <sup>へん</sup> 変 な <sup>うわさ</sup> 噂 に <sup>みみ</sup> 耳 を <sup>か</sup> 貸 さ な い で、  
<sup>じぶん</sup> 自 分 で <sup>しら</sup> 調 べ た <sup>ほう</sup> 方 が い い で す よ。
- ③ <sup>からだ</sup> 体 の た め に <sup>さいきん</sup> 最 近 は バ ス に  
<sup>の</sup> 乗 ら な い で、 <sup>かいしゃ</sup> 会 社 ま で <sup>ある</sup> 歩 い て <sup>い</sup> 行 っ て  
 い ま す。
- ④ ゲ ガ ン さ ん か と <sup>おも</sup> 思 い ま し た  
 が、 <sup>ちか</sup> 近 づ い て み た ら、 <sup>べつ</sup> 別 の <sup>ひと</sup> 人 で し た。
- ⑤ お と と い、 <sup>くうこう</sup> 空 港 で、 <sup>きみ</sup> 君 の <sup>どうりょう</sup> 同 僚 の  
<sup>たけむら</sup> 竹 村 さ ん に <sup>あ</sup> 会 っ た が、 こ の ご ろ  
 い そ が し そ う だ ね。

12 I think it's better to treat it quickly, and going to the doctor and getting lots of medicine. 81

(*doctor / [relation] / place / [destination] / go // medicine / [object] / receive // quickly / healed / side / [subject] / be good / [quotation] / think*)

\*\*\*

### Answers to Exercise 1

① The current conditions have really become difficult, but he continues to study without giving up. ② It would be better to find out for yourself instead of listening to gossip. ③ For my health (*my body*), I now no longer take the bus but rather walk to the office. ④ I thought that it was Mr. Gegan, but when I approached, it was someone else. ⑤ The day before yesterday at the airport I met your colleague Takemura, he looks busy these days.

### Transcription

① ima no jōken wa muzukashiku natta keredo, akiramenaide, benkyō shite imasu. ② hen na uwasa ni mimi o kasanaide, jibun de shirabeta hō ga ii desu yo. ③ karada no tame ni saikin wa basu ni noranaide, kaisha made aruite itte imasu. ④ gegan san ka to omoimashita ga, chikazuite mitara, betsu no hito deshita. ⑤ ototoi, kūkō de, kimi no dōryō no takemura san ni atta ga, konogoro isogashi sō da ne.

81 Exercise 2

...に<sup>ことば</sup>言葉<sup>い</sup>を入れなさい

① It looks like you've really caught a cold.

.....

② When he understood that his mother wasn't coming, he looked very sad.

..... ,  
..... na kao o shimashita

③ I don't like watching tennis on television.

atashi . . . . .  
.....

④ After Tadashi returned, I noticed that he left without his magazines.

..... , .....  
..... no ni ki ga tsukimashita

⑤ If it's light, I could carry it.

.....

\*\*\*

かた か な れんしゅう  
片仮名の練習  
kata ga na no ren shū  
Katakana Exercises

ガ  
GA

ギ  
GI

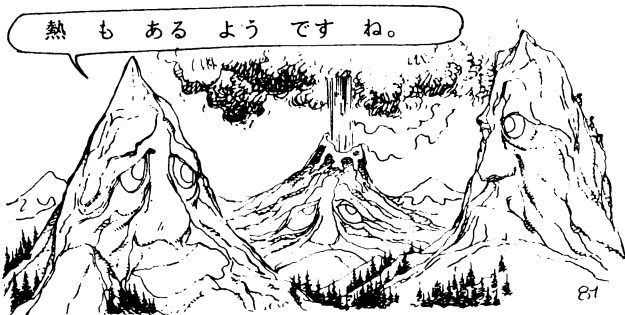
グ  
GU

ゲ  
GE

ゴ  
GO

## Answers to Exercise 2

- ① kaze o hiita yō desu ne. ② okaasan ga konai no ga wakatta toki, kanashisō -. ③ - wa terebi de tenisu o miru no ga kirai desu. ④ tadashi kun ga kaetta ato, zasshi o wasurete itta -. ⑤ karukereba motemasu.



\*\*\*

### か と 書き取り kakitori - Dictation

- ① gaun (gown) ② gongu (gong) ③ gō (go) ④ gan (gun) ⑤ kingu (king)

- ① ガウン ② ゴング ③ ゴー ④ ガン ⑤ キング

## Second Wave: 第三十二課 (Lesson 32)

82 第八十二課 dai hachi jū ni ka

ペット  
pe t to

- 1 — 先週 学校 の 生徒 に 見せる  
sen shū gakū no sei to ni mi se ru  
ため、日本 文化 について の  
ta me, ni hon bun ka ni tsu i te no  
ビデオを 何本か 見ました。①  
bi de o o nan bon ka mi ma shi ta.
- 2 そこは 日曜日 になると、  
so ko wa nichi yō bi ni na ru to,  
デパートの 近辺の 大通りが  
de pā to no kin pen no oo doo ri ga  
全部 自動車 通行 禁止 になり、  
zen bu ji dō sha tsū kō kin shi ni na ri,  
歩行者 天国 になります。②  
ho kō sha ten goku ni na ri ma su.

Notes

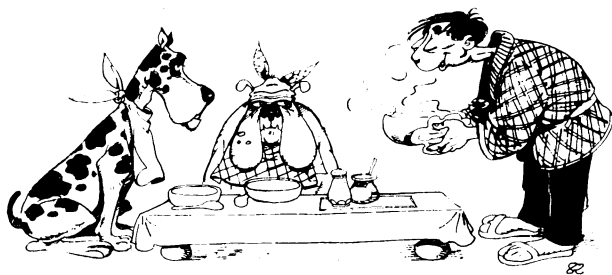
- ① 本 (cf. Lesson 53, note 3; and Lesson 63, paragraph 1). Here this kanji is used as a measure word for counting movies. 何本, *how many movies?*, 何本か (cf. Lesson 65, note 4), *several movies*.



## Lesson Eighty-Two 82

### Pets

- 1 – Last week I watched several videos about Japanese culture, to show them to students at my school.  
*(last week / school / [relation] / student / [goal] / show / so that // Japan-culture / about / [relation] / video / [object] / several long objects / watched)*
- 2 In the videos, all the avenues by the department stores are completely closed off to traffic on Sundays and become a heaven for pedestrians.  
*(there / [announce] / Sunday / [goal] / become / when /// department store / [relation] / vicinity / [relation] / avenue / [subject] / entirely / car-traffic-forbidden / [goal] / become // pedestrian-heaven / [goal] / become)*



このごろは動物気違いが多いの  
ではないですか。

- ▶ ② Large department stores (and smaller shops, too) are all open on Sunday, and so many in Japan take this day to do their shopping. So the shopping districts are also often the destination of family outings and strolls.

- 3 そして <sup>おお どの</sup>大通り の <sup>まん なか</sup>真中 に テーブル  
 so shi te oodoori no man naka ni tē bu ru  
 や <sup>い す</sup>椅子 を <sup>なら</sup>並べたり、<sup>こ ども</sup>子供 の  
 ya i su o nara be ta ri, ko domo no  
 た め の ブランコ や シーソー  
 ta me no bu ra n ko ya shī sō  
 な ど も <sup>だ</sup>出したり します。③  
 na do mo da shi ta ri shi ma su.
- 4 そこ までは <sup>とく</sup>特 に <sup>か</sup>変わった  
 so ko ma de wa toku ni ka wa t ta  
 こ と は なか っ た の で す が、  
 ko to wa na ka t ta no de su ga,  
 そ の <sup>あと おもしろ</sup>後 面白 <sup>もの</sup>い 物 を <sup>み</sup>見ました。④  
 so no ato omo shiro i mono o mi ma shita.
- 5 <sup>にちようび</sup>日曜日 に <sup>かぞく</sup>家族 づれ で <sup>さんぽ</sup>散歩  
 nichi yō bi ni ka zoku zu re de san po  
 し て い る <sup>ひとたち</sup>人達 の <sup>なか</sup>中 に <sup>いぬ</sup>犬  
 shi te i ru hito tachi no naka ni inu  
 を <sup>つ</sup>連れて いる <sup>ひと</sup>人 が い ま し た。  
 o tsu re te i ru hito ga i mashi ta.
- 6 そ の <sup>いぬ</sup>犬 が <sup>かっこう</sup>どんな 恰好 <sup>し</sup>して  
 so no inu ga do n na kak kō shi te  
 い た と <sup>おも</sup>思います か。  
 i ta to omo i ma su ka.

\*\*\*

- 3 And they install tables and chairs in the center of the avenue, and they put out swings and seesaws for the children.  
*(and / avenue / [relation] / center / [place] / table / and / chair / [object] / align // child / [relation] / for / [relation] / swing / and / seesaw / this kind of thing / also / put out / do)*
- 4 So far, there's nothing particularly bizarre, but then I saw something amusing.  
*(there / up to / [emphasis] / particular / [adverbial] / be different / thing / [announce] / not exist / it's that / but // then / be amusing / thing / [object] / saw)*
- 5 Among the people who go out walking as a family on Sunday, there was one with a dog.  
*(Sunday / [time] / family-company / [means] / stroll-do / people / [relation] / inside / [place] / dog / [object] / accompany / person / [subject] / existed)*
- 6 What do you think this dog looked like?  
*(this / dog / [subject] / what kind of / appearance / did / [quotation] / think / [question])*



## Notes

- ③ …たり…たり します cf. Lesson 76, note 8.
- ④ 面白い is not an easy adjective to translate: *interesting, amusing, funny...* In fact, it suggests anything that might pique one's interest, of any degree – from the ridiculous to the sublime in but a word.



7 <sup>よんほん</sup> 四本 <sup>の</sup> の <sup>あし</sup> 足 <sup>に</sup> に <sup>あか</sup> 赤い <sup>くつ</sup> 靴 <sup>を</sup> を  
yon hon no ashi ni aka i kutsu o

はかされて いた の です。⑤  
ha ka sa re te i ta no de su.

8 <sup>ずつと</sup> ずっと <sup>まえ</sup> 前に <sup>あさくさ</sup> 浅草 <sup>で</sup> で <sup>ペット用</sup> ペット用 <sup>の</sup> の  
zu t to mae ni asa kusa de pe t to yō no

<sup>くつ</sup> 靴 <sup>や</sup> や <sup>ようふく</sup> 洋服 <sup>や</sup> や <sup>ぼうし</sup> 帽子 <sup>を</sup> を <sup>う</sup> 売って  
kutsu ya yō fuku ya bō shi o u t te

いる <sup>みせ</sup> 店 <sup>を</sup> を <sup>み</sup> 見た <sup>こと</sup> こと <sup>が</sup> が <sup>あり</sup> あります  
i ru mise o mi ta ko to ga a ri ma su

が、<sup>まさか</sup> まさか <sup>あんな</sup> あんな <sup>もの</sup> 物 <sup>を</sup> を <sup>か</sup> 買う <sup>ひと</sup> 人  
ga, ma sa ka a n na mono o ka u hito

が いる と <sup>おも</sup> 思いません <sup>で</sup> でした。⑥  
ga i ru to omo i ma se n de shi ta.

9- <sup>このごろ</sup> このごろ <sup>は</sup> は <sup>どうぶつ</sup> 動物 <sup>きちが</sup> 気違い <sup>が</sup> が  
ko no go ro wa dō butsu ki chiga i ga

<sup>おお</sup> 多い <sup>の</sup> の <sup>で</sup> で <sup>は</sup> は <sup>ない</sup> ない <sup>です</sup> ですか。  
oo i no de wa na i de su ka.

10- <sup>いえ</sup> 家 <sup>の</sup> の <sup>きんじょ</sup> 近所 <sup>に</sup> に <sup>いぬねこびやういん</sup> 犬猫美容院 <sup>が</sup> が  
uchi no kin jo ni inu neko bi yō in ga

あります。そこ <sup>にせ</sup> では <sup>ほうせき</sup> 偽の <sup>の</sup> 宝石 <sup>の</sup> の  
a ri ma su. so ko de wa nise no hō seki no

ついた <sup>くびわ</sup> 首輪 <sup>など</sup> などを <sup>う</sup> 売って <sup>い</sup> ます。  
tsu i ta kubi wa na do o u t te i masu.

## Notes

- ⑤ はかされて いた, from はかされる, which is itself derived from はかす. This is the second set of verbs that can be derived from another verb (after those derivations meaning *to be able to...*, cf. Lesson 64, note 2). First we have here a pair: はく, *to put on oneself (shoes, socks, pants, anything you wear on* ▶

- 7 He was wearing red boots on all four feet.  
*(four-long object / [relation] / foot / [attribution] / be red / shoe / [object] / be made wear / it's that)*
- 8 A long time ago in Asakusa I saw a store that sold boots, clothing, and hats for pets, but I didn't think there were really people who bought things like that!  
*(much / before / [time] / Asakusa / [place] / pet-usage / [relation] / shoe / and / clothing / and / hat / [object] / sell / store / [object] / saw / fact of / [subject] / exist / but // really / of this sort / thing / [object] / buy / person / [subject] / exist / [quotation] / didn't think)*
- 9 – Aren't there a lot of people crazy about animals these days?  
*(right now / [emphasis] / animal-crazy / [subject] / be many / it's not that / it is / [question])*
- 10 – Near my house there is a beauty parlor for dogs and cats. They sell collars studded with fake gems.  
*(my house / [relation] / vicinity / [place] / dog-cat-beauty parlor / [subject] / exist) (there / [place] / [emphasis] / false / [relation] / gem / [subject] / set / collar / this kind of thing / [object] / sell)*

▶ *your feet or legs*), and はかす, to put on someone else. Starting with the multiple-root verb はかす we can derive: はかされる in place of the final U, we have ARERU, and the verb becomes **PASSIVE**. はかす, to put on someone else, はかされる, literally: “to be made put on my shoes”. This may seem a bit strange to us, but this passive form can be used for all verbs, and not only –as in English– those verbs with a direct object.

⑥ 浅草<sup>あさくさ</sup> is a district in Tōkyō. Located in the Northeast, not far from Ueno (cf. Lesson 39, note 2). Before its great sanctuary extends a space covered with shops and innumerable boutiques of traditional crafts. This is a neighborhood with a remaining sense of the countryside, and many Japanese from small-towns are particularly comfortable here. It's also the theatre and music-hall area. Until World War II, it was what was called a “pleasure quarter”, and certain traces remain even today...

- 11 - ああ、そう ですか。この 間 お  
 a a, sō de su ka. ko no aida o  
 会<sup>あ</sup>い した 時<sup>とき</sup>、お宅<sup>たく</sup> の 猫<sup>ねこ</sup> ちゃん  
 a i shi ta toki, otaku no neko cha n  
 は、すてき な 宝<sup>ほう</sup>石<sup>せき</sup> の ついた  
 wa, su te ki na hōseki no tsu i ta  
 首<sup>くび</sup>輪<sup>わ</sup> を して いました けれど、  
 kubi wa o shi te i mashi ta ke re do,  
 そこ で 買<sup>か</sup>った ン だす ね。⑦  
 so ko de ka t ta n de su ne.

\*\*\*

れんしゅう

## 練習

## Exercise 1

- ① 兄<sup>あに</sup> は お見<sup>み</sup>合<sup>あ</sup>い の 写<sup>しゃ</sup>真<sup>しん</sup> を 送<sup>おく</sup>り ましたが、  
 断<sup>ことわ</sup>られて、あきらめました。
- ② 一<sup>せん</sup>九<sup>きゅう</sup>〇〇 年<sup>ひやく</sup> 以<sup>ねん</sup>前<sup>いぜん</sup> に 建<sup>た</sup>て られ た  
 家<sup>いえ</sup> は、この 町<sup>まち</sup> に 今<sup>いま</sup> でも たくさん  
 残<sup>のこ</sup>っ て います。
- ③ ヨーロ<sup>く</sup>ッパ の 国<sup>くに</sup> の 文<sup>ぶん</sup>化<sup>か</sup> に ついて  
 本<sup>ほん</sup> を 読<sup>よ</sup>ん だ り、ビデ<sup>み</sup>オ を 見<sup>み</sup>た り して、  
 段<sup>だん</sup>々<sup>だん</sup> いろい<sup>ろ</sup>ろ 覚<sup>おぼ</sup>え て い きます。
- ④ 晚<sup>ばん</sup>御<sup>ご</sup>飯<sup>はん</sup> の 支<sup>し</sup>度<sup>たく</sup> を して いる 間<sup>あいだ</sup>  
 に、子<sup>こ</sup>供<sup>ども</sup> は 外<sup>そと</sup> で 遊<sup>あそ</sup>ん だ り、道<sup>みち</sup>  
 を 通<sup>とお</sup>る 人<sup>ひと</sup> を 見<sup>み</sup>た り して います。

11 – Oh, yes! When we met, not long ago, your little cat was wearing a lovely collar set with gems... that's where you bought it!

(oh yes) (last time / [politeness]-meeting-did / when /// [politeness]-your residence / [relation] / cat / [announce] / lovely / it is / gem / [subject] / set / collar / [object] / did / even though // there / [place] / bought / it's that / [agreement])

82

## Notes

- ⑦ Even though お宅<sup>たく</sup> is a noun, we can still refer to it as a high degree form of 家<sup>いえ</sup>. 家, my residence, お宅 a polite your residence. お会<sup>あ</sup>い した high degree version of the middle degree 会<sup>あ</sup>いました, met.

\*\*\*

⑤ ビデオ を 二十本<sup>にじゅっほん</sup> 一日中<sup>いちにちじゅう</sup> 見て  
いきました ので、大変<sup>たいへん</sup> 疲れ<sup>つか</sup>れました。

## Answers to Exercise 1

① My older brother had sent his photograph for an arranged marriage, but he was refused, he is depressed. ② There are currently still many houses in our city built before 1900. ③ I read books and watch videos about the culture of European countries, and so little by little I am learning many things. ④ While I prepare dinner, outside the children are playing or watching the people passing by in the street. ⑤ I watched twenty videos in one day, I'm extremely tired!

## Transcription

① ani wa omiai no shashin o okurimashita ga, kotowararete, akiramemashita. ② sen kyūhyaku nen izen ni taterareta ie wa, kono machi ni ima demo takusan nokotte imasu. ③ yōroppa no kuni no bunka ni tsuite hon o yondari, bideo o mitari shite, dandan iroiro oboete ikimasu. ④ bangohan no shitaku o shite iru aida ni, kodomo wa soto de asondari, michi o tooru hito o mitari shite imasu. ⑤ bideo o nijuppon ichinichijū mite imashita node, taihen tsukaremashita.

82 Exercise 2

...に<sup>ことば</sup>言葉<sup>い</sup>を入れなさい

① Where do you live? (*where does your house exist?*)

.....

② I live (*my house exists*) in back of the bank which is on the east side of the avenue.

..... gawa . . . . .  
.....

③ Isn't it a funny idea to put boots on a dog?

..... okashii ja nai  
desu ka

④ It's a novel that was written under particular conditions.

..... no moto de .....  
.....

\*\*\*

かたかなの練習  
kata ga na no ren shū  
Katakana Exercises

サ  
SA

シ  
SHI

ス  
SU

セ  
SE

ソ  
SO



⑤ Me myself, I hate listening to music while working on Japanese.

82

.....  
.....

### Answers to Exercise 2

① otaku wa doko ni arimasu ka. ② uchi wa oodoori no higashi-ni aru ginkō no ura ni arimasu. ③ inu ni kutsu o hakasu no wa -. ④ tokubetsu na jōken - kakareta shōsetsu desu. ⑤ watashi wa nihongo no benkyō o shinagara, ongaku o kiku no ga kirai desu.

\*\*\*

### か と 書き取り kakitori - Dictation

① aisu (ice) ② sain (signature) ③ sakusesu (success) ④ ōsā (author)  
⑤ saiensu (science) ⑥ uisukī (whisky) ⑦ konsaisu (concise)  
⑧ kōsu (course)

① アイス ② サイン ③ サクセス ④ オーサー ⑤ サイエンス  
⑥ ウイスキー ⑦ コンサイス ⑧ コース

### Second Wave: 第三十三課 (Lesson 33)

ぶん がく  
文学  
bun gaku

- 1- この <sup>ころ</sup>頃 の <sup>わか</sup>若い <sup>ひとたち</sup>人達 は あまり  
ko no goro no waka i hito tachi wa a ma ri  
<sup>ほん</sup>本 を <sup>よ</sup>読まなく なりました ね。  
hon o yo ma na ku na ri ma shi ta ne
- 2 私達 <sup>わたしたち</sup>が <sup>わか</sup>若かった <sup>ころ</sup>頃 には、  
watashi tachi ga wakaka t ta koro ni wa,  
<sup>いっしょうけんめい</sup>一生懸命 <sup>げんじ</sup>源氏 <sup>ものがたり</sup>物語 や <sup>まくら</sup>枕 の  
is shō ken mei gen ji mono gatari ya makura no  
<sup>そうし</sup>草子 など <sup>こてん</sup>古典 <sup>ぶんがく</sup>文学 を よく  
sō shi na do ko ten bungaku o yo ku  
<sup>よ</sup>読んだ もの でした が、<sup>まご</sup>孫 など  
yo n da mo no de shi ta ga, mago na do  
は <sup>まんが</sup>漫画 <sup>よ</sup>しか 読みません。①②③④  
wa man ga shi ka yo mi ma se n.

## Notes

- ① There are two ways of saying *and* between two nouns. First と, when the listing is complete, that one has named all the objects concerned (cf. Lesson 66, item 10); then や when you do not have a complete list but rather a few representative objects. This is why a better translation for や is *or*, rather than *and*.
- ② The Russians have Tolstoy and Dostoevsky, the French have Molière, and the English have Shakespeare (to name just a few). Japanese contains an **immense literary tradition**, going back all the way to the first masterworks of the eighth century. These two classics, known by everyone in Japan, studied at school, ▶

---

## Lesson Eighty-Three 83

### Literature

- 1 – Young people these days don't read very much!  
(right now / [relation] / be young / people / [announce] / not much / book / [object] / not read / become / [agreement])
- 2 When we were young, we read classical literature often and with passion: *The Tale of Genji* or the *The Pillow Book*. but our grandchildren only read comic books.  
(us / [subject] / were young / moment / [time] / [emphasis] // with passion / *The Tale of Genji* / or / *The Pillow Book* / this kind of thing / classical-literature / [object] / often / read / the fact was that / but // grandchild / this kind of thing / [announce] / comic book / only / not read)



- ▶ copied, parodied, and more, are two works representative of writing around the year 1000. *The Tale of Genji* is a very long novel that describes the intrigues and mannerisms of the imperial court through following the tale –and especially the romantic life– of the prince, the book's hero. *The Pillow Book* is a series of poetic reflections. The two classics were written by maidens of the court. 枕草子 is indeed pronounced **makura no sōshi**, even though the の is not written. This often happens, as a matter of fact, in proper names (cf. Lesson 68, item 1: 山手, pronounced **yamanote**, even though there is no の).
- ③ The use of ものでした (です) implies what has preceded was presented as a habit of the speaker, something that he or she did very often. It turns the verb before it into a state, instead of just an action.
  - ④ 漫画, this term means not only comic books, but also cartoons and animated movies.

- 3- 読<sup>よ</sup>みたい 本<sup>ほん</sup> を 全<sup>ぜん</sup>部<sup>ぶ</sup> 買<sup>か</sup>う こと  
 yo mi ta i hon o zen bu ka u ko to  
 は でき<sup>で</sup>な<sup>き</sup>か<sup>な</sup>つ<sup>つ</sup>た の<sup>の</sup>で、 図<sup>と</sup>書<sup>しょ</sup>館<sup>かん</sup> へ  
 wa de ki na ka t ta no de, to sho kan e  
 通<sup>かよ</sup>つて<sup>よ</sup>よく 読<sup>よ</sup>んだ もの<sup>もの</sup> でした。<sup>③⑤</sup>  
 kayo t te yo ku yo n da mo no de shi ta.
- 4 二<sup>は</sup>十<sup>た</sup>ち に な<sup>な</sup>つ<sup>つ</sup>た 頃<sup>ころ</sup> に は 平<sup>へい</sup>安<sup>あん</sup>  
 hatachi ni na t ta koro ni wa hei an  
 時<sup>じ</sup>代<sup>だい</sup> の 主<sup>おも</sup> な 作<sup>さく</sup>品<sup>ひん</sup> は ほ<sup>ほ</sup>ぼ  
 ji dai no omo na sakuhin wa ho bo  
 全<sup>ぜん</sup>部<sup>ぶ</sup> 読<sup>よ</sup>んで いた<sup>い</sup>ました。<sup>⑥</sup>  
 zen bu yo n de i ma shi ta.
- 5 特<sup>とく</sup> に 清<sup>せい</sup> 少<sup>しょう</sup>納<sup>な</sup>言<sup>ごん</sup> の 枕<sup>まくら</sup> の  
 toku ni sei shō nagon no makura no  
 草<sup>そう</sup>子<sup>し</sup> など は 暗<sup>あん</sup>記<sup>き</sup> す<sup>す</sup>る ほ<sup>ほ</sup>ど  
 sō shi na do wa an ki su ru ho do  
 何<sup>なん</sup>度<sup>ど</sup> も 読<sup>よ</sup>み<sup>み</sup>ま<sup>ま</sup>し<sup>し</sup>た。<sup>⑦</sup>  
 nan do mo yo mi ma shi ta.
- 6- あ<sup>あ</sup>な<sup>な</sup>た は 清<sup>せい</sup> 少<sup>しょう</sup>納<sup>な</sup>言<sup>ごん</sup> と<sup>と</sup>か 紫<sup>むらさき</sup>  
 a na ta wa sei shō nagon to ka murasaki  
 式<sup>しき</sup>部<sup>ぶ</sup> など の 女<sup>じょ</sup>流<sup>りゅう</sup> 作<sup>さく</sup>家<sup>か</sup> が  
 shiki bu na do no jo ryū sak ka ga  
 好<sup>す</sup>き な よ<sup>よ</sup>う だ<sup>だ</sup>す ね。<sup>⑧⑨</sup>  
 su ki na yō de su ne.

## Notes

- ⑤ 図<sup>と</sup>書<sup>しょ</sup>館<sup>かん</sup>, *library*, but only in the sense of "place where books for public consultation are stacked," not in the sense of a room in one's home where books are stored.
- ⑥ 平<sup>へい</sup>安<sup>あん</sup> 時<sup>じ</sup>代<sup>だい</sup> (cf. Lesson 17, note 3). Another great period in the history of Japan, named after the capital: 平<sup>へい</sup>安<sup>あん</sup> 京<sup>きょう</sup>, literally: ▶

- 3 – I couldn't buy all the books I wanted to read, so I went to the library regularly and read very much.  
*(I want to read / book / [object] / entirely / buy / fact of / [announce] / was not possible / because /// library / [destination] / frequent regularly // often / read / the fact was that)*
- 4 At twenty, I had read almost every important work from the Heian period.  
*(twenty / [goal] / became / moment / [time] / [emphasis] / Heian-period / [relation] / main / it is / work / [announce] / almost / entirely / read)*
- 5 Especially Sei Shōnagon's *Pillow Book*, I read it so many times that I almost knew it by heart.  
*(particular / [adverbial] / Sei Shōnagon / [relation] / Pillow Book / this kind of thing / [announce] / memory-do / to the point of / an indeterminate number of times / did read)*
- 6 – It looks like you like women writers, like Sei Shōnagon and Murasaki Shikibu...  
*(you / [announce] / Sei Shōnagon / or else / Murasaki Shikibu / this kind of thing / [apposition] / woman writer / [subject] / liked / it is / it seems that / [agreement])*



- ▶ “capitol of peace”, located where Kyōto now stands. This period lasted from 794 to 1185. It was a golden age of Japanese arts.
- ⑦ 清 <sup>せい</sup> 少納言 <sup>しょうなごん</sup> was the author of *The Pillow Book*. We don't know much about her –not even her name! This nomenclature is only an appellation describing her father's function in court.
- ⑧ 紫 <sup>むらさき</sup> 式部 <sup>しきぶ</sup> was the author of *The Tale of Genji*. We don't know her name, either: this is also something of a nickname.
- ⑨ よう です, cf. Lesson 81, note 2.

7- いいえ、別に そう 言う わけ で  
 i i e, betsu ni sō i u wa ke de  
 は ない だ すが、ど ち ら か と 言 う  
 wa na i de su ga, do chi ra ka to i u  
 と、平 安 時 代 の 朝 廷 文 学 が 好 き  
 to, hei an ji dai no chōtei bungaku ga su ki  
 な の で、自 然 と 女 の 作 家 の  
 na node, ji zen to onna no sak ka no  
 作 品 を 読 む こ と に な り ま し た。  
 saku hin o yo mu ko to ni na ri ma shi ta.

8 この 間、孫 に 「日 本 の 代 表 的 な  
 ko no aida, mago ni ni hon no dai hyō teki na  
 古 典 だ か ら 源 氏 物 語 で も 読 み  
 ko ten da ka ra gen ji mono gatari demo yo mi  
 な さい」と 言 っ た ら、「も う 漫 画 で  
 na sa i to i t ta ra, mō man ga de  
 読 ん だ」と 答 え ら れ ま し た。⑩  
 yo n da to kotae ra rema shi ta.

9 あ っ、も う 四 時 だ ね。遅 く  
 a t, mō yo ji de su ne. oso ku  
 ま で お 邪 魔 し ま し た。  
 ma de o ja ma shi ma shi ta.

## Notes

- ⑩ For verbs with one root we can also derive a **passive** form (cf. Lesson 82, note 5), exactly as for verbs with multiple bases. From 答える, *reply*, we derive 答えられる by replacing the final *u* with and **areru**. The “passive” sense here is taken literally: an action, event, or fact that one receives.

- 7 – No, not especially, but to tell the truth, I like courtly literature from the Heian period, so I have naturally come to read the works of women writers.

(no / special / [adverbial] / so / say / reason / it is not / it is / but /// of which side / [question] / [quotation] / say / if /// Heian-period / [relation] / imperial court-literature / [subject] / liked / it is / because // nature / [adverbial] / woman / [apposition] / writer / [relation] / work / [object] / read / fact of / [goal] / became)

- 8 Recently I said to my grand-daughter, “As it is one classical work representative of Japan, you should read *The Tale of Genji*”. I got for reply: “I already read it in comic books”.

(recently / grandchild / [attribution] / “Japan / [relation] / representative / it is / classical text / it is / because // The Tale of Genji / also / read” / [quotation] / as I said // “already / comic book / [means] / did read” / [quotation] / was given the response)

- 9 Ah, it’s already four o’clock! Excuse me for bothering you for so long.

(ah / already / four-o’clock / it is / [agreement]) (late / up to / [politeness]-bother / did)



- 83 10 - まだ いい で は ない です か。  
 ma da i i de wa na i de su ka.
- 11 - ええ。主人 が 帰<sup>かえ</sup>って くる まで  
 e e. shu jin ga kae t te ku ru ma de  
 に 晩御飯<sup>ばんごはん</sup> の 買<sup>か</sup>い物<sup>もの</sup> と 支度<sup>したく</sup>  
 ni ban gohan no ka i mono to shi taku  
 を しなければ いけません。ごちそう  
 o shi na ke re ba i ke ma se n. go chi sō  
 さま でした。⑪⑫  
 sa ma de shi ta.
- 12 - どう いたしまして。又、いつでも  
 dō i ta shi ma shi te. mata, i tsu de mo  
 遊び<sup>あそ</sup> に 来<sup>き</sup>て 下<sup>くだ</sup>さい。  
 aso bi ni ki te kuda sa i.
- 13 - 失礼<sup>しつれい</sup> します。ごめん 下<sup>くだ</sup>さいませ。⑬  
 shitsu rei shi ma su. go me n kuda sa i ma se.

## Notes

- ⑪ なければ いけません, cf. Lesson 80, note 2.
- ⑫ ごちそう さま でした is the formula for thanking someone who has offered something to eat or to drink. ▶

\*\*\*



- 10 – Stay a bit longer!  
*(still / be good / it's not that / it is / [question])*
- 11 – No. Before my husband gets back, I must go shopping and prepare dinner. Thank you for lunch.  
*(no) (my husband / [subject] / return / come / up to / [time] / dinner / [relation] / purchase / and / preparation / [object] / I must do) (feast-[politeness] / it was)*
- 12 – You're welcome, really! Come back and see me one of these days.  
*(you're welcome) (anew / whenever / distract / [goal] / come)*
- 13 – I'm leaving. Excuse me!  
*(impoliteness-do) (excuse me)*



- ▶ ⑬ Another fixed form (cf. Lesson 78, note 1) of—ます: —ませ.  
 Coming from the imperative: ごめん くださいませ, *excuse me*. It is the formula most often used when leaving, or when ending a telephone conversation. Primarily female.



## 練習

## Exercise 1

- ① 七時 <sup>しちじ</sup> ごろ <sup>ご</sup>ろ に <sup>たいへん</sup> 大変 <sup>な</sup> な <sup>こうつう</sup> 交通 <sup>じこ</sup> 事故 <sup>が</sup> が  
あつて、<sup>こうそくどうろ</sup> 高速道路 <sup>とお</sup> は <sup>とお</sup> 通れ <sup>な</sup> なく なり <sup>ま</sup> ました。
- ② <sup>あつ</sup> 暑 <sup>あつ</sup> くて、暑 <sup>あつ</sup> くて、<sup>し</sup> 死ぬ <sup>あつ</sup> ほど 暑 <sup>あつ</sup> かった  
です。
- ③ <sup>と</sup> 図書館 <sup>しよかん</sup> が <sup>どこ</sup> どこ に <sup>ある</sup> ある <sup>か</sup> か と  
<sup>き</sup> 聞 <sup>か</sup> れ <sup>ま</sup> した が、<sup>わか</sup> ら <sup>な</sup> くて、  
<sup>こた</sup> 答 <sup>え</sup> ら <sup>れ</sup> ません <sup>で</sup> した。
- ④ <sup>さいきん</sup> 最近 <sup>あし</sup> 足 <sup>いた</sup> が <sup>いた</sup> 痛 <sup>な</sup> くて、<sup>ある</sup> 歩 <sup>け</sup> なく  
な <sup>っ</sup> て <sup>し</sup> ま <sup>い</sup> ました。
- ⑤ <sup>せんしゅう</sup> 先週 <sup>よ</sup> 読 <sup>ん</sup> だ <sup>のうぎょう</sup> 農業 <sup>の</sup> の <sup>ざっし</sup> 雑誌 <sup>に</sup> に <sup>よる</sup> よる  
と、<sup>いま</sup> 今 <sup>に</sup> 日本 <sup>では</sup> では <sup>いろ</sup> いろ <sup>な</sup> な <sup>あた</sup> 新 <sup>しい</sup> しい  
<sup>や</sup> 野 <sup>さい</sup> 菜 <sup>をつ</sup> を <sup>つ</sup> 作 <sup>る</sup> る <sup>よ</sup> よ <sup>う</sup> う <sup>に</sup> に <sup>な</sup> な <sup>っ</sup> て <sup>い</sup> ます。

\*\*\*

## Exercise 2

...に <sup>こと</sup> 言葉 <sup>ば</sup> を <sup>い</sup> 入れ <sup>な</sup> さい

- ① How old is your younger sister?  
.....
- ② Just twenty years old this year.  
.....
- ③ There are people who believe that you can do everything with a  
computer.  
..... o .....te, .....  
..... te iru ..... .

## Answers to Exercise 1

- ① Around seven o'clock there was a terrible traffic accident, and we could no longer use the highway. ② It was hot, hot to death! ③ I was asked where there was a library, but I didn't know, so I couldn't answer. ④ For some time my legs have hurt, I can no longer walk at all. ⑤ After (if one based oneself on) an agricultural magazine that I read last week, in Japan we are now able to grow all sorts of new vegetables.

## Transcription

- ① shichiji goro ni taihen na kōtsū jiko ga atte, kōsokudōro wa too-renaku narimashita. ② atsukute, atsukute, shinu hodo atsukatta desu. ③ toshokan ga doko ni aru ka to kikaremashita ga, wakaranakute, kotaeraremasen deshita. ④ saikin ashi ga itaku natte, arukenaku natte shimaimashita. ⑤ senshū yonda nōgyō no zasshi ni yoru to, ima nihon de wa iroiro na atarashii yasai o tsukureru yō ni natte imasu.

\*\*\*

- ④ When I was young, I wanted to become a writer.

..... omotte  
imashita

- ⑤ Tomorrow if the weather is nice, let's get up early, and let's take a walk in the park.

..... ga ....., .....,  
.....

## Answers to Exercise 2

- ① imōto san wa o ikutsu desu ka. ② kotoshi chōdo hatachi desu. ③ konpyūtā – tsukat-, nandemo dekiru to omot – hito ga imasu. ④ wakai toki sakka ni narō to -. ⑤ ashita tenki – yokereba, hayaku okite, kōen o sanpo shimashō.

かたかなの練習  
 kata ga na no ren shū  
 Katakana Exercises

ザ  
ZA

ジ  
JI

ズ  
ZU

ゼ  
ZE

ゾ  
ZO

84 第八十四課 dai hachi jū yon ka

まとめ

matome

Revision and Notes

So? How's it going without the transcription in the notes, and the transcription in the exercises separated from the kana and kanji? Are you by now a grand expert of hiragana? You should certainly work to be, because starting with the next lesson, we're going to push harder! We'll talk more about that in just a minute.

1. But first, we have a promise to keep: **the family** (cf. Lesson 78, note 4). The question is: **what terms do I use to speak to:**

a) **members of my own family**

b) **members of other people's families?**

The answer gets a bit complex at times, but it never loses its essential logic.

Let's look at **the first case: I want to talk to other members of my own family**. It all depends on how old I am, or whether I'm a child or an adult. As for when a child becomes an adult, let's say it's about the time I move out of my parents' house, earn my own living, and get married. So **first, let's say I'm a child** (cf. Lesson 39, note 1). Speaking of my younger sister or brother, I simply use their

書き取り kakitori – Dictation

① sezon (season) ② jīnzu (jeans) ③ zōn (zone) ④ kōzu (cause)  
⑤ kuizu (gameshow (quiz)) ⑥ saizu (size)

① セゾン ② ジーンズ ③ ゾーン ④ コーズ ⑤ クイズ ⑥ サイズ

Second Wave: 第三十四課 (Lesson 34)

Lesson Eighty-Four 84

name plus ちゃん: かおる ちゃん, or I compose an expression  
妹いもうと の かおるちゃん (younger sister / [apposition] / Kaoru)  
(cf. Lesson 39, item 11). To speak about my older sister, I would  
say お姉さん, and of my big brother, お兄さん (cf. Lesson 71,  
item 5). Now to speak of my mother, I say お母さん, and of my  
father, お父さん (cf. Lesson 71, exercise 1, item 1). For my aunt,  
I say 伯母さん, and I call my uncle 伯父さん. Finally, for my  
grandmother I say お祖母さん (cf. Lesson 39, item 1; Lesson 59,  
exercise 2, item 4), while my grandfather is お祖父さん (cf.  
Lesson 39, item 1; Lesson 72, exercise 1, item 5).

And if I'm a very small child, I will call any young girl of my older  
sister's age お姉さん, and every boy my older brother's age お兄さん.  
Same goes with men and women of my parents' age: 伯母さん or  
伯父さん for women and men, respectively. All women my grand-  
mother's age become お祖母さん, and men my grandfather are  
お祖父さん.

**And now I've grown up, and become an adult**, so I change my hab-  
its, getting rid of …さん for all these words. **I never use …さん to  
speak about myself, or for members of my family** (cf. Lesson 26,  
note 2). My younger sister is then simply 妹いもうと (cf. Lesson 39, exer-  
cise 1, item 3; Lesson 50, exercise 1, item 5; Lesson 59, exercise 2,  
item 2; Lesson 80, exercise 2, item 2), my younger brother is 弟おとうと,

my older sister, 姉<sup>あね</sup> (cf. Lesson 31, item 10 –for my husband’s older sister, but I refer to her as if she were my own; Lesson 32, exercise 1, item 1; Lesson 55, exercise 2, item 5), my older brother, 兄<sup>あに</sup> (cf. Lesson 27, item 13; Lesson 30, exercise 1, item 1; Lesson 31, exercise 1, item 2; Lesson 37, exercise 1, item 4; Lesson 82, exercise 1, item 1), my mother, 母<sup>はは</sup>, my father, 父<sup>ちち</sup> (cf. Lesson 64, item 11; Lesson 65, exercise 1, item 1; Lesson 80, exercise 2, item 4). I can also talk about two at once: my parents, 両親<sup>りやうしん</sup> (cf. Lesson 47, exercise 1, item 2; Lesson 53, exercise 1, item 5). To cap it all off, I call my aunt, 伯母<sup>おば</sup>, my uncle, 伯父<sup>おじ</sup> (cf. Lesson 32, item 1; Lesson 34, exercise 1, item 4; Lesson 37, exercise 1, item 3), my grandmother, 祖母<sup>そぼ</sup>, and my grandfather, 祖父<sup>そふ</sup>.

If I am an adult in Japan it’s likely that I’m married. If I’m a woman, I speak of my husband by saying 主人<sup>しゅじん</sup> (cf. Lesson 31, item 10; Lesson 50, exercise 2, item 4; Lesson 59, item 12, and exercise 1, item 3; Lesson 83, item 11).

If I’m a man speaking of my wife, I call her 家内<sup>かない</sup> (cf. Lesson 18, item 8, note 4 and exercise 1, item 1; Lesson 44, item 4; Lesson 69, exercise 1, item 1), or else 妻<sup>つま</sup> (Lesson 34, item 6), which sounds perhaps a bit more formal, as in “my spouse”.

No matter whether I’m a man or woman, I say my daughter as 娘<sup>むすめ</sup> (cf. Lesson 66, exercise 1, item 3; Lesson 67, exercise 1, item 3; cf. also Lesson 76, item 10, with the same extensions as above: all younger girls of roughly my daughter’s age can be called 娘<sup>むすめ</sup>). I will speak of my son with 息子<sup>むすこ</sup> (cf. Lesson 26, item 4 and note 2; Lesson 30, exercise 2, item 3; Lesson 39, exercise 2, item 3; Lesson 50, exercise 2, item 4). If I have a nephew, he is 甥<sup>おい</sup> (Lesson 69, item 1), and nieces are 姪<sup>めい</sup>. When I get older and have grandchildren, I will call them 孫<sup>まご</sup> (cf. Lesson 60, item 1, Lesson 66, item 11; Lesson 83, items 2 and 8).

So there you are, able to talk about everyone in your family!

Now let’s take a look at **the second situation: I want to speak to you about your family!** The first change is that I have to add …さん

**everywhere** (which means I return to the words for children from the first case), from younger sister or brother up to grandfather and grandmother. 妹<sup>いもうと</sup>さん is your younger sister (cf. Lesson 69, exercise 1, item 1; Lesson 83, exercise 2, item 1), 弟<sup>おとうと</sup>さん is your younger brother, お姉<sup>おえ</sup>さん is your older sister, and お兄<sup>おにい</sup>さん is your older brother. Parents of others are called お母<sup>かあ</sup>さん for your mother (cf. Lesson 80, item 13) and お父<sup>とう</sup>さん for your father, while your aunt and your uncle are 伯母<sup>おば</sup>さん and 伯父<sup>おじ</sup>さん, respectively. 甥御<sup>おいご</sup>さん is your nephew (cf. Lesson 69, item 2 and exercise 2, item 4), and your grandmother is お祖母<sup>おばあ</sup>さん while お祖父<sup>おじい</sup>さん is your grandfather.

Now for speaking to you when you are married, referring to your wife: 奥<sup>おく</sup>さん, and 御主人<sup>ごしゅじん</sup> for your husband (cf. Lesson 48, item 9 and exercise 2, item 2). Your daughter is 娘<sup>むすめ</sup>さん (cf. Lesson 66, exercise 2, item 5), or very politely お嬢<sup>おじょう</sup>さん (Lesson 15, item 6 and note 1). Your son is 息子<sup>むすこ</sup>さん (Lesson 23, item 1 and exercise 2, item 1; Lesson 26, exercise 1, item 2) or, if he's quite young, お坊<sup>ぼう</sup>ちゃん (Lesson 15, item 10, note 3 and exercise 2, item 1; Lesson 23, exercise 1, item 5; Lesson 64, exercise 1, item 1).

So now you're ready to talk about everybody on anyone's family tree! A few remarks you should note:

-お祖母<sup>おばあ</sup>さん or お祖父<sup>おじい</sup>さん are also very often used in referring to anybody above a certain age, even if neither conversant is related to the person, as long as there exists some level of familiarity (cf. Lesson 59, exercise 2, item 5). The term 奥<sup>おく</sup>さん is likewise used as a general term for *Mrs.*

-Since we're almost there, let's go all the way! What if you want to speak, for instance, about the uncle or sister of some third party? When said third party is someone you know, or who is your relative, we generally use the …さん series (cf. Lesson 71, item 4). When the person is someone you do not know, then use the series without …さん (cf. Lesson 43, item 11).

84 2. We recently saw a brutal surge of “**derived**” verbs. It is time to make our way through these two sets:

- “**to be able to...**”: mode of derivation: for verbs with multiple roots, **eru** replaces *u* (cf. Lesson 64, note 2): 読む, *to read*, 読める, *to be able to read*. For verbs with one single root: **areru** replaces *u*: 降りる, *to go down*, 降りられる, *to be able to go down*.
- **passive voice**: mode of derivation: for all verbs, **areru** replaces *u* (cf. Lesson 82, note 5): 開く (multiple-root verb), *to open*, 開かれる, *to be opened*; 答える (single-root verb), *to answer*, 答えられる, *to be given the answer*.

Verbs derived this way are all single-root verbs.

But if you’re clever, you’ll have noticed this problem:

For verbs with multiple roots, we have indeed two verbs derived differently: 使う, *to use*, 使える, *to be able to use*, 使われる, *to be used* (note that verbs whose final syllable is a solitary *u* add on a *w* before the suffix **areru**, cf. Lesson 77, paragraph 3 for a similar phenomenon).

For verbs with one single root, we only have one derived form: 忘れる, *to forget*, 忘れられる, *to be able to forget*, or *to be forgotten*. Only the context will let us know which one is meant, and you’ll rarely mess up!

As for the two irregular verbs:

- する, *to do*: “to be able to do” does not exist as such, but rather できる, *to be possible*, is used instead. *To be done* is said される.
- 来る, *to come*, has only one derived form: 来られる, *to be able to come*, or *to receive someone’s coming*.

3. Let’s stay with the **verbs** so we can recall that there are **three ways of asking someone to do something**, and that we’ve seen all three already.

a) The single root of single-root verbs, or the *i* root for multiple-root verbs, + なさい. Low degree, familiar. This corresponds to the second person singular imperative. We’ve been using it in the title 297 • ni hyaku kyū jū shich (nana)



of exercise 2 for each lesson, as the low degree form can be read as either the infinitive or as a command.

b) て form of verbs + 下さい. This is the most ubiquitous formula, in middle degree.

c) Finally we have a high degree form, with お + the root of single-root verbs, or else the *i* root for multiple-root verbs + なさい or 下さい.

Remember Lesson 18, where the shopkeeper addresses the client with this formula (c)? High degree: お 待ち 下さい “please wait” (item 5). But the client, on the other hand, only uses formula b), in middle degree: 見せて 下さい, *show me* (item 6).

Cf. also: for formula a): Lesson 54, item 10; Lesson 71, item 10; Lesson 76, item 11. For formula b): Lesson 38, item 1; Lesson 40, item 4, Lesson 46, items 9 and 13; Lesson 61, item 9; Lesson 64, item 13; Lesson 65, item 6; Lesson 69, item 7; Lesson 73, item 3; Lesson 83, item 12; for formula c): Lesson 46, item 7.

In very familiar language, such as within the family, it will happen that a low degree version of the middle degree formula gets constructed, which is to say by leaving out the 下さい. All that’s left, then, is the て form of the verb, exceptionally located at the end of the sentence (cf. Lesson 29, item 6; Lesson 78, item 6).

**4.** Let’s go back to the **writing**. We are going to elevate our first step, as hiragana are no longer mysteries for you, and the katakana appear only sparsely in the following dialogues.

**We’re separating the dialogue with the transcription**, just as we’ve done with the exercises in the preceding six lessons.

We’re also going to take a second step: why write the answers to Lesson 2 in transcription, when you can write them out in hiragana? So **starting with Lesson 85, look out: each dot in the blank spaces of Lesson 2 is not a letter from our alphabet, but a HIRAGANA character** (or a katakana that you’ve already learned). Don’t get disoriented the first time it happens. You’ll catch on quickly. You’re already too big to keep using the transcription for training wheels –so let’s go!

## Second Wave: 第三十五課 (Lesson 35)

だい はち じゅう ご か  
85 第八十五課

きん かく じ  
金閣寺

- 1 - 表紙 に 金閣寺 の 写真 は  
どう でしょう か。①
- 2 - いい です ね。池 と 金色 の  
お寺 の 写真 を 見ると、  
いつも 心 が 静まります ね。
- 3 京都 の お寺 の 中 で 一番  
きれい だ と 思います。

Transcription

kinkakuji

- 1 - hyōshi ni kinkakuji no shashin wa dō deshō ka.  
2 - ii desu ne. ike to kin-iro no o tera no shashin o miru to,  
itsumo kokoro ga shizumarimasu ne.  
3 kyōto no o tera no naka de ichiban kirei da to omoimasu.

Notes

- ① 金閣寺. This temple, covered completely in gold leaf, reflected by the pond on which it rests, is one of the architectural jewels of Kyōto.

## Lesson Eighty-Five 85

### The Kinkakuji

- 1 – What would you say to a photograph of Kinkakuji for the cover?  
(cover / [attribution] / Kinkakuji / [relation] / photo / [announce] / how / it must be / [question])
- 2 – Good idea! A view in the photo of the pond and the golden temple will always ease the heart.  
(be good / it is / [agreement]) (pond / and / gold-color / [relation] / [familiarity]-temple / [relation] / photo / [object] / look / when // always / heart / [subject] / ease / [agreement])
- 3 For me it's the most beautiful of all Kyōto's temples.  
(Kyōto / [relation] / [familiarity]-temple / [relation] / within / [place] / the most / beautiful / it is / [quotation] / think)



85

- 4 <sup>いま</sup> 今 <sup>たてもの</sup> の 建物 <sup>せんさんびやくきゅうじゅうななねん</sup> は 一三九 七年  
 に <sup>た</sup> 建てられた <sup>せんきゅうひゃくごじゅうごねん</sup> ものでは <sup>なく</sup>、  
 一九五五年 <sup>ふくげん</sup> に 復元 <sup>された</sup> された  
 もの <sup>です</sup>。②③④
- 5 <sup>かんぺき</sup> 完璧 <sup>うつく</sup> な <sup>うつく</sup> 美しさ <sup>もと</sup> を <sup>もと</sup> 求めて <sup>いた</sup> いた  
 ある <sup>ぼう</sup> お坊さん <sup>きんかくじ</sup> が、金閣寺 <sup>の</sup> の <sup>あまり</sup> あまり  
 の <sup>うつく</sup> 美しさ <sup>に</sup> に <sup>た</sup> 耐えられ <sup>なくて</sup> なくて、  
<sup>ひ</sup> 火 <sup>をつけた</sup> を <sup>の</sup> の <sup>です</sup>。⑤⑥

## Transcription

- 4 ima no tatemono wa sen sanbyaku kyūjū nana nen ni taterareta mono de wa naku, sen kyūhyaku gojū go nen ni fukugen sareta mono desu.
- 5 kanpeki na utsukushisa o motomete ita aru obōsan ga, kinkakuji no amari no utsukushisa ni taerarenaku natte, hi o tsuketa no desu.

## Notes

- ② The digits in a year in Japanese are written the same way as ours are in English, with one number each in the ones, tens, hundreds, and thousands places. But while we say “thirteen ninety-seven”, in Japanese they say “thousand three hundred ninety seven”. Note that even though the first digit is *one*, it’s pronounced **sen**, for *thousand* (cf. Lesson 63).
- ③ 建てられた, derived from 建てる, (復元) された derived from する, cf. Lesson 82, note 5; Lesson 83, note 10, and Lesson 84, paragraph 2.

- 4 The current building is not the one built in 1397, it's the one reconstructed in 1955.  
*(now / [relation] / building / [announce] / thousand / three hundred / ninety / seven / year / [time] / was constructed / thing / it's not // thousand / nine hundred / fifty / five / year / [time] / restoration-was submitted / thing / it is)*
- 5 A certain monk, in search of perfect beauty, couldn't bear the too-beautiful Kinkakuji, so he set it on fire.  
*(perfect / it is / beauty / [object] / searched for / certain / monk / [subject] / Kinkakuji / [relation] / too much / [relation] / beauty / [agent] / be unable to bear / become // fire / [object] / did set / it's that)*



- ▶ ④ **で** は なく. First, cf. Lesson 50, note 5. **です** becomes **で** whenever it finishes a phrase that is not the final clause of the sentence. Then, cf. Lesson 52, note 2 and Lesson 54, note 8: just like verbs, adjectives also have a **て** form. For verbs, cf. Lesson 56, for adjectives the **て** is added to the **く** root (cf. Lesson 35, paragraph 3). **ではない** where **ない** is an adjective, should then become **ではなくて**. But for verbs, just as for adjectives, in the instance we're discussing (the end of a clause), we can also use a simpler form: for verbs, cf. Lesson 58, note 2; for adjectives, cf. Lesson 62, note 4. And that's simply what we have here.
- ⑤ ある お坊さん. We know the verb ある, *to exist*. Here we have a special and fixed use for it. Alone before a noun, ある becomes something of an adjective, meaning *a certain*, or *some*, or what in English we often say as *there was a... who...*: "There was a monk who ... set fire to the temple" (cf. also Lesson 37, item 6: ある 日, *a certain day*).
- ⑥ 耐えられる, *to be able to bear*, derived from 耐える, *to bear*, cf. Lesson 84, paragraph 2.

6-今<sup>いま</sup> の 建物<sup>たてもの</sup> は コンクリート 建て<sup>だ</sup>  
だ そう です ね。⑦

7-火事<sup>かじ</sup> が 起こ<sup>おこ</sup>って も 燃え<sup>も</sup>ない よう  
に コンクリート で 建て<sup>た</sup>直<sup>なお</sup>した と  
よく 言<sup>い</sup>われて います が、これ は 嘘<sup>うそ</sup>  
です。今度<sup>こんど</sup> も 木造<sup>もくぞう</sup> で  
建て<sup>た</sup>られました。⑧

8. 同じ よう に 完璧<sup>かんぺき</sup> な 美<sup>び</sup> を  
求<sup>もと</sup>めて いた 作家<sup>さっか</sup> の 三島<sup>みしま</sup> 由紀夫<sup>ゆきお</sup>  
が この 話<sup>はなし</sup> を 小説<sup>しょうせつ</sup> に  
書<sup>か</sup>きました。題<sup>だい</sup> は 「金閣寺<sup>きんかくじ</sup>」 です。⑨

## Transcription

- 6 - ima no tatemono wa konkurīto date da sō desu ne.  
7 - kaji ga okotte mo moenai yō ni konkurīto de tatenaoashita  
to yoku iwarete imasu ga, kore wa uso desu. kondo mo  
mokuzō de tateraremashita.  
8 onaji yō ni kanpeki na bi o motomete ita sakka no mishima  
yukio ga kono hanashi o shōsetsu ni kakimashita. dai wa  
kinkakuji desu.

## Notes

- ⑦ コンクリート 建て。Yes, this character is indeed the verb  
建てる **tateru**. When, as in this example, a compound word is  
constructed thus, the first consonant of the second word beco- ▶

- 6 – It seems that the current building is in concrete.  
*(now / [relation] / building / [announce] / concrete-construct / it is / it seems that / [agreement])*
- 7 – It is often said that it was rebuilt in concrete so that it wouldn't burn, even if there were a fire, but it's not true. This time it was also built in wood.  
*(a fire / [subject] / even if it broke out // not burn / in order that /// concrete / [means] / rebuilt / [quotation] / often / be said / but /// this one / [announce] / false declaration / it is) (this time / also / wood for construction / [means] / was built)*
- 8 The writer Mishima Yukio, who was also looking for supreme beauty, made this story into a novel, under the title *The Temple of the Golden Pavilion*.  
*(same / way / [adverbial] / perfect / it is / beauty / [object] / searched for / writer / [apposition] / Mishima / Yukio / [subject] / this / story / [object] / novel / [goal] / wrote) (title / [announce] / The Temple of the Golden Pavilion / it is)*



- ▶ mes voiced: *t* becomes *d*, basically just for ease of pronunciation. cf. two similar examples: the end of item 9: 楽しむ <sup>たの</sup>どころ, and the end of item 10: 印象 <sup>いんしやう</sup> 深い <sup>ふか</sup>, 印象 <sup>いんしやう</sup>, *impression* + 深い <sup>ふか</sup>, *to be deep*.
- ⑧ 言われて います, passive derived from 言う <sup>い</sup>, *to say*, cf. Lesson 84, paragraph 2.
- ⑨ Mishima Yukio, 1925 – 1970 (remember the **order of Japanese names: family name first, given name second**), an author's pseudonym. While he is one of the most well-known Japanese writers in the Anglophone world, because all his novels are published in English translation, in Japan he is but one of many great contemporary writers, most of whom remain unknown to us, for lack of translation.

- 9- 写真<sup>しゃしん</sup> では 建物<sup>たてもの</sup> と 池<sup>いけ</sup> の 風景<sup>ふうけい</sup>  
 だけ で 静か<sup>しず</sup> な 雰囲気<sup>ふんいき</sup> を  
 味わ<sup>あじ</sup>う こと が できます が、実際<sup>じっさい</sup>  
 に 行く と、観光客<sup>かんこうきゃく</sup> が 大勢<sup>おおぜい</sup>  
 いて、金閣寺<sup>きんかくじ</sup> の 美しさ<sup>うつく</sup> を 楽しむ<sup>たの</sup>  
 どころ では ありません。
- 10- 私<sup>わたし</sup> が 行<sup>い</sup>った 時<sup>とき</sup> は、冬<sup>ふゆ</sup> で、雪<sup>ゆき</sup>  
 が 降<sup>ふ</sup>って いて、朝<sup>あさ</sup> 早<sup>はや</sup>かった  
 ので、まだ だれも いなく、静か<sup>しず</sup> で  
 した から、印象<sup>いんしょう</sup> 深<sup>ふか</sup>かった です。
- 11 だから その お 寺<sup>てら</sup> に 火<sup>ひ</sup> を  
 つけた お坊<sup>ぼう</sup>さん の 気持<sup>きもち</sup> が  
 わかる よう な 気<sup>き</sup> が します。

## Transcription

- 9 - shashin de wa tatemono to ike no fūkei dake de shizuka na fun-iki o ajiwau koto ga dekimasu ga, jissai ni iku to, kankōkyaku ga oozei ite, kinkakuji no utsukushisa o tanoshimu dokoro de wa arimasen.
- 10 - watashi ga itta toki wa, fuyu de, yuki ga futte ite, asa hayakatta node, mada daremo inaku, shizuka deshita kara, inshō bukakatta desu.
- 11 dakara sono o tera ni hi o tsuketa obōsan no kimochi ga wakaru yō na ki ga shimasu.



- 9 – In the picture, with nothing but this view of the pavilion and the pond, you can taste an atmosphere of serenity, but when you go there for real, it's full of tourists, and there's no question of being able to enjoy the beauty of Kinkakuji.

*(photo / [means] / [emphasis] / building / and / pond / [relation] / view / only / [means] / serene / it is / atmosphere / [object] / taste / fact of / [subject] / be possible / but /// real / [adverbial] / go / when /// tourist / [subject] / large number of people / exist /// Kinkakuji / [relation] / beauty / [object] / enjoy-instant / it is not)*

- 10 – When I went it was winter, it was snowing, it was early in the morning, no one was there yet, and it was quiet so I felt a deep emotion.

*(me / [subject] / went / when / [emphasis] /// winter / it is // snow / [subject] / fall // morning / was early / because /// still / nobody / not exist // calm / it was / because /// emotion-was deep / it is)*

- 11 That's why I have the impression of understanding the feeling of the monk who set fire to the temple.

*(that's why / this / [[familiarity]-temple / [goal] / fire / [object] / did set / monk / [relation] / feeling / [subject] / be understandable / state / it is / impression / [subject] / be done)*



Exercise 1

- ① 平安時代は七九四年から一一八五年までで、江戸時代は一六〇三年から一八六七年までです。
- ② 大雨が降っても水が家の中に入らないように、昔から色々な設備が整えられています。
- ③ 表紙にするつもりで、先月金閣寺に写真を撮りに行きましたが、観光客が多くて、一枚もとれなかったので、がっかりして帰ってきました。
- ④ この村に新しい学校が開かれた時から、子供達の生活はすっかりよくなりました。
- ⑤ それまでは、毎朝この村から四キロ離れている隣の村の学校まで歩いて行かなければならなかったのです。

## Answers to Exercise 1

① The Heian era went from 794 to 1185, the Edo era went from 1603 to 1867. ② For a long time, all sorts of installations were converted, so that, even if heavy rain fell, the water would not enter the houses. ③ Last month, I went to take photos at Kinkakuji with the intention of doing the cover, but because of the number of tourists, I was unable to take a single photo, and came back disappointed. ④ Since a new school was opened in our village, the life of children became much easier. ⑤ Before, they had to walk every morning to school in the neighboring village, four kilometers away from ours.

## Transcription

① heian jidai wa nanahyaku kyūjū yo nen kara sen hyaku hachijū go nen made de, edo jidai wa sen roppyaku san nen kara sen happyaku rokujū nana nen made desu. ② ooame ga futte mo mizu ga ie no naka ni hairanai yō ni, mukashi kara iroiro no setsubi ga totonoerarete imasu. ③ hyōshi ni suru tsumori de, sengetsu kinkakuji ni shashin o tori ni ikimashita ga, kankōkyaku ga ookute, ichimai mo torenakatta node, gakkari shite kaette kimashita. ④ kono mura ni atarashii gakkō ga hirakareta toki kara, kodomotachi no seikatsu wa sukkari yoku narimashita. ⑤ sore made wa, maiasa kono mura kara yon kiro hanarete iru tonari no mura no gakkō made aruite ikanakereba naranakatta no desu.

## 85 Exercise 2

...に<sup>ことば</sup>言葉<sup>い</sup>を入れなさい

- ① It is said that, even in our days, there are many fires in Tōkyō.  
Is this true?

.. でも .....

.., .....

- ② My grandmother was born December 31, 1899.

.. . . . . ねん, .....

.....

- ③ There is a writer who made a novel of this story of the monk  
setting fire to the temple.

.. . . . .

.....

- ④ I went to Ueno with the intention of visiting the art museum,  
but there were a lot of tourists waiting in line; I didn't have time  
to wait, so I couldn't enter.

..... けんがく する ....., .....

.., ..... ならんで いて、ぼく も

....., .....

\*\*\*

かたかな れんしゅう  
片仮名の練習  
Katakana Exercises

夕  
TA

チ  
CHI

ツ  
TSU

テ  
TE

ト  
TO

For words written in katakana, there can also be repeated consonants. These may be: K, G, S (sh), J, Z, T (ch, ts), D, F, B, P. Just like with hiragana (cf. Lesson 68), this is signaled by the character for TSU, written small: ツ.

### Examples

クッキング (cooking) kukkingu

ゴシック (gothic) goshikku

## Answers to Exercise 2

- ① いま—とうきょう で よく かじ が おこる と  
いわれていますが、それはほんとうですか。
- ② そぼ は せん はっぴやく きゅうじゅう きゅう—、  
じゅうにがつ さんじゅう いちにちに うまれました。
- ③ ある さっかが おてらにひをつけた  
おぼうさんの はなしを しょうせつに しました。
- ④ びじゅつかん を — つもりで、うえの に いきました  
が、かんこうきやく が おおぜい —、— まっている  
じかん が なかった ので、はいれません でした。

*Wow! That was tough! But you've made it through all right! The main thing is to play the game, and do the exercise directly in hiragana, without relying on the transcription, or you'll forget all you've learned. And because we're not completely brutal, you'll find the transcription of the answers to these exercises on page 457. But you have to promise not to look at those pages unless it's absolutely necessary!*

\*\*\*

## か と 書き取り - Dictation

- ① chikin (chicken) ② kasetto (tape cassette) ③ kāten (curtain)  
④ tekisuto (text) ⑤ tsuisuto (twist) ⑥ shikku (chic) ⑦ takkusu  
(tax) ⑧ chiketto (ticket) ⑨ tsuā (tour) ⑩ takushī (taxi)

- ① チキン ② カセット ③ カーテン ④ テキスト ⑤ ツイスト  
⑥ シック ⑦ タックス ⑧ チケット ⑨ ツアー ⑩ タクシー

## Second Wave: 第三十六課 (Lesson 36)

86 第八十六課

だいはちじゅうろっか

じょうきょう  
上京!

- 1 - ごめん 下さい。①
- 2 - はい、どなた ですか。②
- 3 - ご無沙汰 しております。秋田 の  
吉本 です。③
- 4 - まあ。お久し振り ですね。  
どうぞ、お 上がり 下さい。④
- 5 - ありがとう ございます。

### Transcription

jōkyō (ichi)

- 1 - gomen kudasai.
- 2 - hai, donata desu ka.
- 3 - gobusata shite orimasu. akita no yoshimoto desu.
- 4 - maa. ohisashiburi desu ne. dōzo, o agari kudasai.
- 5 - arigatō gozaimasu.

### Notes

- ① In traditional Japanese houses, there were no doorbells, so this is how visitors would announce themselves. The habit stuck, even though many residences today come fully equipped with intercoms.
- ② どなた We've been practicing *だれ who?* for a long time. どなた means the same thing, but in high degree. When you don't know who your guest is, it's best to err on the side of formality: with high degree, you can be sure you're not insulting anyone. ▶

Visiting the Capital (Part One)

- 1 – Please!
- 2 – Yes, who is it?  
(yes / who / it is / [question])
- 3 – It's been a long time since I've given you my news! I'm Mrs. Yoshimoto, from Akita.  
([politeness]-absence of news-I do) (Akita / [relation] / Yoshimoto / it is)
- 4 – Oh! It has been a long time! Come in, please.  
(oh) ([politeness]-long time / it is / [agreement]) (please / [politeness]-rise)
- 5 – Thank you.



- ▶ ③ して おります. The entire dialogue between these women is very formal, so we find many high degree forms throughout. A bit of revision won't hurt: おります (cf. Lesson 44, note 4; Lesson 70, paragraph 3). 吉本 when giving your own name, never say さん, which is reserved only for names of others. Akita, cf. Lesson 37, note 1.
- ④ お上がり 下さい Literally: "please rise". The Japanese house is typically higher than the ground outside, so to enter you have to take a step or two up. The only room at ground-level is the 玄関, *entrance* (cf. item 6), of variable dimension depending on the house, but where, at any rate, you take off your shoes –because you never go in anyone's house with your shoes still on! So to "enter" a Japanese house, you have to "rise". Hence this expression.

- 86 6 けれども お <sup>げんかん</sup> 玄関 で <sup>しつれい</sup> 失礼  
 いたします。⑤
- 7- そんな に ご <sup>えんりょ</sup> 遠慮 を なさらないで、  
 どうぞ お <sup>あがり</sup> 上がり <sup>くだ</sup> 下さい。⑥
- 8 ちょうど <sup>うえ</sup> 上 の <sup>むすめ</sup> 娘 も <sup>とつぎさき</sup> 嫁先 から  
<sup>かえ</sup> 帰って おります し、 ゆっくり  
 なさって 行って <sup>くだ</sup> 下さい。③⑦
- 9 東京 に <sup>なに</sup> 何か <sup>ご</sup> 御 <sup>ようじ</sup> 用事 で  
 いらした の です か。⑧

## Transcription

- 6 keredomo o genkan de shitsurei itashimasu.  
 7- sonna ni go enryo o nasaranaide, dōzo o agari kudasai.  
 8 chōdo ue no musume mo totsugisaki kara kaette orimasu  
 shi, yukkuri nasatte itte kudasai.  
 9 tōkyō ni nanika go yōji de irashita no desu ka.

## Notes

- ⑤ いたします cf. Lesson 69, note 8; Lesson 70, paragraph 3.  
 ⑥ なさらないで for なさる cf. Lesson 46, note 4 and  
 Lesson 49, paragraph 2; Lesson 70, paragraph 3. For —ないで  
 cf. Lesson 81, note 4.  
 ⑦ し cf. Lesson 79, note 8. Usually, there are two or more clauses  
 each followed by し, each one being one factor, or cause, for  
 a conclusion. Here it is found alone, as the preceding clause  
 was added onto another, unspoken clause: “(since you are here  
 [unsaid]) and my daughter is here, too, why don’t you stay  
 awhile?”



- 6 But I've just come to offer my greetings (*I'm impolite in the entrance*)  
*(but / [politeness]-entrance / [place] / impoliteness-I do)*
- 7 – Don't stand on ceremony, please come in!  
*(this way / [adverbial] / [politeness]-restraint / [object] / without doing // please / [politeness]-rise)*
- 8 Just my oldest daughter is stopping by, coming from her mother-in-law's, make yourself at home.  
*(just / above / [relation] / my daughter / also / destination after marriage / from / return / and // at your ease / do)*
- 9 What's brought you to Tōkyō?  
*(Tōkyō / [goal] / something / [politeness]-errand / [means] / came / it's that / [question])*



- ▶ ⑧ One way of forming the high degree for nouns of Chinese origin is to add the prefix 御. Compare: 御用事, *your errands*, with 用事, item 12, *my errands*; 御一緒に, item 11, *together* (you and us), against our usual 一緒に. いらした from いらっしゃる, here the high degree form of 来る, cf. Lesson 78, note 7. よろしい cf. Lesson 23, note 5.

- 10 - ええ、息子むすこの嫁よめの両親りょうしんに  
 会あわなければならぬので、一泊いっぱく  
 二日ふつかで参まいりました。⑨⑩
- 11 - よろしかつたら お食事しょくじでも御ご  
 一緒いっしょにいかがですか。⑧
- 12 - ありがとう ございます。でも まだ  
 用事ようじが残のこっていますので、  
 こちらで失礼しつれいいたします。⑪
- 13 - さようで ございますか。せつかく  
 お越こし下くださったのに…⑫⑬
- 14 - こちらこそ 突然とつぜんお訪たずね  
 して、申もうし訳わけ ございません。⑪⑭

## Transcription

- 10 - ee, musuko no yome no ryōshin ni awanakereba naranai  
 node, ippaku futsuka de mairimashita.
- 11 - yoroshikattara o shokuji demo go issho ni ikaga desu ka.
- 12 - arigatō gozaimasu. demo mada yōji ga nokotte imasu node,  
 kochira de shitsurei itashimasu.
- 13 - sa yō de gozaimasu ka. sekkaku okoshi kudasatta noni.
- 14 - kochira koso tōtsuzen o tazune shite, mōshiwake gozaimasen.

- 10 – Well, we should see my daughter-in-law's parents, so we have come for two days.  
*(well / son / [relation] / wife / [relation] / two parents / [goal] / must meet / because // one night away from home / two days / [means] / we came)*
- 11 – Stay and have dinner with us, if you like.  
*(if it's good // [politeness]-meal / even / [politeness]-together / [adverbial] / how / it is / [question])*
- 12 – I thank you, but I still have a lot left to do. So I should go.  
*(thank you) (but / again / errand / [subject] / remain / because // this side / [means] / impoliteness-I do)*
- 13 – Really? It was so nice for you to stop by.  
*(so / it is / [question]) (rare occasion / [politeness]-pass through / did for me / even though)*
- 14 – Excuse me for coming without letting you know first.  
*(this side / also / suddenly / [politeness]-visit-do // good excuse / not exist)*

## Notes

- ⑨ 会<sup>あ</sup>わなければ ならない cf. Lesson 77, paragraph 3 and paragraph 4.
- ⑩ 参<sup>ま</sup>りました, high degree version of 行<sup>い</sup>く, *to go*, or 来<sup>く</sup>る, *to come*, for myself or other members of my family. 二<sup>ふ</sup>日<sup>つか</sup> cf. Lesson 70, paragraph 1.
- ⑪ こちら literally: “this side here”, used as a high degree designation of oneself.
- ⑫ さよう で ございます high degree equivalent of そう です.
- ⑬ 下<sup>くだ</sup>さった from 下<sup>くだ</sup>さる, high degree form for くれる, *to do for me*.
- ⑭ ございます high degree version of いる / います, *to exist* (for living beings), or ある / あります, *to exist* (for inanimate objects), for objects or beings that I present or which concern me. Not to be confused with で ございます, the high degree version of です, *it is* (cf. Lesson 70, paragraph 3).

## 練習

## Exercise 1

- ① 御主人は科学関係の雑誌社  
で働いていらっしゃる と 聞きました。
- ② そうです。主人は秋から「科学」と  
いう雑誌の仕事をしています。
- ③ 今週の日曜日に両親が訪ねて  
きますから、ゴルフはできない  
のです。ごめん なさい。
- ④ 御両親は前にお目にかかった  
時から どうなさっていますか。  
お元気でいらっしゃいますか。
- ⑤ ええ。おかげさまで、とても  
元気です。

\*\*\*

## Answers to Exercise 1

- ① I heard it said that your husband works in a science magazine.  
 ② Yes. Since autumn my husband has been working for the magazine called *Science*.  
 ③ This Sunday, my parents are coming to see me, so I can't go golfing. Excuse me.  
 ④ What has become of your parents since the last time I saw them? Are they well?  
 ⑤ Yes, thank you. They are very well.

## Transcription

① go shujin wa kagaku kankei no zasshi sha de hataraite irassharu to kikimashita. ② sō desu. shujin wa aki kara kagaku to iu zasshi no shigoto o shite imasu. ③ konshū no nichiyōbi ni ryōshin ga tazunete kimasu kara, gorufu wa dekinai no desu. gomen nasai. ④ go ryōshin wa mae ni o me ni kakatta toki kara dō nasatte imasu ka. o genki de irasshaimasu ka. ⑤ ee. o kage sama de, totemo genki desu.

\*\*\*

86 Exercise 2

...に <sup>ことば</sup>言葉 <sup>い</sup>を 入れなさい

- ① -When are you going? -I will certainly be going in two weeks.

- . . . . .

- . . . . .

- ② -The person seated next to your husband, who is that? Is it your nephew? -Yes, it's my nephew.

- . . . . . すわって いる

. . . . .

. . . . .

- . . . . .

- ③ I am very annoyed because I cannot remember people's names.

ひと . . . . . , . . . . .

- ④ I left in a car with the intention of going to see my aunt from Akita, but en route my car broke down, so I couldn't go to Akita, and I had to come back by train.

. . . . . たずねる . . . . . で 行きました

. . . . . , . . . . . , . . . . .

なって, . . . . . もどる こと になりま  
した

\*\*\*

かたかな れんしゅう  
片仮名の練習  
Katakana Exercises

ダ

DA

デ

DE

ド

DO

- ⑤ -Matsumoto! Telephone! It's your older sister!  
 -Ah! My sister! Thank you. Hello?  
 -.....!! ...!! .....!!  
 -あ! ..! どうも! .. .

## Answers to Exercise 2

- ① いつ いらっしゃいます か。きっと さらいしゅう  
 まいります。  
 ② ご しゅじんの そば に — かた は どなた  
 です か。おいごさん で いらっしゃいます か。はい  
 おい です。  
 ③ — の なまえ お おぼえられない から、とても  
 こまります。  
 ④ あきた の おば を — つもり で くるま —  
 が、とちゅう で くるま が こしょう して、あきた  
 まで いけなく —、きしゃ で —。  
 ⑤ まつもと さん! でんわ よ! おねえさん よ! —  
 あね! —! もし もし。

(in cases of extreme necessity only, cf. transcription of these responses on page 457)

\*\*\*

## か と 書き取り - Dictation

- ① doa (door) ② sandē (Sunday) ③ daun (down) ④ doitsu (Germany  
 [deutsch]) ⑤ daietto (diet) ⑥ ado (ad[vertisement]) ⑦ dēto (date)  
 ⑧ ōdā (order) ⑨ desuku (desk) ⑩ indo (India)

- ① ドア ② サンデー ③ ダウン ④ ドイツ ⑤ ダイエット  
 ⑥ アド ⑦ デート ⑧ オーダー ⑨ デスク ⑩ インド

## Second Wave: 第三十七課 (Lesson 37)

87 第八十七課

じょう きょう  
上京 Ⅱ

- 1- あ。吉本 じゃ ない か。東京 なんかに  
で 何 して いる ん だ?①
- 2- 実 は 息子 の 嫁 の 両親 に  
会 う た め に 一泊 二日 で  
東京 に 来 て いる ん だ。
- 3 家内 が 君 の 家 まで あいさつ  
に 行 っ た 筈 だ。
- 4- ああ、そう かい。ところで 僕達 も  
一 緒 に 一 杯 や ろ う か。②③④

Transcriptions

jōkyō (ni)

- 1- a. yoshimoto ja nai ka. tōkyō nanka de nani shite iru n da?  
2- jitsu wa musuko no yome no ryōshin ni au tame ni ippaku  
futsuka de tōkyō ni kite iru n da.  
3 kanai ga kimi no uchi made aisatsu ni itta hazu da.  
4- aa, sō kai. tokoro de bokutachi mo issho ni ippai yarō ka.

Notes

- ① In the “male” version of the voyage to Tōkyō, we are completely in low degree! Even the proper name of the other person is no longer followed by *さん*. As for the abbreviations: *じゃ* for *では* (cf. Lesson 64, note 3), *んだ* for *のです* (cf. Lesson 66, note 8). And above all... after we’ve drilled into you the explana- ▶



## Visiting the Capital (Part Two)

- 1 – Hey! That’s Yoshimoto! What are you doing in Tōkyō?  
*(hey) (Yoshimoto / it’s not / [question]) (Tōkyō / something / [means] / what / do / it’s that)*
- 2 – In fact we came to Tōkyō for just two days to see my daughter-in-law’s parents.  
*(in reality / [emphasis] / son / [relation] / wife / [relation] / two parents / [goal] / meet / in order to // one night away from home / two days / [means] / Tōkyō / [goal] / come / it’s that)*
- 3 My wife must have gone to your place to say hi.  
*(my wife / [subject] / you / [relation] / house / up to / greeting / [goal] / went / probability / it is)*
- 4 – Really? By the way, why don’t we go get a drink?  
*(ah / so / [question]) (by the way / us / also / together / [adverbial] / one-glass / let’s do / [question])*



- ▶ tion that a particle must always follow the function of a noun in a phrase (cf. Introduction to Volume 1, p. VIII), we have to tap-dance a little! Look at the end of the sentence: 伺伺して いる。Since 伺伺 is the complement of the object, we expect the particle を to link to the verb of the sentence, して いる。But there’s no printing mistake: there’s no を here. In very, very familiar and casual language, it’s allowed to drop off a few particles when the function of the noun is obvious (always economical, those Japanese...). This applies to が [subject], を [object], and は [announce].
- ② そう かい, cf. Lesson 75, note 5.
  - ③ 僕達ぼくたち, cf. Lesson 76, note 9. 僕ぼく, me, 僕達ぼくたち, us.
  - ④ やろう, cf. Lesson 75, note 1.

- 5 きたない けれど うまい 酒 を  
 の 飲ませる 所 を 知って いる ん  
 だ。⑤⑥
- 6- ああ、そう いう 所 が 一番  
 きらく 気楽 で いい ねえ。
- 7- 仕事 は どう だい。うまく 行って  
 いる かい。②⑦
- 8- 今 の ところ 何とか やって  
 いる と いう 状態 だ。⑧
- 9- おれ の ところ も 同じ よう な  
 もの だ。⑨

## Transcriptions

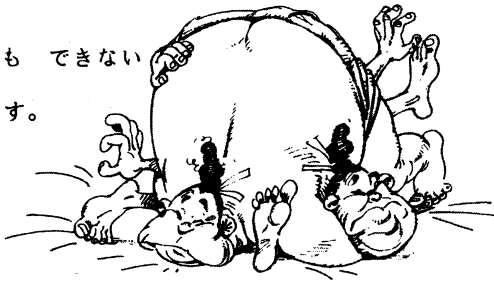
- 5 kitanai keredo umai sake o nomaseru tokoro o shitte iru n da.  
 6- aa, sō iu tokoro ga ichiban kiraku de ii nee.  
 7- shigoto wa dō dai. umaku itte iru kai.  
 8- ima no tokoro nantoka yatte iru to iu jōtai da.  
 9- ore no toko mo onaji yō na mono da.

## Notes

- ⑤ うまい is an adjective with many uses. Basically, it means *delicious*, but can be used in all sorts of applications to mean something really good. In English, we might similarly use the word *sweet* as in a 'sweet deal,' and the Japanese would use うまい in exactly the same way: うまい話 (a delicious story, an enticing deal).
- ⑥ You knew it had to happen! There were two, so there just had to be three! Yes, it's true: for each verb, there are three possible derivatives. We've already seen two (cf. Lesson 84, paragraph 2), ▶

- 5 I know a little place, a bit filthy, but they serve a great sake.  
*(be dirty / even though // be delicious / sake / [object] / make drink / place / [object] / know / it's that)*
- 6 – Oh, that kind of place is the best. Let's go!  
*(ah / so / say / place / [subject] / most / pleasant / it is // be good / [agreement])*
- 7 – And how's work? It's going well?  
*(work / [announce] / how / it is) (successful manner / go / [question])*
- 8 – Right now we're working on that (*a situation we're working on*)  
*(now / [relation] / moment / something / do / [quotation] / say / situation / it is)*
- 9 – Same for me!  
*(me / [relation] / place / also / same / way / it is / the fact is that)*

もう 何も できない  
 という  
 状態 です。



- ▶ so now look at the third: from 飲む<sup>の</sup>, *to drink*, we have the derivation 飲ませる, *to make drink*. When dealing with multiple-root verbs, replace the *u* by a final **aseru**. The derived verb has only one root.
- ⑦ だい, cf. Lesson 75, note 8.
- ⑧ For a long time we've been using the word ところ. Just a reminder: ところ designates a point, whether in space ("place", "location") or time ("instant", "moment").
- ⑨ とこ, abbreviation of ところ. おれ. cf. Lesson 66, note 4.

- 10 ところで 君きみ の 息子むすこ は 東京とうきょう の  
 人ひと と 結婚けっこん した んだ そう だね。
- 11 お 金持かねもち の お嬢じょう さん と 聞いた  
 が どう だい。⑦
- 12 - うん。 なかなか うるさい 嫁よめ で、  
 御覧ごらん の 通りとお 東京とうきょう まで 両親りょうしん  
 の 御機嫌ごきげん を うかがい に 来て  
 いる という わけ だ。⑩
- 13 - 酒さけ でも 飲のんで、 今晚こんばん は そんな  
 事こと は 皆みんな 忘れわすれよう。⑪④
- 14 - そう だ、そう だ。

## Transcriptions

- 10 tokorode kimi no musuko wa tōkyō no hito to kekkon shita  
 n da sō da ne.
- 11 o kanemochi no ojōsan to kiita ga dō dai.
- 12 - un. nakanaka urusai yome de, goran no toori tōkyō made  
 ryōshin no go kigen o ukagai ni kite iru to iu wake da.
- 13 - sake demo nonde, konban wa sonna koto wa minna wasureyō.
- 14 - sō da, sō da.

\*\*\*

- 10 Say, by the way, it seems that your son married someone from Tōkyō!  
*(by the way / you / [relation] / son / [announce] / Tōkyō / [relation] / person / with / marriage-did / it's that / it seems that / [agreement])*
- 11 I heard that she was a wealthy girl, too?  
*([familiarity]-rich / [relation] / lady / [quotation] / heard / but // how / it is)*
- 12 – Hmm, she's a handful: as you see, here I am in Tōkyō just to check up on her parents.  
*(hmm) (enough / be annoying / wife / it is // your view / [relation] / according to / Tōkyō / up to / two parents / [relation] / [politeness]-news / [object] / ask / [goal] / come / [quotation] / say / situation / it is)*
- 13 – So let's drink, and tonight we'll forget about all that!  
*(sake / even / drink // tonight / [emphasis] / such / thing / [announce] / all / let's forget)*
- 14 – All right, all right!  
*(so / it is) (so / it is)*

## Notes

- ⑩ うかがう, cf. Lesson 59, note 3. 御 機嫌ご きげん, cf. Lesson 86, note 8. This sudden politeness arises because the subject of conversation is now the family of the in-laws.
- ⑪ 忘れようわすれよう, cf. Lesson 75, note 1.

\*\*\*

## 練習

## Exercise 1

- ① -おれ<sup>たち</sup>達 は 競争<sup>きょうそう</sup> に 勝<sup>か</sup>つ た<sup>め</sup> に  
 毎<sup>まい</sup>晩<sup>ばん</sup> 一<sup>いっ</sup>生<sup>しょう</sup>懸<sup>けん</sup>命<sup>めい</sup> 遅<sup>おそ</sup>く まで 練<sup>れん</sup>習<sup>しゅう</sup> して  
 いる ん だ。と<sup>あ</sup>ころが 朝<sup>あさ</sup> 早<sup>はや</sup>く  
 事<sup>じ</sup>務<sup>む</sup>所<sup>しょ</sup> へ 行<sup>い</sup>かな<sup>ら</sup>ね<sup>ば</sup> なら<sup>な</sup>い  
 から、こ<sup>の</sup>ご<sup>ろ</sup> 少<sup>し</sup> しか 眠<sup>ねむ</sup>れ<sup>な</sup>く  
 な<sup>っ</sup>て しま<sup>っ</sup>た。  
 -何<sup>なん</sup> の 競争<sup>きょうそう</sup> だ<sup>ら</sup>か。  
 -マ<sup>ー</sup>ジ<sup>ャ</sup>ン の 競争<sup>きょうそう</sup> だ<sup>ら</sup>す。
- ② もう 何<sup>なに</sup>も でき<sup>な</sup>い と いう 状<sup>じょう</sup>態<sup>たい</sup>  
 だ<sup>ら</sup>す。
- ③ -こ<sup>の</sup> 絵<sup>え</sup> は だ<sup>れ</sup> が 書<sup>か</sup>いた の  
 だ、奥<sup>おく</sup>さん だ<sup>ら</sup>か。  
 -はい、家<sup>か</sup>内<sup>ない</sup> だ<sup>ら</sup>す。  
 -上<sup>じょう</sup>手<sup>ず</sup> だ<sup>ら</sup>。
- ④ 橋<sup>はし</sup>本<sup>もと</sup> さん? 科<sup>か</sup>学<sup>がく</sup>史<sup>し</sup> の 先<sup>せん</sup>生<sup>せい</sup> だ  
 よ。君<sup>きみ</sup> なら 知<sup>し</sup>っ<sup>て</sup> いる はず だ<sup>ら</sup>。
- ⑤ 私<sup>わたくし</sup> は いそ<sup>が</sup>しか<sup>つ</sup>た の<sup>で</sup>、わ<sup>ざ</sup>わ<sup>ざ</sup>  
 あ<sup>そ</sup>こ まで 行<sup>い</sup>か<sup>せ</sup>て しま<sup>っ</sup>て、悪<sup>わる</sup>い  
 わ<sup>ね</sup>。

## Answers to Exercise 1

① –To win the competition, we train intensely every day until very late. But because we have to be at the office early in the morning, we are not able to sleep much these days! –What competition is this? –The mahjong competition. ② It's a desperate situation (in which there is nothing more that can be done). ③ –Who painted this painting? Your wife? –Yes, it is my wife. –She's a master. ④ Mr. Hashimoto? He's a History of Science teacher. Someone like you should know him! ⑤ I'm sorry to have made you go all the way there because I was busy.

## Transcription

① –oretachi wa kyōsō ni katsu tame ni maiban isshōkenmei osoku made renshū shite iru n da. tokoroga asa hayaku jimusho e ikanakereba naranai kara, konogoro sukoshi shika nemurenaku natte shimatta. –nan no kyōsō desu ka. –mājan no kyōsō desu. ② mō nanimo dekinai to iu jōtai desu. ③ –kono e wa dare ga kaita no da, okusan ka. –hai, kanai desu. –jōzu da. ④ hashimoto san? kagakushi no sensei da yo. kimi nara shitte iru hazu da. ⑤ watakushi wa isogashikatta node, wazawaza asoko made ikasete shimatte, warui wa ne.

\*\*\*

87 Exercise 2

...に<sup>ことば</sup>言葉<sup>い</sup>を入れなさい

① As you see, our factory is currently in a perilous situation.  
 . . . . . , . . . . .  
 . . . . .

② As I told you before, the situation of our company has considerably improved since last year.  
 . . . . . , . . . . .  
 . . . . .

③ To make his son into a musician, the electrician next door made him listen to classical music for an hour every night. Poor boy!  
 . . . . . は, . . . . . おんがつか .  
 . . . . . , . . . . .            . . . . . て  
 います。おぼっちゃん が かわいそう  
 です ね

④ It seems that a friend of my brother is paying ten million yen in taxes. He's rich! I'm jealous! I would like to pay a lot of taxes, too!  
 . . . . . ちじん . . . . .  
 . . . . .  
 . . . . .  
 . . . . .

(underlined dots represent katakana—pay attention!)  
 (Any questions? cf. p. 457)





## Answers to Exercise 2

- ① ごらん の とおり、ぼくたち の こうじょう は  
いま あぶない じょうたい です。
- ② まえ に いった よう に、わたしたち の かいしゃ  
の じょうたい は きよねん から ひじょう に よく  
なりました。
- ③ となり の でんきやさん -、おぼっちゃん が -  
に なる よう に、まいばん いちじかん クラシック  
おんがく を きかせ-
- ④ あに の ある - は いっせん まん えん の  
ぜいきん を はらう そう です。お かねもち です。  
うらやましい。 ぼく も ぜいきん を たくさん  
はらいたい なあ。

\*\*\*

かたかな れんしゅう  
片仮名の練習  
Katakana Exercises

ナ NI ヌ NE ノ NO

か と  
書き取り - Dictation

- ① nūn (noon) ② nōto (note) ③ neon (neon) ④ kanada (Canada)  
⑤ tenisu (tennis) ⑥ anaunsā (announcer) ⑦ konekutā ([electro-  
nic] connector) ⑧ dainingu (dining room) ⑨ sunō (snow) ⑩ nugā  
(nougat) ⑪ nau (now)

- ① ナーン ② ノート ③ ネオン ④ カナダ ⑤ テニス ⑥ アナウンサー  
⑦ コネクター ⑧ ダイニング ⑨ スノウ ⑩ ヌガー ⑪ ナウ

## Second Wave: 第三十八課 (Lesson 38)

か へい  
貨幣

- 1- 日本のお金は、十年前に来た  
時と比べて随分変わりましたね。
- 2- 変わらないのは、お札の紙が  
丈夫だという事ですね。①
- 3 破れたお札は見たことがあります。
- 4- 前のお札では五千円  
札と一万円札は同じ  
人物が描かれていたので、私  
はよく間違えました。
- 5- それ は 聖徳太子 という 七  
世紀の政治家で、日本で最初  
の憲法を作った人です。②

Transcription

kahei

- 1 - nihon no o kane wa, jūnen mae ni kita toki to kurabete zuibun kawarimashita ne.
- 2 - kawaranai no wa, o satsu no kami ga jōbu da to iu koto desu ne.
- 3 - yabureta o satsu wa mita koto ga arimasen.
- 4 - mae no o satsu de wa gosen en satsu to ichiman en satsu wa onaji jinbutsu ga egakarete ita node, watashi wa yoku machigaemashita.
- 5 - sore wa shōtoku taishi to iu nana seiki no seijika de, nihon de saisho no kenpō o tsukutta hito desu.

# Lesson Eighty-Eight 88

## Money

- 1 – Japanese money has changed a lot since the last time I came here, ten years ago.  
*(Japan / [relation] / [familiarity]-money / [announce] / ten-year / before / [time] / came / moment / [comparison] / compare // extremely / changed / [agreement])*
- 2 – What does not change is the strength of the paper for the bills.  
*(not change / [replacement] / [announce] / [familiarity]-bill / [relation] / paper / [subject] / solid / it is / [quotation] / say / fact of / it is / [agreement])*
- 3 I've never seen a torn bill!  
*(be torn / [familiarity]-bill / [announce] / saw / fact of / [subject] / not exist)*
- 4 – On the former bills, there was the same person on the 5,000-yen bill as on the 10,000-yen bill, and I often got them wrong.  
*(before / [relation] / [familiarity]-bill / [place] / [emphasis] / five-thousand-yen-bill / and / one-1,0000-yen-bill / [announce] / same / character / [subject] / be drawn / because // me / [announce] / often / mistook)*
- 5 – It was Prince Shōtoku, a politician from the seventh century, and it was he who wrote the first constitution of Japan.  
*(this one / [announce] / Shōtoku-prince / [quotation] / say / seven-century / [relation] / politician / it is // Japan / [place] / beginning / [relation] / constitution / [object] / made / person / it is)*

## Notes

- ① We haven't seen the の [replacement] (cf. Lesson 38, items 3 and 1; Lesson 52, item 11) very often. It is put in place of another word or group of words, acting much like our relative pronouns: "which, that, who, what...". As in "what doesn't change is...".
- ② 聖徳太子, 574 – 622, first great politician of a centralized Japan, most of whose ideas for institutions came from Buddhism imported from China.

- 6 他のお札も全部政治家  
でした。
- 7 たとえば、五百円札は岩倉具視  
で、千円札は伊藤博文、二人と  
も明治時代の政治家でした。③④
- 8 つまり、日本のお札には  
政治家が描かれていたが、  
今度のお札は文化人が  
多いですね。⑤
- 9 一万円札は明治時代の有名  
な思想家の福沢諭吉です。

## Transcription

- 6 hoka no o satsu mo zenbu seijika deshita.  
7 tatoeba, gohyaku en satsu wa iwakura tomomi de, sen en satsu  
wa itō hirobumi, futari to mo meiji jidai no seijika deshita.  
8 tsumari, nihon no o satsu ni wa seijika ga egakarete imashita  
ga, kondo no o satsu wa bunkajin ga ooi desu ne.  
9 – ichiman en satsu wa meiji jidai no yūmei na shisōka no  
fukuzawa yukichi desu.

## Notes

- ③ 岩倉具視, 1825 – 1883, and 伊藤博文, 1841 – 1909,  
two of the most renowned politicians of the nineteenth century,  
who were part of the reconfiguration of the Meiji Restoration  
(cf. note 6) and the modernization of Japan.  
④ 明治, the name of the era that lasted from 1868 to 1912. History  
is measured, in Japan just as in China, by eras or ages, which can ▶

- 6 Politicians were on all the other bills, too.  
*(other / [relation] / [familiarity]-bill / also / entirely / politician / it was)*
- 7 For example, on the 500-yen bill was Iwakura Tomomi, on the 1,000-yen bill Itō Hirobumi, both politicians from the Meiji era.  
*(for example / five-hundred-yen-bill / [announce] / Iwakura / Tomomi / it is // thousand-yen-bill / [announce] / Itō / Hirobumi // both / Meiji-era / [relation] / politician / it was)*
- 8 So on Japanese bills, there were only these politicians, but on bills now there are mostly intellectuals.  
*(that is to say / Japan / [relation] / [familiarity]-bill / [place] / [emphasis] / politician / [subject] / was drawn / but // this time / [relation] / [familiarity]-bill / [announce] / intellectual / [subject] / be many / it is / [agreement])*
- 9 – On the 10,000-yen bills, it's Fukuzawa Yukichi, the most famous thinker of the Meiji era.  
*(1,0000-yen-bill / [announce] / Meiji-era / [relation] / famous / it is / thinker / [apposition] / Fukuzawa / Yukichi / it is)*



- ▶ range in duration from a few years to many years, and which are named after certain “good luck charms”. Thus 明治<sup>めいじ</sup> means *bright government*. Until the Meiji, eras were changed whenever an important event occurred, and so one emperor could see several different eras during his reign. Since the Meiji, the system has been simplified so that it now coincides with the rule of the monarch (like the English system, where the Victorian age gives way to the Edwardian, etc.). But be careful, because in Japan years are counted from the beginning of the era, starting with one: 1868 is year 1 of the Meiji era, 1869 is year 2, 1900 is year 33, etc. This way of counting is still in common usage in Japan.
- ⑤ 文化人<sup>ぶんかじん</sup> is a word without a real equivalent in English (literally, it's “culture person”). It indicates someone who, by way of work or personality, participates in “making” culture. This includes writers, artists, intellectuals...

- 10 明治 維新 の 前 に 欧米 旅行  
 を した こと が あり、日本 に  
 西洋 を 紹介 した 人 です。⑥⑦⑧
- 11 五千 円 札 は 新渡戸 稲造 と  
 いう 人 で、明治、大正、昭和 時代  
 の 教育家 で あり、農業 の 研究  
 を 色々 した 人 です。⑨⑩
- 12 千円 札 は 夏目 漱石 と いう  
 日本 の 近代 文学 の 有名 な  
 作家 です。⑪

## Transcription

- 10 meiji ishin no mae ni ōbei ryokō o shita koto ga ari, nihon ni seiyō o shōkai shita hito desu.
- 11 gosen en satsu wa nitobe inazō to iu hito de, meiji, taishō, shōwa jidai no kyō-ikuka de ari, nōgyō no kenkyū o iroiro shita hito desu.
- 12 sen en satsu wa natsume sōseki to iu nihon no kindai bungaku no yūmei na sakka desu.

## Notes

- ⑥ 明治 維新. The term *Meiji Restoration* evokes two different realities. The first is political: the return of power to the hands of the Emperor, after centuries of being usurped by the Shōguns (cf. Lesson 68, note 10). The more general reality, though, is that under pressure from the United States, Japan established contracts with western powers and began, with considerable speed, its economic, political, and cultural modernization. Fukuzawa Yukichi (1835 – 1901) was a powerful contributor to this modernization as one of the architects of the Restoration's principle ideas. ▶

- 10 He traveled to Europe and the United States before the Meiji Restoration, and it was he who introduced the West to Japan.  
*(Meiji-restoration/[relation]/before/[time]/Europe and USA/travel/[object]/did/fact of/[subject]/exist//Japan/[attribution]/the west/[object]/introduction-did/person/it is)*
- 11 On the 5,000-yen bill, it's someone named Nitobe Inazō, who was an educator of the Meiji, Taishō, and Shōwa eras, and he did all sorts of research in agriculture.  
*(five-thousand-yen-bill/[announce]/Nitobe/Inazō/[quotation]/say/person/it is///Meiji-Taishō-Shōwa-era/[relation]/educator/it is//agriculture/[relation]/research/[object]/all kinds/did/person/it is)*
- 12 On the thousand-yen bill, it's the most famous author of modern Japanese literature, Natsume Sōseki.  
*(thousand-yen-bill/[announce]/Natsume/Sōseki/[quotation]/say/Japan/[relation]/modern-literature/[relation]/famous/it is/author/it is)*

- ▶ ⑦ 欧米 <sup>おう べい</sup> means Europe and America specifically. 西洋 <sup>せいよう</sup> describes *the west* as a more general entity.
- ⑧ あり, cf. Lesson 58, note 2.
- ⑨ 新渡戸 <sup>に と べ</sup> 稲造 <sup>いなぞう</sup>, 1862 – 1933. The Meiji era came to an end in 1912 with the death of Emperor Meiji. That same year, with the coronation of the following emperor, began the 大正 <sup>たいしやう</sup>, *great justice* era, which finished in 1926 with that emperor's death. From 1926 to 1989 was the longest era in the history of Japan, called 昭和 <sup>しやわ</sup>, *luminous peace*. Since the death of Emperor Shōwa and crowning of a new emperor in January of 1989, Japan has been in the 平成 <sup>へい せい</sup>, *establishment of peace* era.
- ⑩ で あり, cf. Lesson 68, note 4. で ある is also used as the equivalent of です at the end of a sentence, though it usually appears more in writing than in speech.
- ⑪ 夏目 <sup>なつめ</sup> 漱石 <sup>そうせき</sup>, 1867 – 1916. 近代 <sup>きんだい</sup> tends to indicate the period stretching from the Meiji Restoration (1868) to World War II. In Japanese eras, that is: from the Meiji (1868 – 1912), through the Taishō (1912 – 1926), to the beginning of the Shōwa (after 1926).

- 13 特<sup>とく</sup> に 知<sup>し</sup>られて いる 作品<sup>さくひん</sup> は  
 「吾<sup>わ</sup> が 輩<sup>はい</sup> は 猫<sup>ねこ</sup> で ある」 と い  
 う 小説<sup>しょうせつ</sup> で、一<sup>ぜん</sup> 九〇 五 年<sup>きゅうひゃくごねん</sup>  
 に 書<sup>か</sup>かれた 作品<sup>さくひん</sup> です。⑫
- 14 猫<sup>ねこ</sup> が 主人<sup>しゅじんこう</sup>公<sup>こう</sup> で、猫<sup>ねこ</sup> の 目<sup>め</sup> で 見<sup>み</sup>た  
 人間<sup>にんげん</sup> の 社会<sup>しゃかい</sup> が 描<sup>えが</sup>かれて います。
- 15 とても 面<sup>おも</sup>白<sup>しろ</sup>い です から、まだ 読<sup>よ</sup>んで  
 いない の でしたら、ぜひ お 読<sup>よ</sup>み に  
 なる よう お 勧<sup>すす</sup>め します。⑬

## Transcription

- 13 toku ni shirarete iru sakuhin wa wa ga hai wa neko de aru to iu shōsetsu de, sen kyūhyaku go nen ni kakareta sakuhin desu.
- 14 neko ga shujinkō de, neko no me de mita ningen no shakai ga egakarete imasu.
- 15 totemo omoshiroi desu kara, mada yonde inai no deshitaru, zehi o yomi ni naru yō o susume shimasu.

## Notes

- ⑫ 吾<sup>わ</sup> が 輩<sup>はい</sup> is an ancient way of saying *I* in Japanese. Still used occasionally, it is now reserved for official or literary language. For the が cf. Lesson 83, note 2.
- ⑬ でしたら, our favorite です + the suffix たら that means *if, when*. お 読<sup>よ</sup>み に なる, cf. Lesson 68, note 2.



- 13 His most famous work is the novel *I Am a Cat*,  
written in 1905.

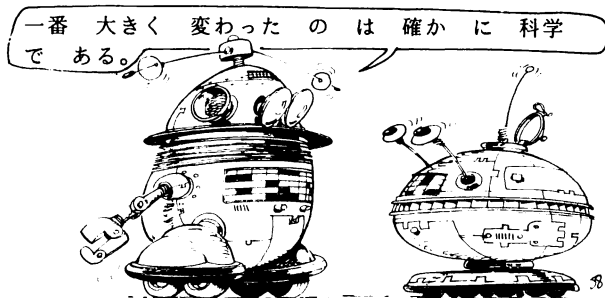
(particular / [adverbial] / be known / work / [announce] / me /  
[announce] / cat / it is / [quotation] / say / novel / it is // thou-  
sand-nine hundred-five-year / [time] / was written / work / it is)

- 14 The protagonist is a cat, and it describes human  
society through the eyes of a cat.

(cat / [subject] / protagonist / it is // cat / [relation] / eye /  
[means] / saw / human species / [relation] / society / [sub-  
ject] / be described)

- 15 It's a gripping book, in case you haven't read it,  
I really recommend that you read it.

(very / to be interesting / it is / because // not yet read / if  
it's that // absolutely / [politeness]-read-[goal]-become / so  
that / [politeness]-advise-do)



## 練習

## Exercise 1

- ① <sup>はじ</sup>初めて <sup>ひと</sup>人が <sup>つき</sup>月の <sup>うえ</sup>の上 <sup>ある</sup>を <sup>ある</sup>歩いた  
<sup>とし</sup>年 <sup>は</sup>は、<sup>せん</sup>一 <sup>きゅうひやくろくじゅうきゅう</sup>九六九 <sup>ねん</sup>年で、  
<sup>しやうわ</sup>昭和 <sup>よんじゅうよ</sup>四十四 <sup>ねん</sup>年 <sup>でした</sup>でした。
- ② <sup>せん</sup>一 <sup>きゅうひやくじゅう</sup>九一八 <sup>ねん</sup>年 <sup>は</sup>は、<sup>たいしやう</sup>大正 <sup>しち</sup>七 <sup>ねん</sup>年、  
<sup>だいいち</sup>第一次 <sup>じ</sup>世界 <sup>せ</sup>大戦 <sup>たいせん</sup>が <sup>お</sup>終 <sup>お</sup>わった <sup>とし</sup>年 <sup>です</sup>です。
- ③ <sup>に</sup>日本 <sup>で</sup>で <sup>さいしよ</sup>最初 <sup>の</sup>の <sup>しんぶん</sup>新聞 <sup>が</sup>が <sup>で</sup>出 <sup>で</sup>た  
<sup>の</sup>のは <sup>せん</sup>一 <sup>はっぴやくしち</sup>八七〇 <sup>ねん</sup>年 ( <sup>めい</sup>明治 <sup>さん</sup>三  
<sup>ねん</sup>年 ) <sup>えいご</sup>です。英語 <sup>で</sup>で <sup>か</sup>書 <sup>か</sup>かれて <sup>いて</sup>いて、  
<sup>よこはま</sup>「横浜 <sup>まいにち</sup>毎日」と <sup>いう</sup>いう <sup>しんぶん</sup>新聞 <sup>でした</sup>でした。
- ④ <sup>じゅう</sup>十 <sup>きゅう</sup>九 <sup>せい</sup>世紀 <sup>と</sup>と <sup>くら</sup>比 <sup>くら</sup>べる <sup>と</sup>と、<sup>にんげん</sup>人間  
<sup>しや</sup>社会 <sup>か</sup>は <sup>かんが</sup>考 <sup>かんが</sup>え <sup>かんが</sup>られ <sup>かんが</sup>ない <sup>かんが</sup>ほど <sup>かんが</sup>変 <sup>かんが</sup>わ <sup>かんが</sup>った。
- ⑤ <sup>いちばん</sup>一番 <sup>おお</sup>大 <sup>か</sup>き <sup>か</sup>く <sup>か</sup>変 <sup>か</sup>わ <sup>か</sup>った <sup>の</sup>の <sup>は</sup>は <sup>たし</sup>確 <sup>たし</sup>か  
<sup>か</sup>に <sup>か</sup>科 <sup>か</sup>学 <sup>か</sup>で <sup>か</sup>あ <sup>か</sup>る。

\*\*\*

## Answers to Exercise 1

- ① The year when for the first time a man walked on the moon was 1969, which was year 44 of the Shōwa. ② 1918, Taishō 7, is the year that World War I finished. ③ The first newspaper appeared in Japan in the summer of 1870 (Meiji 3). It was written in English and called *The Yokohama Daily*. ④ When compared to the nineteenth century, human society has changed an unimaginable degree. ⑤ What has changed the most is, by far, science.

## Transcription

① hajimete hito ga tsuki no ue o aruita toshi wa, sen kyūhyaku rokujū kyū nen de, shōwa yonjū yo nen deshita. ② sen kyūhyaku jū hachi nen wa, taishō shichi nen, daiichiji sekai taisen ga owatta toshi desu. ③ nihon de saisho no shinbun ga deta no wa sen happyaku shichijū nen (meiji san nen) desu. eigo de kakarete ite, yokohama mainichi to iu shinbun deshita. ④ jū kyū seiki to kuraberu to, ningen shakai wa kangaerarenai hodo kawatta. ⑤ ichiban ookiku kawatta no wa tashika ni kagaku de aru

\*\*\*

88 Exercise 2

...に<sup>ことば</sup>言葉<sup>い</sup>を入れなさい

① -That's dangerous! Be careful! -No, the branch is solid, no problem!

- . . . . .

-はい、 . . . . .

② The old cars I used to collect, there are only three left. I didn't have any room, so I sold all the others.

... あつめて いた . . . . .

. . . . .

. . . . .

③ This old refrigerator will break down soon, so I advise you to buy a new one.

... . . . . . こしょう し そう  
です . . . . .

④ Fukuzawa Yuchiki, famous thinker of the Meiji era, traveled to Europe, before the Restoration, and met the first teacher of Japanese in France.

... . . . . . しそうか . . . . .

... . . . . . ヨーロッパ を . . . . .

フランス . . . . .

\*\*\*

かたかな れんしゅう  
片仮名の練習  
Katakana Exercises

ハ

HA

ヒ

HI

フ

FU

ヘ

HE

ホ

HO

## Answers to Exercise 2

- ① -あぶない よ。きをつけて。 - 一、えだ が  
じょうぶ だ から、だいじょうぶ だ。
- ② むかし - ふるい くるま は さんだい しか  
のこって いません。ばしょ が ない から、ほか の  
は みんな うって しまいました。
- ③ この ふるい れいぞうこ は もう すぐ - から、  
あたらしい の を かう よう おすすめ します。
- ④ めいじ じだいの ゆうめい な - である  
ふくざわ ゆきち は、めいじ いしん の まえ  
に、- りょこう して、- で さいしょ の にほんご  
の せんせい に あいました。

(if you feel like you need to double-check, cf. page 457)

\*\*\*

## か と 書き取り - Dictation

- ① **naifu** (knife) ② **tahichi** (Tahiti) ③ **heddo** (head) ④ **hāfu** (half)  
⑤ **hotto** (hot) ⑥ **kōhī** (coffee) ⑦ **sofuto** (soft) ⑧ **haikingu** (hiking)  
⑨ **hea** (hair) ⑩ **esu-efu** (Science-Fiction [S. F.] )

- ① ナイフ ② タヒチ ③ ヘッド ④ ハーフ ⑤ ホット ⑥ コーヒー  
⑦ ソフト ⑧ ハイキング ⑨ ヘア ⑩ エス・エフ

## Second Wave: 第三十九課 (Lesson 39)

だい はち じゅうきゅう か  
89 第八十九課

はな み  
花見

- 1- 皇居こうきよ の そば に ある 桜さくら の  
木き は 満開まんかい に なりました ね。
- 2- きつと 上野うえの 公園こうえん の 桜さくら も  
二日ふたつか 三日みっか の 内うち に 満開まんかい に  
なる でしょう。①
- 3- そう です ね。桜さくら の 花はな は 散るち  
の が 速いはや です から ね、「三日みっか  
見ぬみ 間ま の 桜さくら かな」と 言うい  
ことわざ 諺ことわざ が ある くらい です から ね。②

Transcription

hanami

- 1 - kōkyo no soba ni aru sakura no ki wa mankai ni narimashita ne.  
2 - kitto ueno kōen no sakura mo futsuka mikka no uchi ni mankai ni naru deshō.  
3 - sō desu ne. sakura no hana wa chiru no ga hayai desu kara ne, mikka minu ma no sakura ka na to iu kotowaza ga aru kurai desu kara ne.

## Cherry-tree Viewing (flower-look)

- 1 – The cherry-trees near the Imperial Palace are in full bloom.  
*(Imperial Palace / [relation] / vicinity / [place] / exist / cherry tree / [apposition] / tree / [announce] / full bloom / [goal] / became / [agreement])*
- 2 – Those of Ueno Park will also bloom for sure in two or three days.  
*(certainly / Ueno-park / [relation] / cherry tree / also / two days-three days / [relation] / inside / [time] / full bloom / [goal] / become / that must be)*
- 3 – Yes. The cherry trees lose their flowers so quickly! It's as the proverb says: "We have but three days to contemplate the cherries"  
*(yes) (cherry tree / [relation] / flower / [announce] / fade / fact of / [subject] / be fast / it is / because / [agreement] // three days / not contemplate / interval of time / [relation] / cherry tree / [question] / [reflection] / [quotation] / say / proverb / [subject] / exist / to the point of / it is / because / [agreement])*

### Notes

- ① <sup>うえの</sup>上野, cf. Lesson 39, note 2. Along with the gardens of the Imperial Palace, one of the main spots for contemplating the blooming of the cherry blossoms each spring. Note that these trees bloom flowers, and do not grow edible fruit.  
<sup>ふつか</sup>二日 <sup>みっか</sup>三日, cf. Lesson 70, paragraph 1.
- ② <sup>み</sup>見ぬ is indeed the verb <sup>み</sup>見る that you know and love. But used here is an older version of the negative form (when this form is used before a noun). In common language, we say <sup>み</sup>見ない. But this old form has not –clearly– disappeared completely: you will run across it often in set formulas.

- 4- 去年<sup>きょねん</sup> も 一昨年<sup>おととし</sup> も 出張<sup>しゅつちやう</sup> して いた  
 ので、桜<sup>さくら</sup> の 花<sup>はな</sup> を ゆっくりと 見る<sup>み</sup>  
 暇<sup>ひま</sup> が ありません でした が、今年<sup>ことし</sup>  
 は ぜひ 行きたい と 思っ<sup>おも</sup>て います。
- 5- そう です ね。「善<sup>ぜん</sup> は 急げ<sup>いそ</sup>」と  
 言<sup>い</sup>います から、明日<sup>あした</sup> の 午後<sup>ごご</sup> に  
 でも いかが です か。③
- 6- 桜<sup>さくら</sup> の 花<sup>はな</sup> を 見て いる と、子供<sup>こども</sup>  
 の 頃<sup>ころ</sup> の こと を 思<sup>おも</sup>い出<sup>だ</sup>します。
- 7- お 国<sup>くに</sup> は どちら でした っけ ね。④

## Transcription

- 4- kyonen mo ototoshi mo shutchō shite ita node, sakura no hana o yukkurito miru hima ga arimasen deshita ga, kotoshi wa zehi ikitai to omotte imasu.
- 5- sō desu ne. zen wa isoge to iimasu kara, ashita no gogo ni demo ikaga desu ka.
- 6- sakura no hana o mite iru to, kodomo no koro no koto o omoidashimasu.
- 7- o kuni wa dochira deshita kke ne.



- 4 – Last year and the year before I was on a business trip and didn't have spare time to admire the cherry tree flowers, but this year I will absolutely go.

*(last year / also / year before last / also / business trip-did / because // cherry tree / [relation] / flower / [object] / slowly / watch / free time / [subject] / did not exist / but /// this year / [emphasis] / at all costs / I want to go / [quotation] / think)*

- 5 – Yes of course! “Good things don't wait” they say, so what if we go tomorrow afternoon?

*(yes of course) (the good / [announce] / hurry / [quotation] / say / because // tomorrow / [relation] / afternoon / [time] / even / how / it is / [question])*

- 6 – When I look at the cherry tree flowers, it reminds me of my childhood.

*(cherry tree / [relation] / flower / [object] / watch / when // childhood / [relation] / moment / [relation] / thing / [object] / remember)*

- 7 – Where were you then?

*([politeness]-country / [announce] / which side / it was / [reminder question] / [agreement])*

## Notes

- ③ 急げ the verb 急ぐ<sup>いそ</sup> is a multiple-root verb. We know the *u* root for these verbs (cf. line above), the *a* root used for the negative low degree form 急がない<sup>いそ</sup>, and the *i* root which is used for... a lot of things. For example, 急ぎます<sup>いそ</sup>. But there is also an *e* root used for a form of the imperative, which can be quite rude. This form is used only in ultra-low degree or in commands like *watch out!* 気を付け<sup>き</sup> or *at ease!* 休め<sup>やす</sup>, or in proverbs, such as here. For common commands, cf. Lesson 84, paragraph 3.
- ④ 国<sup>くに</sup>, *country*, as in *nation*, but sometimes it can even be *native land* and not refer to the country at all. The ending つけ in the place of か for the question means *you told me already, and I knew it, but I've forgotten, so please remind me*. Hence the use of the past tense, as well as the word-for-word translation [reminder question].

- 8- 信州しんしゅう です。毎年まいとし 四月しがつ になると、  
 私わたし の祖父そふ は庭にわ にある大きな  
 桜さくら の木き の下した に墓ご 蔭ざ を敷し き、  
 午後中ごごじゅう、そこそこ に座すわ って、お酒さけ を  
 飲の みながら花はな を見み ていました。⑤⑥
- 9 時々ときどき 墨すみ などを持も っも てこさせ、  
 短歌たんか などな ども詠よ んでも いました。⑦⑧
- 10 私わたし は姉あね と一いっ 緒しょ によよ く  
 祖父そふ の墓ご 蔭ざ の上うえ でまま ごと  
 をを したした。ものもの でした。⑨

## Transcription

- 8- shinshū desu. maitoshi shigatsu ni naru to, watashi no sofū wa niwa ni aru ooki na sakura no ki no shita ni goza o shiki, gogōjū, soko ni suwatte, o sake o nominagara hana o mite imashita.
- 9 tokidoki sumi nado o motte kosase, tanka nado mo yonde imashita.
- 10 watashi wa ane to issho ni yoku sofū no goza no ue de mamagoto o shita mono deshita.

## Notes

- ⑤ 信州しんしゅう. In America we might speak of New England, or of the Pacific Northwest, which are not states but rather regions with their own names and, to a certain extent, identities. In Japan, we have the same situation. There are administrative provinces, but in general Japanese people refer to regions with older, more traditional names. 信州しんしゅう is today officially called 長野ながの. It is a mountainous province, situated in the middle of the main island, Honshū, roughly 120 miles (200 km) northwest of Tōkyō. It's known for its orchards, particularly apple orchards. ▶

- 8 – In Shinshū. Each year, when April came, my grandfather would spread out a mat under a large cherry tree in the garden, and there, sitting the whole afternoon, would watch the flowers, drinking sake.

*(Shinshū / it is) (each year / April / [goal] / become / when /// me / [relation] / my grandfather / [announce] / garden / [place] / exist / big / it is / cherry tree / [apposition] / tree / [relation] / under / [place] / straw mat / [object] / spread /// whole afternoon / there / [place] / be seated /// [familiarity]-sake / [object] / while drinking // flower / [object] / watched)*

- 9 Sometimes he would have someone bring him something to write with and would compose poems.

*(sometimes / ink / this kind of thing / [object] / make someone bring // poem / this kind of thing / also / composed)*

- 10 Often my older sister and I would play house on my grandfather's mat.

*(me / [announce] / my older sister / and / together / [adverbial] / often / my grandfather / [relation] / mat / [relation] / on / [place] / play house / [object] / did / the fact was that)*

- ▶ ⑥ 祖父 祖母, cf. Lesson 84, paragraph 1. The emphasis here added by 私 の is quite common. 大き な, cf. Lesson 77, end of paragraph 1. 敷き, cf. Lesson 58, note 2.
- ⑦ 持って こさせる. Let's start from the beginning: 持つ, *to carry*. 持って くる, the presence of くる means that the movement of "carrying" is done towards the person speaking, or otherwise towards the subject of the sentence (when it is other than the person speaking), so that the equivalent is more like *to bring*. Now let's go back to Lesson 87, note 6. From くる, in an irregular way, we derive こさせる, *to make come*. So we arrive back where we started: もって くる, *to bring*, 持って こさせる, *to make bring*.
- ⑧ 短歌, one of the oldest and most traditional poetic form in Japanese literature, in which the syllable count for its five lines runs: 5-7-5-7-7.
- ⑨ もの でした, cf. Lesson 83, note 3.

- 11 そう する と、<sup>かなら</sup>必ず <sup>そ ぼ</sup>祖母 が お <sup>だん ご</sup>団子  
 を <sup>つく</sup>作<sup>も</sup>って <sup>も</sup>持<sup>も</sup>って きて くれ ました。⑩
- 12 私<sup>わたし</sup>達<sup>たち</sup> は 花<sup>はな</sup>見<sup>み</sup> の お <sup>だん ご</sup>団子 が  
 一<sup>いち</sup>番<sup>ばん</sup> 楽<sup>たの</sup>しみ だ<sup>た</sup>った の です。
- 13 祖<sup>そ</sup>父<sup>ふ</sup> は これ を 見<sup>み</sup>て、笑<sup>わら</sup>い  
 なが<sup>はな</sup>ら 「花<sup>はな</sup> より <sup>だん ご</sup>団子、花<sup>はな</sup> より  
<sup>だん ご</sup>団子」と <sup>い</sup>言<sup>い</sup>って いた<sup>い</sup>ました。⑪

## Transcription

- 11 sō suru to, kanarazu sobo ga o dango o tsukutte motte kite kuremashita.
- 12 watashitachi wa hanami no o dango ga ichiban tanoshimi datta no desu.
- 13 sofu wa kore o mite, warainagara, hana yori dango, hana yori dango to itte imashita.

## Notes

- ⑩ <sup>だん ご</sup>団子. Little balls made with rice, flour, and grain, made to be steamed and garnished in any number of ways. In the past they were served as delicacies and eaten primarily in feasts. Now they are easily found in supermarkets
- ⑪ <sup>はな</sup>花 より <sup>だん ご</sup>団子, a proverb for mocking the attitude of those who, rather than the traditional contemplation of flowers or the moon, would rather spend their time immersed in more mundane pleasures. As a general term, it applies to those more responsive to “concrete” or material interests than to the eternal beauty of flowers or of art.

- 11 And so my grandmother would always bring us rice balls that she'd made.  
*(so / do / when // necessarily / my grandmother / [subject] / [familiarity]-rice balls / [object] / make / bring / come / did for me)*
- 12 The greatest pleasure was these rice balls on the cherry trees day.  
*(us / [announce] / contemplation of flowers / [relation] / [familiarity]-rice balls / [subject] / the most / rejoice / it was / it's that)*
- 13 Seeing that, my grandfather would say, laughing, "The dango before the flowers, the dango before the flowers!"  
*(my grandfather / [announce] / this one / [object] / look /// all while laughing // flower / rather than / rice balls / flower / rather than / rice balls / [quotation] / said)*



## 練習

## Exercise 1

- ① 故障こしょう は まだ 直なおって ない？  
 電気屋でんきや さんは 午前中ごぜんちゅう に 来くる  
 はず だった のに…
- ② 花見はなみ と いう の は、皆みんな 集あつまって  
 桜さくら の 花はな を 見みる こと で あり、日本にほん  
 に ずっと 昔むかし から ある こと です。
- ③ タバコ を たくさん 吸すって も、  
 仕事しごと は あまり 進すすまない から、  
 やめた 方ほう が いい よ。
- ④ -どうして 突然とつぜん そんなに 悲かなしく なった  
 の。-波なみ の 音おと が 私わたし の 子こ供ども 時じ代だい  
 の こと を 思おもい出ださせる から です。
- ⑤ お 待またせ いたしました。

\*\*\*

## Answers to Exercise 1

❶ The breakdown still isn't fixed? The electrician should have been here this morning! ❷ What we call "hanami" means gathering together to go look at cherry blossoms, a tradition in Japan for a long time. ❸ No matter how many cigarettes we smoke, we're not getting any further with our work, so we'd better stop. ❹ –Why did you become so sad all of a sudden? –It's that the noise of the waves remind me of my childhood. ❺ I'm sorry to have made you wait.

## Transcription

❶ *koshō wa mada naotte nai? denkiyasan wa gozenchū ni kuru hazu datta noni...* ❷ *hanami to iu no wa, minna atsumatte sakura no hana o miru koto de ari, nihon ni zutto mukashi kara aru koto desu.* ❸ *tabako o takusan sutte mo, shigoto wa amari susumanai kara, yameta hō ga ii yo.* ❹ *–dōshite totsuzen sonna ni kanashiku natta no. –nami no oto ga watashi no kodomo jidai no koto o omoidasaseru kara desu.* ❺ *o matase itashimashita.*

\*\*\*

89 Exercise 2

...に<sup>ことば</sup>言葉<sup>い</sup>を入れなさい

- ① All while looking at the flowers, we drink sake, we sing, we compose poems, we tell stories.

..... , ..... , ..... ,  
..... , ..... て います

- ② The ones that bloom first are the cherry trees close to the Imperial Palace.

..... まんかい ..... , .....  
.....

- ③ Each week I go two or three times to the library to borrow books. Because the library is (all) close to my house, it's very convenient.

..... , .....  
..... , .....

- ④ This summer is hot! Even when night comes, it doesn't cool down a bit.

.....  
..... , すこし も ..... の です

- ⑤ When you're off on a trip, and all you can think about is finding a good restaurant instead of going to the museums, that's what we call 'the dango before the flowers'.

..... , .....  
レストラン を もとめる .. は .....  
.....

\*\*\*



## Answers to Exercise 2

- ① はなをみながら、おさけをのんだり、うたをうたったり、たんかをよんだり、はなしをしたりし—。
- ② いちばんはやく—になるのは、こうきよのそばにあるさくらです。
- ③ まいしゅうにさんかいとしょかんへ行って、ほんをかります。としょかんはうちからちかいので、とてもべんりです。
- ④ ことしのなつはあついですね。よるになっても、—すずしくならない—。
- ⑤ かんこうりょこうをして、びじゅつかんへいくよりおいしい—こと—「はなよりだんご」といえます。

(you probably don't need it, but if you want help, cf. page 458)

\*\*\*

かたかな れんしゅう  
片仮名の練習  
Katakana Exercises

バ ビ ブ ベ ボ  
BA BI BU BE BO

か と  
書き取り - Dictation

- ① beddo (bed) ② bŭtsu (boots) ③ hando.baggu (handbag)  
④ bāgen (bargain [sale]) ⑤ bideo (video) ⑥ bakansu (holidays  
[from the French "vacances"]) ⑦ sābisu (service) ⑧ ōboe (oboe)  
⑨ kābu (curve) ⑩ bōnasu (bonus) ⑪ bebī (baby) ⑫ bōto (boat)

- ① ベッド ② ブーツ ③ ハンド・バッグ ④ バーゲン ⑤ ビデオ  
⑥ バカンス ⑦ サービス ⑧ オーボエ ⑨ カーブ ⑩ ボーナス  
⑪ ベビー ⑫ ボート

Second Wave: 第四十課 (Lesson 40)

学校

- 1- 息子<sup>むすこ</sup> の 和生<sup>かずお</sup> は ぜひ 国立<sup>こくりつ</sup>  
 大学<sup>だいがく</sup> に 入れたい<sup>い</sup> な。①
- 2- そう ですね。その 方<sup>ほう</sup> が 就職<sup>しゅうしょく</sup>  
 も 楽<sup>らく</sup> だし、学費<sup>がくひ</sup> も 私立<sup>しりつ</sup> より  
 ずっと 安い<sup>やす</sup> です から。②
- 3- その ため には 高校<sup>こうこう</sup> から  
 東京<sup>とうきょう</sup> に やらなくちゃ ね。③④
- 4 姉さん<sup>ねえ</sup> の 所<sup>ところ</sup> で 預<sup>あず</sup>かって  
 もらえば いい よ。⑤

Transcription

**gakkō**

- 1 - musuko no kazuo wa zehi kokuritsu daigaku ni iretai na.  
 2 - sō desu ne. sono hō ga shūshoku mo raku da shi, gakuhi mo shiritsu yori zutto yasui desu kara.  
 3 - sono tame ni wa kōkō kara tōkyō ni yaranakucha ne.  
 4 - neesan no tokoro de azukatte moraeba ii yo.

Notes

- ① There are many universities in Japan, some of them private, and some of them public. Competition for entrance is stiff, and for private universities the tuition can reach semi-astronomical proportions.
- ② し, cf. Lesson 79, note 8.

## School

- 1 – I absolutely want our son Kazuo in a national university.  
*(my son / [apposition] / Kazuo / [announce] / at all costs / national-university / [place] / I want to have him enter / [reflection])*
- 2 – Of course! With a national university, finding a job is guaranteed, and tuition is much cheaper than in private universities.  
*(so / it is / [agreement]) (this / side / [subject] / finding a job / also / pleasant / it is / and // tuition / also / private / more than / remarkably / be cheap / it is / because)*
- 3 – For that, for high school he must be sent to Tōkyō.  
*(this / intention / [goal] / [emphasis] / high school / from / Tōkyō / [place] / must do / [agreement])*
- 4 We could ask your older sister to take him.  
*(older sister / [relation] / place / [means] / take in-if we could receive / be good / [engagement])*

- ▶ ③ The scholastic career of the average student before university passes through three steps: six years of primary school, three years of middle school, and three years of high school.
- ④ やらなくちゃ. Normally to say *must do* we use the form やらなくて は (variation of やらなければ) ならない (cf. Lesson 77, paragraph 4). In familiar language, though, it is shortened pretty abruptly. All is left off but the first やらなくて は, and the last two syllables て は become ちゃ.
- ⑤ 預<sup>あず</sup>かって もらえば. Added to the suffix て, the multiple-root verb, もらう, indicates that I, the speaker, have someone else do something for me. Here we have もらえる, derived from もらう (cf. Lesson 84, paragraph 2), which means: “to be able to have somebody do something for me”. All that wrapped up in just one little verb!

- 5 - 中学校ちゅうがっこう の 一年生いちねんせい から 英語えいご  
 を しっかりと 身み に  
 つけさせましょう。⑥⑦
- 6 お隣となり の 大学生だいがくせい は 英語えいご が  
 達者たっしや だと 聞きました から、個人こじん  
 教授きょうじゆ を して くれる よう  
 に 頼たのみましょう。
- 7 これからの 社会しゃかい は 国際的こくさいてき に  
 なって いく から、なん と いて  
 も、語学ごがく が もの を いいます  
 から ね。

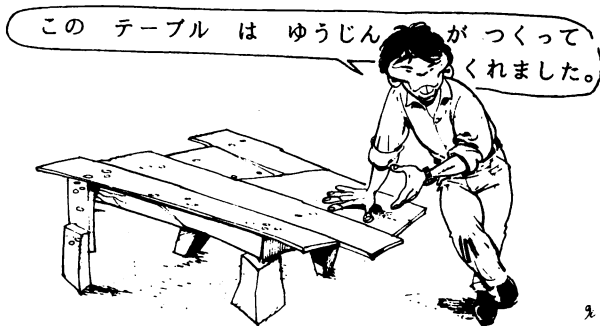
## Transcription

- 5 - chūgakkō no ichinensei kara eigo o shikkari to mi ni tsukesasemashō.
- 6 o tonari no daigakusei wa eigo ga tassha da to kikimashita kara, kojin kyōju o shite kureru yō ni tanomimashō.
- 7 kore kara no shakai wa kokusaiteki ni natte iku kara, nan to itte mo, gogaku ga mono o iimasu kara ne.

## Notes

- ⑥ 一年生 . While in North America we speak of primary and middle school with grade numbers running from first to eighth, in Japan, they start counting again at each different interval. Thus, *first year*, is either the first year of primary, middle, or high school. Pretty simple! ▶

- 5 – From his first year of middle-school, let's have him get used to English.  
*(middle school / [relation] / first year student / from / English language / [object] / solidly / [adverbial] / body / [goal] / let's settle)*
- 6 I've heard that the student next door is good in English, let's ask him to give him some private lessons.  
*([familiarity]-neighbor / [relation] / student / [announce] / English language / [subject] / expert / it is / [quotation] / heard / because // individual-teacher / [object] / do / do for me / way / [goal] / let's ask)*
- 7 As the society of the future will be more and more international, no matter how you look at it, it's language that says it all.  
*(from now on / [relation] / society / [announce] / international / [goal] / become / go / because // what / say / even // study languages / [subject] / thing / [object] / say / because / [agreement])*



- ▶ ⑦ Come on, admit it! You've been waiting for this: after multiple-root verbs (cf. Lesson 87, note 6), single-root verbs can also derive ways of saying *make*... Here, from 付ける, *to settle something*, we can get *to make settled*, 付けさせる. Just replace the **ru** with **saseru**. To complete the series, we can *make do*: from する derive the irregular させる (cf. Lesson 69, item 3).

- 8-でも 中学校ちゅうがっこう に 入る まで に  
 国語こくご と 算数さんすう が よほど  
 できなければ だめ だ な。⑧⑨
- 9-そう すると、小学校しょうがっこう も よほど いい  
 所ところ を 選えらばなければ なりません。
- 10-場合ばあい に よっては、小学校しょうがっこう だけ  
 でも 私立しりつ に しても いい は ね。
- 11-そう なる と 幼稚園ようちえん も 問題もんだい だ  
 な。
- 12 ところで「善ぜん は 急いそげ」と 言う  
 から、さっそく 東京とうきょう の 姉ねえさん  
 に 電話でんわ したら どう だ？

## Transcription

- 8- demo chūgakkō ni hairu made ni kokugo to sansū ga yohodo dekinakereba dame da na.
- 9- sō suru to, shōgakkō mo yohodo ii tokoro o erabanakereba narimasen.
- 10- ba-ai ni yotte wa, shōgakkō dake demo shiritsu ni shite mo ii wa ne.
- 11- sō naru to yōchi-en mo mondai da na.
- 12 tokorode, zen wa isoge to iu kara, sassoku tōkyō no neesan ni denwa shitara dō da?

## Notes

- ⑧ 国語こくご. For a long time the Japanese have referred to their language with this term. Literally: “national language”. The word 日本語にほんご now used to mean the same thing has only appeared ▶

- 8 – However before entering middle school, he must absolutely master Japanese and mathematics.  
*(however / middle school / [place] / enter / up to / [time] / national language / and / mathematics / [subject] / well / if it's not possible / missing / it is / [reflection])*
- 9 – In that case, we must also choose a good place for his primary school.  
*(so / do / if // primary school / also / very / be good / place / [object] / must choose)*
- 10 – In case we need it, we could, only for primary school, choose a private school.  
*(in case of need / [emphasis] / primary school / only / even / private / [goal] / even if we do // be good / [softener] / [agreement])*
- 11 – Kindergarten is also a problem then!  
*(so / become / if // kindergarten / also / problem / it is / [reflection])*
- 12 So, since we say “Good doesn’t wait”, what do you think about calling your sister in Tōkyō right away?  
*(so / the good / [announce] / hurry / [quotation] / say / because /// immediately / Tōkyō / [relation] / older sister / [goal] / telephone / if we do // how / it is)*



- ▶ relatively recently, around the end of the nineteenth century. 国語 is still used in primary school for grammar and literature classes in the national language.
- ⑨ できなければ だめ だ is a stronger way of saying *must*. The first half remains, and the second half is replaced by the word だめ, which is one of the types of words we spoke of in Lesson 77, paragraph 1. It means: *impossible*, with two definitions: *what cannot be done* and *what must not be done*, or *messed, missing, useless*.

- 13 - あなた<sup>たち</sup>達 は ちよつと せつかち  
 過ぎる<sup>す</sup> の じゃ ない? 和生<sup>かずお</sup> は  
 生まれて<sup>う</sup> まだ 九日<sup>ここのか</sup> でしょう。  
 そんな 先<sup>さき</sup> の ことは もっと 後<sup>あと</sup>  
 で いい の じゃ ない?⑩

## Transcription

- 13 - anatatachi wa chotto sekkachi sugiru no ja nai? kazuo wa umarete mada kokonoka deshō. sonna saki no koto wa motto ato de ii no ja nai?

\*\*\*

## れんしゅう 練習

### Exercise 1

- ① この 小さな<sup>ちい</sup> 桜<sup>さくら</sup> の 木<sup>き</sup> が 大きく<sup>おお</sup>  
 なって、その 下<sup>した</sup> に 座れる<sup>すわ</sup> よう  
 になる まで には 何<sup>なん</sup> 十<sup>じゅう</sup> 年<sup>ねん</sup>  
 も 待たなければ だめ です。
- ② 会社<sup>かいしゃ</sup> に 見本<sup>みほん</sup> を 送<sup>おく</sup>って もらいました。
- ③ 算数<sup>さんすう</sup> の 問題<sup>もんだい</sup> が できなくて、  
 お兄<sup>にい</sup>さん に 手伝<sup>てつだ</sup>って もらいました  
 が、お兄<sup>にい</sup>さんは 算数<sup>さんすう</sup> が あまり  
 できない ので、無理<sup>むり</sup> でした。
- ④ 小学校<sup>しょうがっこう</sup> は 国立<sup>こくりつ</sup> か 私立<sup>しりつ</sup> か  
 どちら が いい か わかりません。



- 13 – Don't you both think you're in too much of a hurry? Kazuo was only born nine days ago! All that, is still so far, can't it wait a little?  
*(you / [announce] / a little / too hurry / be too much / it's not that) (Kazuo / [announce] / was born / only / nine days / that must be) (such / before / [relation] / thing / [announce] / most / after / [time] / be good / it's not that)*

## Notes

- ⑩ <sup>ここのか</sup> 九日, cf. Lesson 70, paragraph 1.

\*\*\*

- ⑤ <sup>あたら</sup>新しい <sup>いえ</sup>家を <sup>た</sup>建てる <sup>ため</sup>に、<sup>ちち</sup>父  
 に <sup>かね</sup>お金を <sup>か</sup>貸して <sup>くれる</sup>よう  
 に <sup>たの</sup>頼みましょう。

## Answers to Exercise 1

- ① Before this little cherry tree becomes big and we can sit beneath it, we have to wait some ten or twenty years. ② I had the company sent me samples. ③ I didn't know how to do my math problem, so I asked my older brother to help me, but because he isn't very good at math it was useless. ④ For grammar school, I don't know which is better: public or private? ⑤ Let's ask my father if he can lend us the money to build our new house.

## Transcription

- ① kono chiisa na sakura no ki ga ookiku natte, sono shita ni suwareru yō ni naru made ni wa nan jū nen mo matanakereba dame desu. ② kaisha ni mihon o okutte moraimashita. ③ sansū no mondai ga dekinakute, oniisan ni tetsudatte moraimashita ga, oniisan wa sansū ga amari dekinai node, muri deshita. ④ shōgakkō wa kokuritsu ka shiritsu ka dochira ga ii ka wakarimasen. ⑤ atarashii ie o tateru tame ni, chichi ni o kane o kashite kureru yō ni tanomimashō.



## Answers to Exercise 2

- ① むすこにドイツごをはやく — させたほうが  
いい —。らいねんからドイツにすむよていだ —。  
② にくがきれいなこどもににくをたべさせる  
のは —。  
③ みちかちゃんはいま — ですか。 — しょうがつこう  
ろくねんせいですが、しがつからちゅうがつこう  
いちねんせいになります。(にほんでは — は  
しがつから はじまります。)  
④ この — は — につくってもらいました。  
⑤ この — は ゆうじんが つくって くれました。

(you probably don't need it, but if you want help, cf. page 458)

\*\*\*

かたかな れんしゅう  
片仮名の練習  
Katakana Exercises

パ ピ プ ペ ポ  
PA PI PU PE PO

か と  
書き取り - Dictation

- ① pea (pair) ② piano (piano) ③ supein (Spain) ④ sūpu (soup)  
⑤ supōtsu (sports) ⑥ apāto (apart[ment]) ⑦ supīdo (speed)  
⑧ pēji (page) ⑨ piku-nikku (picnic) ⑩ posuto (mailbox [post])  
⑪ depāto (depart[ment store])

- ① ペア ② ピアノ ③ スペイン ④ スープ ⑤ スポーツ ⑥ アパート  
⑦ スピード ⑧ ページ ⑨ ピク・ニック ⑩ ポスト ⑪ デパート

Second Wave: 第四十一課 (Lesson 41)

## まとめ

### Revision and Notes

1. We know that you're very perceptive, so we probably don't need to tell you that since Lesson 85, the **translations** –whether in the text or in the exercises– have begun to look less like their Japanese originals. This isn't because we've been paying less attention! On the contrary, it's because up to this point, we'd been trying to mimic Japanese grammar in our construction of English sentences, even if this has given us some pretty twisted English syntax. But now that you're fully comfortable in the structure of a Japanese sentence, we are using a more “natural” English translation style. But that means it's not only more English-sounding, but it's also further away from the Japanese grammatical patterns. We hope it doesn't get too confusing! But at any event, in case you get lost from time to time, we've always got the word-for-word translation right there to help you out. Most important is making progress, slowly but surely!

2. Now that we have practiced the special verbs for **high degree** (cf. Lesson 70, paragraph 3), we're going to take another look at them, but this time from the angle of **morphology**. All that we have used so far are multiple-root verbs. For these verbs, the suffix –ます latches onto the *i* root. And that's how it works for high degree verbs. But, in this case, and only in this case, you may have noticed that **some verbs are a bit peculiar**. Let's outline the case in three separate categories, and begin the elucidation process:

- verbs that do not finish in **ru** are completely regular: もうす/もう  
します, *I am called, I say*; いただく/いただきます, *I receive*;  
いたす/いたします, *I do*; うかがう/うかがいます, *I have  
heard, I visit*.

---

## Lesson Ninety-One 91

- verbs that end in **ru**, but where the vowel before **ru** is not *a*, are also regular: おる/おります, *I exist*; まいる/まいります, *I go*, *I come*.
- verbs that end in **ru** but where the preceding vowel is *a* are, finally, the irregular verbs. Let's take, for example: なさる, *you do* (high degree). We were expecting an *i*-root plus *ます*, but in the collision between the root and the suffix, the *r* disappeared, and we are left with: なさいます (cf. Lesson 46, item 7; Lesson 47, item 4). Other verbs: くださる, *you give me*, which becomes くださいます; いらっしゃる, *you exist*, *you go*, *you come*, いらっしゃいます (cf. Lesson 12, item 4; Lesson 18, item 1; Lesson 47, item 11; Lesson 68, item 8); ござる, *to exist*, *there are* (as it concerns me), ございます; で ござる, *it is* (as it concerns me) (cf. Lesson 86, item 14), で ございます (cf. Lesson 44, item 1).

**Never forget:** here, for simplicity's sake, we say "I" or "you", but this "I" also includes all members of my family or people close to me, which means that to speak of them in high degree I use the same verb form as I use for myself. As for "you", all the verbs for which we've translated as "you..." can be used to talk of any other person related to, and including, the person I'm talking to.

**Please note:** for the verb いらっしゃる: when you add the suffix *た* or *たら*, you get *いらした*, *いらしたら* (cf. Lesson 78, item 10; Lesson 86, item 9), so that you don't have an overabundance of *a*. The Japanese language almost never has the same vowel repeated three times in a row.

So there you are! Now you know all about the special verbs. Leave some time for this to sink in, though, because it will take some time to get used to it. But we're getting there!

**91** 3. Since we're already dealing with **verbs**, let's stay here for a bit and go back over a central point in Japanese self-expression: **by adding an auxiliary verb to the て-form, you can modify the meaning of the verb and even change it considerably**. These auxiliaries are in fact verbs themselves who have, elsewhere, their own independent meaning (because there's no reason to invent a new word when you already have one at your fingertips). The verbs we use as auxiliaries are: *みる*, *to watch*, *おく*, *to set down*, *しま*  
*う*, *to finish*, *くれる*, *to give*, *もらう*, *to receive*, *やる*, *to do* (for *くれる* and *もらう* there are high degree forms: *くださる* and *いただく*, respectively, cf. the preceding paragraph). Note also that when these verbs are written as auxiliaries, they are written as hiragana only, and never with their kanji equivalents.

**With these three first auxiliaries, you can describe the cause or manner an action is performed:**

…て *みる*. The presence of *みる* indicates that the action has not yet begun, that the action will be done *to try it out, just to see*, cf. Lesson 51, item 10, note 2 and exercise 2, item 1; Lesson 60, item 12 and note 10; Lesson 69, item 10; Lesson 74, exercise 1, item 4; Lesson 75, exercise 1, item 6; Lesson 79, item 7; Lesson 81, exercise 1, item 4.

…て *おく* (cf. Lesson 74, note 1). This indicates that a precautionary action is being performed in advance of another action, and that said first action is a necessary condition to the completion of the second. cf. Lesson 29, item 12; Lesson 74, item 4 and exercise 1, item 3.

…て *しま*  
*う*. With *しま*  
*う* we insist that the action is completely finished, all the way through to the end. cf. Lesson 31, item 14; Lesson 45, items 9, 11, and exercise 1, item 2; Lesson 48, item 6; Lesson 51, exercise 1, item 3 and exercise 2, item 2; Lesson 57,

exercise 1, item 1; Lesson 60, item 11; Lesson 62, exercise 2, item 5; Lesson 72, exercise 1, item 4; Lesson 80, exercise 2, item 5.

**These last three auxiliaries, express the idea of “who does what for whom”.** What we express in English with personal pronouns, such as *I sent you...* would be expressed in Japanese by these auxiliaries: 送<sup>おく</sup>って あげました; *you sent me*, 送<sup>おく</sup>って くれました.

…て くれる. Someone does something for me. The subject, then, is that someone else. cf. Lesson 29, item 4; Lesson 32, exercise 1, item 1; Lesson 39, item 13; Lesson 41, item 10; Lesson 50, exercise 2, item 3; Lesson 55, exercise 2, item 5; Lesson 59, item 2 and exercise 1, item 1, exercise 2, items 2 and 4; Lesson 61, item 8; Lesson 65, item 3; Lesson 69, item 8; Lesson 74, item 2 and exercise 1, item 1 and 2; Lesson 80, item 14; Lesson 89, item 11; Lesson 90, item 6.

…て もらう. I, the speaker, behave so that someone will do something for me. I am the subject. cf. Lesson 65, exercise 2, item 2; Lesson 90, item 4.

…て やる. This time, I (the speaker) do something for you (it's only fair!). cf. Lesson 72, item 8 and exercise 1, item 3; Lesson 76, item 4. The やる is primarily low degree masculine, while the middle degree and feminine form is the auxiliary あげる/あげます which on its own would mean *to rise, to raise*.

Now it's your turn to play!

**4.** In Japanese there are a number of words that, **while small in stature, are large in importance**. But the little word that conquers all is the mighty little の. A veritable cornucopia of meanings are stuffed into this little particle, and you must never forget a one.

**91** We've outlined them all for you here, in the order in which they appeared in the lessons:

–between two nouns:

1. *の* = [relation], this is the most frequently used form, and the one we've known for the longest time –since Lesson 4, and which we have used non-stop since.
2. *の* = [apposition], this is truly only an extension of the first usage, but it should not be ignored (cf. Lesson 13, note 1).

Here we had to take a moment to capture all the other meanings.

–at the end of a sentence:

3. *の* = [question]: the equivalent of *か* when spoken by women or children (cf. Lesson 29, note 14).

–between a verb and a particle:

4. *の* = [replacement]. This announces a word or a group of words that come just afterwards (cf. Lesson 38, note 1; Lesson 88, note 1).
5. *の* = *fact of* (cf. Lesson 47, note 4). This is the function that generally corresponds to our gerund. After number 1, it is used most frequently.
6. Last but not least: between a noun and a verb that is itself placed before a noun: *の* = [subject]. A special but common case, cf. Lesson 55, note 5.

During your Second Wave revisions, make sure to pay special attention to the many uses of *の*, as each one is yet another key to opening the doors of Japanese.

**5.** We can come up with almost as many uses for **another small word**: よう (pay attention to the long *o*), but we haven't known this particle quite so long. All the more reason for coming at it again with more care. We've laid this one out for you, too:



1. Let's set apart the fixed formula よう です (cf. Lesson 81, note 2), which comes at the end of a sentence or clause and means *from what I see, I feel able to decide that...* (cf. Lesson 81, item 3 and exercise 2, item 1; Lesson 83, item 6).

Next, two great collections of usages:

2. One is centered on the meaning *like, as, as such, the same as...*  
 –first of all, a few formulas: noun + の よう です, *it's like* (cf. Lesson 48, item 5). Verb + よう な 気が します, literally: “it gives me the impression that...”, or “I have the impression...” (cf. Lesson 65, exercise 2, item 5; Lesson 85, item 11).

–noun + の よう に, *as* (cf. Lesson 72, exercise 1, item 5), often expanded with 同じ, *same*: noun + と 同じ よう に (cf. Lesson 71, item 3 and exercise 1, item 1); *identical*, 同じ よう な + noun (cf. Lesson 87, item 9); and an adverb: 同じ よう に, *the same way* (cf. Lesson 79, item 7).

–ように at the end of a clause *as, the same way as* (cf. Lesson 72, item 8; Lesson 87, exercise 2, item 2).

3. The other sense revolves around the meaning *in order to, so that*:  
 –here we will also begin with two fixed formulas:  
 …ように する, *to make that, to do such that* (cf. Lesson 75, item 8 and exercise 1, item 3; Lesson 78, item 11 and exercise 1, item 4, exercise 2, item 5).

…ように なる, *things happen in such a way that..., it becomes possible that..., it comes to pass that...* (cf. Lesson 64, items 5, 6, and 11 and exercise 1, items 1 and 4, exercise 2, item 1; Lesson 83, exercise 1, item 5; Lesson 90, exercise 1, item 1).

–よう or よう に with verbs meaning “to wish, to ask that, to advise” (cf. Lesson 88, item 15; Lesson 90, item 6 and exercise 1, item 5).

–ように at the end of a clause: “so that, in order that” (cf. Lesson 67, exercise 1, item 1; Lesson 85, item 7 and exercise 1, item 2; Lesson 87, exercise 2, item 3).

**91** Who could ever have guessed that we'd get so much out of such a little word!

We are now rounding the bend on our home stretch! And so, for the first time, we are presenting you with dialogues written in the form of real Japanese texts. Up till now, whether in the exercises or the dialogues, all texts have been specially treated so that there were spaces between the words. But true Japanese is not written like that: it's all written together, and you have to use your own knowledge to figure out where one word ends and another begins! But don't worry: the transcription is still spaced the way you're used to, so you won't get lost. However make sure you try to read it without the transcription, so that you'll be up to the challenge of soon being able to read a real Japanese piece of writing.



To be sure, a real Japanese text should also be written horizontally, with the page running from the right to the left—completely opposite of ours! Alas, that's not quite possible for this books. But soon enough!

Don't forget the Second Wave! It's very important in maintaining practice in the language. And the stroke order for the kana is also fundamental for learning how to write correctly. And finally, be sure you're doing exercise number 2 directly in hiragana, like you promised! By now you should be used to all of this. So keep going!

### **Second Wave: 第四十二課 (Lesson 42)**



にほん  
日本のテレビ

- 1 - ベルナール君、その後、元気かい。①
- 2 君が僕と一緒に日本へ来られなかったのはとても残念だ。②
- 3 テレビの好きな君はきっと日本のテレビが気に入るだろうと思う。③

Transcription

nihon no terebi

- 1 - berunāru kun, sono go, genki kai.
- 2 kimi ga boku to issho ni nihon e korarenakatta no wa totemo zannen da.
- 3 terebi no suki na kimi wa kitto nihon no terebi ga ki ni iru darō to omou.

Notes

- ① ベルナール君. Whenever we speak of or to someone, we always have to follow the name with "a little something" (cf. Lesson 72, note 3). Most common, of course, is さん, which is something like the English *Mr*, *Mrs*, or *Ms*, as we have noted in the word-by-word translation. The **mark of familiarity** in Japanese is to use 君 or ちゃん instead of さん. For us, of course, the mark of familiarity is to use nothing at all, so in the absence of a precise word for our translations, we have just written the proper name. かい cf. Lesson 75, note 5. As the tone is familiar, between friends, the whole of the letter is in low degree. ▶

### Japanese Television

(Japan / [relation] / television)

- 1 – My dear Bernard, how have you been since the last time we saw each other?  
(Bernard / this-after / good health / [question])
- 2 It's really too bad that you couldn't come with me to Japan.  
(you / [subject] / me / with / together / [adverbial] / Japan / [destination] / was unable to come / fact of / [announce] / very / regrettable / it is)
- 3 You love television so much, I think you'd really love Japanese TV.  
(television / [subject] / loved / it is / you / [announce] / certainly / Japan / [relation] / television / [subject] / spirit / [place] / enter / this must be / [quotation] / think)



- ▶ ② 来られなかった。And another conglomeration of suffixes! (cf. Lesson 71, note 8). The form, 来, (from 来る, *to come*), is used to create 来ない, *not to come*, and 来られる, *to be able to come* (cf. Lesson 84, paragraph 2). This 来られる is a single-root verb, whose negative *not be able to come* is, therefore, 来られない。And as it's in the past tense, it becomes 来られなかった, *was not able to come*.
- ③ だろう, cf. Lesson 72, note 4. Not only does だろう specify a familiar tone, but it is also primarily used among men. The same goes for 君, *you* and 僕, *me*.

- 4 日本には公共放送のNHKが二  
チャンネルある他、民間放送がたくさん  
あるので、番組の種類はとても豊富だ。④
- 5 映画は欧米のものも随分放映されて  
いるし、日本のものは現代劇も時代劇  
もあるよ。⑤⑥
- 6 クイズや漫画の番組も盛んだよ。⑦
- 7 日本のテレビには何でもあって、お見合  
い番組までである。⑧

## Transcription

- 4 nihon ni wa kōkyō hōsō no enu etchi kē ga ni channeru aru  
hoka, minkan hōsō ga takusan aru node, bangumi no shurui  
wa totemo hōfu da.
- 5 eiga wa ōbei no mono mo zuibun hōei sarete iru shi, nihon  
no mono wa gendai geki mo jidai geki mo aru yo.
- 6 kuizu ya manga no bangumi mo sakan da yo.
- 7 nihon no terebi ni wa nandemo atte, omiai bangumi made aru.

## Notes

- ④ NHK. The abbreviation –yes, in English– of 日本放送協会  
**Nippon Hōsō Kyōkai**, literally: “Japanese Broadcast Association”  
(Japan / broadcast / association). It is a very powerful society  
that, outside of two TV channels and public radio, participates  
in many media activities from book and magazine publication  
to extended education courses (cf. items 8 and 11). The name of  
Japan, still written 日本, has in fact two pronunciations: **nihon**  
and **nippon**. The second, **nippon**, is primarily used for official  
purposes. It used to be the favored pronunciation before World  
War II, but in the past half-century it has fallen out of favor, so  
**nihon** is the general usage. ▶

- 4 In Japan, other than the two public channels NHK, there are many private channels, so you have all kinds of shows.  
*(Japan / [place] / [emphasis] / public-broadcast / [apposition] / NHK / [subject] / two-TV channel / exist / other than /// private-broadcast / [subject] / many / exist / because // television program / [relation] / kind / [announce] / very / abundant / it is)*
- 5 As for movies, all sorts of western films are shown on television, and there are all kinds of Japanese movies, either modern or historical.  
*(movies / [announce] / the west / [relation] / thing / even / many / television broadcast-be done / and // Japan / [relation] / thing / [announce] / modern-drama / also / period-drama / also / exist / [engagement])*
- 6 There are also lots of game shows and cartoons.  
*(game show / or else / cartoon / [relation] / television program / also / intensive / it is / [engagement])*
- 7 Japanese TV has everything, even a show about arranged marriages.  
*(Japan / [relation] / television / [place] / [emphasis] / whatever / exist // [familiarity]-arranged marriage-television program / up to / exist)*



- ▶ ⑤ 映画, cf. Lesson 8, note 3. 欧米 the character 欧 stands for Europe, and 米 stands for America, so the two put together give us: *The West*.
- ⑥ ...される, cf. Lesson 84, paragraph 2.
- ⑦ 漫画, cf. Lesson 83, note 4.
- ⑧ 何でも. These interrogative words are actually quite practical, as they can be used to refer to a whole series of pronouns. With か, cf. Lesson 65, note 4; with でも we have another series: 何, *what?*, なんでも, *whatever*. And following the same model: いつ, *when?*, いつでも, *whenever* (cf. Lesson 73, item 5; Lesson 83, item 12). どこ, *where?*, どこでも, *wherever*. だれ, *who?*, だれでも, *whoever*.

- 92
- 8 でも日本のテレビは娯楽のためだけではなく、勉強のための番組もあるんだ。⑨
- 9 それは料理、裁縫から始まって、バイオリン、ピアノ、フルート、ギター、琴、三味線などの楽器や外国語の講座もある。⑩
- 10 その他大学の数学、社会学などの講座も聞くことができる。
- 11 それはほとんどNHKの教育テレビで放送されている。⑥

## Transcription

- 8 demo nihon no terebi wa goraku no tame dake de wa naku, benkyō no tame no bangumi mo aru na.
- 9 sore wa ryōri, saihō kara hajimatte, baiorin, piano, furūto, gitā, koto, shamisen nado no gakkī ya gaikokugo no kōza mo aru.
- 10 sono hoka daigaku no sūgaku, shakaigaku nado no kōza mo kiku koto ga dekiru.
- 11 sore wa hotondo enu etchi kē no kyōiku terebi de hōsō sarete iru.

## Notes

- ⑨ で は なく, cf. Lesson 85, note 4.
- ⑩ The 琴 **koto** and the 三味線 **shamisen** are two of Japan's traditional instruments. The **koto** has thirteen strings running along a curved piece of wood about six feet (1.80 meters) long, and is played sitting flat on the ground, strings plucked by the fingers. The **shamisen** is a light instrument with—as the name implies—three strings, a long neck and a resonating box covered in stretched skin (traditionally, it was cat skin). It's roughly two feet (60 cm) long. It is held somewhat like the guitar (classical guitar, that is) and the musician hits the strings with a good-sized hammer held in the hand.



- 8 But Japanese television isn't only for entertainment, there are also educational programs.  
*(however / Japan / [relation] / television / [announce] / entertainment / [relation] / goal / only / it's not // study / [relation] / goal / [relation] / program / also / exist / it's that)*
- 9 There are classes, beginning with cooking and sewing, all the way to foreign languages, including musical instruments like violin, piano, flute, guitar, koto, shamisen...  
*(that / [announce] / cooking / sewing / from / beginning // violin / piano / flute / guitar / koto / shamisen / this kind of thing / [apposition] / musical instrument / or else / foreign language / [relation] / class / also / exist)*
- 10 You can also see university classes of mathematics, sociology...  
*(other than / university / [relation] / mathematics / sociology / this kind of thing / [relation] / class / also / listen / fact of / [subject] / be possible)*
- 11 Nearly all classes are broadcast on NHK's education channel.  
*(that / [announce] / nearly / NHK / [relation] / education-television / [means] / broadcast-be done)*



今日 は これ ぐらい に します。



- 12 でも僕が一番好きな番組は、ホーム・ドラマで、それを見ていると、日本の家族の人間関係のことがよくわかる。⑪
- 13 民間放送の場**合**は一つ一つの番組が、いくつかの**企**業の**ス**ポンサーによって放送される。⑥
- 14 だから放送中にその**企**業の**廣**告がよくある。最初は物語が途中で**中**断されるのでいらいらしたが、このごろはその**時**を利用して、お茶のためにお湯を沸かしたり、トイレに**立**ったりできるので、便利だ**と**思**う**。⑥⑫

## Transcription

- 12 demo boku ga ichiban suki na bangumi wa, hōmu-dorama de, sore o mite iru to, nihon no kazoku no ningen kankei no koto ga yoku wakaru.
- 13 minkan hōsō no baai wa hitotsu hitotsu no bangumi ga, ikutsuka no kigyō no suponsā ni yotte hōsō sareru.
- 14 dakara hōsō chū ni sono kigyō no kōkoku ga yoku aru. saisho wa monogatari ga tochū de chūdan sareru node iraira shita ga, konogoro wa sono toki o riyō shite, o cha no tame ni o yu o wakashitari, toire ni tattari dekiru node, benri da to omou.

## Notes

- ⑪ ホーム・ドラマ Without doubt this is one of Japanese television's most original output. Something like daily soap operas, often very short (15 minutes usually, though no longer than 45 minutes), they will nonetheless run serially for weeks upon weeks, usually spanning months. They display the general problems of the average ▶

- 12 But my favorite shows are the *home dramas*, by watching them you can really understand the human relations of a Japanese family.

*(however / me / [subject] / the most / loved / it is / program / [announce] / home drama / it is // that / [object] / watch / when // Japan / [relation] / family / [relation] / person-relation / [relation] / thing / [subject] / well / be understandable)*

- 13 On the private channels, each program is sponsored by several large companies.

*(private-broadcast / [relation] / case / [announce] / one-one / [relation] / program / [subject] / a certain number / [relation] / large company / [relation] / sponsor / [goal] / be based on / broadcast-be done)*

- 14 In the middle of the broadcasts, they have commercials for the companies. First, it annoyed me, because the story was interrupted in the middle, but now I take the time to go get a cup of hot water for my tea or to go to the restroom, and I find that it's pretty convenient.

*(that's why / broadcast-middle / [place] / this / company / [relation] / commercial / [subject] / often / exist) (at the beginning / [emphasis] / story / [subject] / on the way / [place] / interruption-be done / because // annoyance-did / but // nowadays / [emphasis] / this / moment / [object] / utilization-do / [familiarity]-tea / [relation] / goal / [goal] / [familiarity]-hot water / [object] / heat up // toilet / [goal] / get up / be possible / because // practical / it is / [quotation] / think)*



- ▶ Japanese family (and as such are removed from the American soap operas and the fiascos of millionaire families). Broadcast during the day, the prime audience is housewives.

- ⑫ たり...たりする cf. Lesson 76, note 8. Here できる replaces する to mean *to be able to do*. (cf. also Lesson 84, paragraph 2).



- 15 I'm going to stop here, because it's about time for my favorite historical play to start. Give my best regards to your little sister. Take care.

(soon / me / [subject] / loved / it is / historical play / [subject] / begin / because // today / [emphasis] / this-almost / [goal] / do) (your little sister / [attribution] / also / well) ([politeness]-good health / [means])

## Notes

- ⑬ よろしく (お<sup>ねが</sup>い します) (cf. Lesson 65, note 3 and Lesson 78, note 2). Another use of this formula: person's name に + よろしく corresponds to our *my regards* (or *my love*, depending) to so and so.

\*\*\*

- ⑤ 国際<sup>こく さい</sup> 平和<sup>へい わ</sup> を<sup>を</sup> 守<sup>まも</sup>る こと は、国際<sup>こく さい</sup> 連<sup>れん</sup>合<sup>ごう</sup> の 仕<sup>し</sup>事<sup>ごと</sup> です。

## Answers to Exercise 1

- ① Last month I read a book about the history of mathematics. It was a book that was translated from German. ② Starting January, the time limit for a company's commercial was limited to 48 minutes a day. ③ It's a particular subject, but this teacher's explanations are so clear that anyone could understand. ④ I looked once more at the letters that have arrived in the past ten days, but I didn't find Mr. Yoshino's letter. ⑤ Safeguarding international peace is the task of the UN.

## Transcription

① sengetsu sūgaku no rekishi ni tsuite kakareta hon o yomimashita. doitsugo kara yaku sareta mono desu. ② ichigatsu kara hitotsu no kigyō no kōkoku no jikan wa, ichinichi ni yonjū hap pun inai ni seigen sarete shimaimashita. ③ tokushu na mondai desu ga, sono sensei no setsumei wa totemo jōzu de, dare ni demo yoku rikai dekimasu. ④ kono tookakan ni kita tegami o mata hitotsu hitotsu shirabemashita keredomo, yoshino san kara no tegami wa mitsukarimasen deshita. ⑤ kokusai heiwa o mamoru koto wa, kokusai rengō no shigoto desu.

92 Exercise 2

...に<sup>ことば</sup>言葉<sup>い</sup>を入れなさい

- ① If it's something so ordinary, it should be on sale anywhere.

そんな ふつう . . . . .

- ② Rich as the contents of the educational television programs are, we can study all sorts of things. It is possible to study sociology, to listen to courses in chemistry, and even to practice a musical instrument.

..... ... ..... ないよう が .....  
..... べんきょう .....  
..... とうぎ .....  
..... できる . . .

- ③ My best wishes to your family.

.....

- ④ It seems that this doctor is an extraordinary person and that he can cure any sickness.

あの . . . . . りっぱ . . . . . びょうき  
.....

\*\*\*

## Answers to Exercise 2

- ① — の もの なら、どこでも うって います よ。  
 ② きょういく テレビ の ばんぐみ は — ほうふ  
 で、いろいろ な — が できます。  
 しゃかいがく の べんきょう を したり、かがく  
 の — を きいたり、がっき の れんしゅう  
 も したり — の です。  
 ③ みな さん に も よろしく。  
 ④ — お いしゃ さん は — な かた で、どんな  
 — でも なおせる そう です。

\*\*\*

かたかな れんしゅう

## 片仮名の練習

## Katakana Exercises

マ  
MAミ  
MIム  
MUメ  
MEモ  
MO

## 書き取り - Dictation

- ① minku (mink) ② mēkā (brand [maker]) ③ modan (modern)  
 ④ damu (dam) ⑤ masu-komi (mass-comm[unication]) ⑥ mūbī  
 (movie) ⑦ memo (memo) ⑧ modanizumu (modernism) ⑨ maiku  
 (microphone) ⑩ mainasu (minus)

- ① ミンク ② メーカー ③ モダン ④ ダム ⑤ マス・コミ ⑥ ムービー  
 ⑦ メモ ⑧ モダニズム ⑨ マイク ⑩ マイナス

## Second Wave: 第四十三課 (Lesson 43)

93 第九十三課

えん そく  
遠足

- 1 - 明日の遠足、うれしいな。お母さん、お弁当に何を作ってくれるの。①②③
- 2 - 今晚のおかずは鳥と野菜のお煮染だったから、それを少し取っておいてあげましたよ。それに努が大好きな茹卵二つ。④⑤⑥⑦

Transcription

ensoku

- 1 - ashita no ensoku, ureshii na. okaasan, o bentō ni nani o tsukutte kureru no.
- 2 - konban no okazu wa tori to yasai no onishime datta kara, sore o sukoshi totte oite agemashita yo. sore ni tsutomu ga daisuki na yudetamago futatsu.

Notes

- ① 遠足. An excursion or field trip is a common activity for schoolchildren in Japan (cf. Lesson 90, note 3). The goal is, of course, educational, but the destinations range from sports outings to botanical explorations, from workplaces to popular nearby travel destinations.
- ② お弁当. A traditional Japanese institution, as it were... The Japanese equivalent of the bag-lunch, brought to the office or school. And instead of peanut-butter and jelly sandwiches, the classic Japanese meal is rice with an assortment of meat and vegetables, all wrapped up in a box designed for the purpose. Despite the simple appearance, a proper **bentō** takes a long time to prepare, so the mother of the family has to wake up earlier than anyone else in the household just to make it. As an institution, then, it might be on its way out, as cafeterias and school restaurants have begun to sell ready-made **bentō** at reasonable prices. ▶



---

## Lesson Ninety-Three 93

### The Excursion

1 – I'm happy about going on the excursion tomorrow. Mom, what are you making for me to bring for lunch?  
(tomorrow / [relation] / excursion / be happy / [reflection])  
(mom / [familiarity]-meal to go / [goal] / what / [object] / make / do for me / [question])

2 – I put aside for you a bit of tonight's dinner, some chicken and vegetable stew. And two hard-boiled eggs as well, you love them so much.  
(tonight / [relation] / plate / [announce] / chicken / and / vegetable / [relation] / [familiarity]-stew / it was / because // that / [object] / a bit / take / make in advance / did for you / [engagement]) (what's more / Tsutomu / [subject] / very liked / it is / hard-boiled egg / two)

- ▶ ③ The speaker here is a little boy. Until around 10 or 11 years old, boys still speak like their mothers, using many feminine habits of speech. Hence the *の* to end a question (cf. Lesson 29, note 14 and Lesson 91, paragraph 4). The change comes around 12 years old when he begins to speak –among other things– like a man.
- ④ おかず. This is “other various food,” including vegetables, fish, meat, all of which goes with the rice (whether at the table or in the *bentō*).
- ⑤ 鳥 means *bird*, but in the culinary context, refers to *chicken*.
- ⑥ 取って おいて あげました. A stream of auxiliary verbs such as what we discussed in Lesson 91, paragraph 3. The principle verb here is 取る, *take*, in the *て* form. If we add おく, it suggests that the “taking” was done in advance of something else: 取って おく, *to take in advance*, or *to put aside*. Joined with the grouping あげる it notes that I am the speaker, and that I did this action for you, to whom I am speaking: 取って おいて あげる, *I put aside for you*.
- ⑦ 努, cf. Lesson 52, note 3. Here it is the boy's given name.

- 3- 天気予報だと、午前中は曇りだけど、  
 午後は晴れるそうだから、よかったな。⑧
- 4- 先生が明日はたくさん歩くとおっしゃって  
 いましたから、お結びは五つ入れますよ。⑨
- 5- お結び、五つ。そんなに食べられないよ。  
 リュック・サックも重くなるから嫌だよ。
- 6- でもお腹がすいていたら、歩けませんよ。
- 7- デザートとお八つには何を準備して  
 くれたの。

## Transcription

- 3 - tenki yohō da to, gozenchū wa kumori da kedo, gogo wa hareru sō da kara, yokatta na.
- 4 - sensei ga ashita wa takusan aruku to osshatte imashita kara, o musubi wa itsutsu iremasu yo.
- 5 - o musubi, itsutsu. sonna ni taberarenai yo. ryukku-sakku mo omoku naru kara iya da yo.
- 6 - demo o naka ga suite itara, arukemasen yo.
- 7 - dezāto to oyatsu ni wa nani o junbi shite kureta no.

## Notes

- ⑧ そう だ, cf. Lesson 53, note 2.
- ⑨ おっしゃる, high degree verb: *you say* or *he says*. This corresponds to the verb 言う, *to say*. Add it to our list of words from Lesson 70, paragraph 3, under the “you” high degree heading. cf. also Lesson 91, paragraph 2, for the *ます* form.

- 3 – The weather forecast says it'll be cloudy in the morning, but nice in the afternoon. Great!  
*(weather-forecast / it is / when /// morning-in / [announce] / be cloudy / it is / even though // afternoon / [announce] / be clear / it seems that /// was good / [reflection])*
- 4 – Because your teacher said that you'd be walking a lot tomorrow, I'm giving you five rice balls.  
*(teacher / [subject] / tomorrow / [emphasis] / much / walk / [quotation] / said / because // [familiarity]-rice ball / [announce] / five / put / [engagement])*
- 5 – Five rice balls! I won't be able to eat that many! And my backpack will be too heavy. I don't want them.  
*([familiarity]-rice ball / five) (this way / [adverbial] / not be able to eat / [engagement]) (backpack / also / heavy / become / because // detestable / it is / [engagement])*
- 6 – But if you're hungry, you won't be able to walk.  
*(but / stomach / [subject] / if it's empty // not be able to walk / [engagement])*
- 7 – What have you prepared for dessert and snacks?  
*(dessert / and / snack / [goal] / [emphasis] / what / [object] / preparation-do / did for me / [question])*



- 8-りんごとお煎餅よ。⑩  
 9-それだけ? 甘いものは何もないの。  
 チョコレートとクッキーがほしいなあ。  
 10-あら、だって、<sup>つとむ</sup> 努がさっき言ったでしょう…  
 リュック・サックが<sup>おも</sup> 重くなるって…⑪  
 11 さあ…あまり<sup>おそ</sup> 遅くならないうちに、  
 寝なさい。⑫  
 12-うん…お母さん、<sup>やす</sup> お休みなさい。⑬

### Transcription

- 8- ringo to o senbei yo.  
 9- sore dake? amai mono wa nanimo nai no. chokorēto to  
 kukkī ga hoshii naa.  
 10- ara, datte, tsutomu ga sakki itta deshō... ryukku-sakku ga  
 omoku narutte...  
 11 saa... amari osoku naranai uchi ni, ne nasai.  
 12- un... okaasan, o yasumi nasai.

### Notes

- ⑩ お煎餅, generally pronounced o sèm'bée. Something of a cracker made out of wheat flower or rice and sugar, garnished with salt and seaweed.  
 ⑪ って. Familiar version of <sup>い</sup> と言って, *you/he said that*. ▶

\*\*\*

- 8 – Apples and senbei.  
(apple / and / [familiarity]-senbei / [engagement])
- 9 – That's it? Nothing sweet? I want chocolate and cookies!  
(that / only) (be sweet / thing / [announce] / nothing / not exist / [question]) (chocolate / and / cookie / [subject] / be the object of desire / [reflection])
- 10 – But didn't you just say that your backpack would be too heavy?  
(well / but / Tsutomu / [subject] / just now / said / that must be) (backpack / [subject] / heavy / become / [quotation])
- 11 Good. Now, before it gets too late, go to bed!  
(good) (too / late / not become / during / [time] // go to bed)
- 12 – Yes. Good night, Mom.  
(yes) (mom / good night).



- ▶ ⑫ 寝 なさい, cf. Lesson 84, paragraph 3.
- ⑬ お 休み なさい, cf. Lesson 84, paragraph 3. But here it is used as a formula for wishing goodnight, particularly between people who live in the same house, right before going to bed. It means, literally, “get your rest.”

\*\*\*

## Exercise 1

- ① どうぞ、<sup>あつ</sup>熱い <sup>うち</sup>うちに <sup>た</sup>食べて <sup>くだ</sup>下さい  
(<sup>め</sup>めしあがって <sup>くだ</sup>下さい)。
- ② お母<sup>かあ</sup>さん、<sup>かつあき</sup>勝明 <sup>くん</sup>君 が <sup>ね</sup>ね、<sup>せんせい</sup>先生 に  
「お腹<sup>なか</sup> が <sup>いた</sup>痛い」と <sup>い</sup>言ったら <sup>ね</sup>ね、  
「チョコレート <sup>を</sup>を <sup>た</sup>食べすぎた <sup>ん</sup>ん  
でしょう」と <sup>せんせい</sup>先生 は <sup>おっ</sup>おっしやいました。
- ③ お名<sup>な</sup>前<sup>まえ</sup> は <sup>なん</sup>何 と <sup>おっ</sup>おっしやいますか。
- ④ 冬<sup>ふゆ</sup> の <sup>いちばん</sup>一番 <sup>さむ</sup>寒い <sup>とき</sup>時に、ヒーター  
が <sup>こしょう</sup>故障 <sup>して</sup>して <sup>しま</sup>まって <sup>と</sup>とても  
<sup>こま</sup>困りました。<sup>でんきや</sup>電気屋 <sup>さん</sup>さんに <sup>でんわ</sup>電話  
<sup>を</sup>を <sup>か</sup>かけたら、「今<sup>いま</sup> <sup>すぐ</sup>すぐ <sup>なお</sup>直し <sup>に</sup>に  
<sup>う</sup>うかがいます <sup>よ</sup>よ」と <sup>い</sup>言いました。
- ⑤ <sup>でんきや</sup>電気屋 <sup>さん</sup>さんは <sup>すぐ</sup>すぐ <sup>なお</sup>直し <sup>に</sup>に <sup>き</sup>来て  
<sup>く</sup>くれましたが、<sup>すぐ</sup>すぐに <sup>なお</sup>直せない <sup>こしょう</sup>故障  
だったので、<sup>その</sup>その <sup>よ</sup>夜 <sup>いえ</sup>家 <sup>なか</sup>の中 <sup>は</sup>は  
<sup>ねむ</sup>寝られない <sup>ほど</sup>ほど <sup>さむ</sup>寒かった <sup>です</sup>です。

\*\*\*

## Answers to Exercise 1

① Please, eat while it's hot. ② Mom, you know, Katsuaki, well, he told the teacher, "my stomach hurts," and then, the teacher said to him, "you must have eaten too much chocolate." ③ What is your name, please? ④ At the coldest time of winter, the heater broke, and we were very annoyed. We called the electrician, and he said, "I'll come right away to repair it." ⑤ The electrician came right away to fix it for us, but as the problem was impossible to fix on the spot, that night was so cold in the house that we couldn't fall asleep.

## Transcription

① dōzo, atsui uchi ni tabete kudasai (meshiagatte kudasai).  
 ② okaasan, katsuaki kun ga ne, sensei ni "onaka ga itai" to ittara ne, "chokorēto o tabesugita n deshō" to sensei wa osshaimashita. ③ o namae wa nan to osshaimasu ka. ④ fuyu no ichiban samui toki ni, hītā ga koshō shite shimatte totemo komarimashita. denkiya san ni denwa o kaketara, "ima sugu naoshi ni ukagaimasu yo" to iimashita. ⑤ denkiya san wa sugu naoshi ni kite kuremashita ga, sugu ni naosenai koshō datta node, sono yo ie no naka wa nemurarenai hodo samukatta desu.

\*\*\*

93 Exercise 2

...に<sup>ことば</sup>言葉を<sup>い</sup>入れなさい

- ① Wait a moment, I am coming to help you right away.

.....

- ② When the teacher said, "Next Tuesday we will have an excursion," I was so happy that I jumped (for joy).

.....  
..... て、..... て、おどりがあがる .....

- ③ Don't worry. I paid for you in advance.

..... しないで .....

.....

- ④ My uncle is really someone marvelous. He paid all our hotel fees in advance.

.....  
... かんじょう も .....

- ⑤ Let's go out for a walk while it isn't cold.

.....

\*\*\*



## Answers to Exercise 2

- ① ちょっと まって、いま すぐ てつだって あげます よ。  
 ② 「らいしゅう の かようび は えんそく だ」と  
 せんせい が おっしゃった とき、うれしく—、  
 うれしく— ほど でした。  
 ③ しんぱい ー ください。わたくし が ぜんぶ はらって  
 おいて あげました  
 ④ おじ は ほんとう に いい ひと です。ホテル  
 の — ぜんぶ はらって おいて くれました。  
 ⑤ さむく ならない うち に さんぽ に できましょ う よ。

\*\*\*

かたかな れんしゅう  
 片仮名の練習  
 Katakana Exercises

ラ

RA

リ

RI

ル

RU

レ

RE

ロ

RO

か と  
 書き取り - Dictation

- ① kilo (kilo [kilometer or kilogram]) ② resutoran (restaurant)  
 ③ rōn (loan) ④ sararī-man (salary-man) ⑤ kamera (camera)  
 ⑥ igirisu (England [English]) ⑦ hōmu-dorama (home-drama)  
 ⑧ garēji (garage) ⑨ gorofu (golf) ⑩ terebi (televi[sion]) ⑪ furoa  
 (floor) ⑫ aruzenchin (Argentina) ⑬ ribingu (living [room]) ⑭ ea-  
 tāminaru (air terminal)

- ① キロ ② レストラン ③ ローン ④ サラリー・マン ⑤ カメラ  
 ⑥ イギリス ⑦ ホーム・ドラマ ⑧ ガレージ ⑨ ゴルフ ⑩ テレビ  
 ⑪ フロア ⑫ アルゼンチン ⑬ リビング ⑭ エア・ターミナル

## Second Wave: 第四十四課 (Lesson 44)

にち じょう かい わ  
日常会話

- 1 - おく 遅れてしまって申し訳わけありません。
- 2 タクシーに乗のったのんですが、迎賓館げいひんかんの前まへを通とおった時とき、すごい人ひとごみで、車くるまが全然ぜんぜん通とおれませんでした。①
- 3 車くるまのそばにいた警察官けいさつかんに「どなたがいらしたのですか」と聞いてみたら、「総理大臣そうりだいじんがオランダの女王じょおうを御案内ごあんないしてるところです」と言いわれました。②③④

Transcription

nichijō kaiwa

- 1 - okurete shimatte mōshiwake arimasen.
- 2 takushī ni notta no desu ga, geihinkan no mae o tootta toki, sugoi hitogomi de, kuruma ga zenzen tooremasen deshita.
- 3 kuruma no soba ni ita keisatsukan ni “donata ga irashita no desu ka” to kiite mitara, “sōridaijin ga oranda no joō o go annai shite iru tokoro desu” to iwaremashita.

Notes

- ① 迎賓館げいひんかん The official residence reserved for hosting the government's official guests. It is located in the far north of the 港区みなとく district (cf. Lesson 51, note 1), right next to the Imperial Palace and the Diet (cf. Note 5).
- ② Like English, Japanese distinguishes between a **direct quotation** and an **indirect quotation**. The common point between the two is the use of と, which remains as the equivalent of ▶

---

## Lesson Ninety-Four 94

### An Ordinary Conversation

(daily-conversation)

- 1 – Please excuse me for being so late.  
(*be late / do completely // excuse / not exist*)
  - 2 I came by taxi, but when we passed in front of the Geihinkan, it was all craziness, and all cars were stopped.  
(*taxi / [goal] / got on / it's that / but /// Geihinkan / [relation] / before / [object] / passed / when // be great / craziness / it is // car / [subject] / totally / was unable to pass*)
  - 3 I asked the policeman near our car, “Who is in there?” and he said, “It’s the Prime Minister, receiving the Queen of Holland.”  
(*car / [relation] / side / [place] / existed / policeman / [attribution] / who? / [subject] / existed / it's that / [question] / [quotation] / ask / when I did to see // Prime Minister / [subject] / Holland / [relation] / queen / [object] / [politeness]-greet-do / moment / it is / [quotation] / was told*)
- ▶ [quotation]. In writing, only direct quotations will have brackets, 「 』, or the Japanese version of quotation marks. But above all, if an indirect quotation (the main idea and contents of the speech, and not the exact words said) ends with a verb or an adjective, the final will always be in low degree. In direct quotation, because the verb or adjective is repeated verbatim from the speaker, the form or degree is not prescribed.
- ③ どなた cf. Lesson 86, note 2. いらした cf. Lesson 91, end of paragraph 2.
  - ④ 言われました passive form derived from 言う (cf. Lesson 84, end of paragraph 2). Note that **passive** should be taken very generally: it can indicate that the action is described according to the point of view of the one who receives it, such as, “I have been told....”

- 4 迎賓館を出て、国会議事堂の方へ  
向かうところなのだそうです。⑤
- 5 ところで今月の父兄会に  
いらっしゃいますか。
- 6- 出席するつもりです。
- 7 今度の国語の先生をどうお思いに  
なりますか。⑥
- 8- 娘の話によると、明るい感じの方だ  
そうですが、とてもきびしい点をお  
付けになるみたいです。⑥⑦⑧
- 9- 内の娘は新しい理科の先生のことを  
よく話します。⑨

## Transcription

- 4 geihinkan o dete, kokkai giji dō no hō e mukau tokoro na no da sō desu.
- 5 tokoro de kongetsu no fukeikai ni irasshaimasu ka.
- 6- shusseki suru tsumori desu.
- 7 kondo no kokugo no sensei o dō o omoi ni narimasu ka.
- 8- musume no hanashi ni yoru to, akarui kanji no kata da sō desu ga, totemo kibishii ten o o tsuke ni naru mitai desu.
- 9- uchi no musume wa atarashii rika no sensei no koto o yoku hanashimasu.

## Notes

- ⑤ 国会 議事 堂 According to the Constitution currently in use (since 1946), the Japanese elect two Houses: the House of Representatives (or the Lower House) and the House of Counselors (or the Higher House). The group is called the Diet, just as in America it's called Congress and in England, Parliament. The word "Diet" also refers to the building where the two cham- ▶

- 4 Apparently, they were coming out of the Geihinkan for a meeting at the Diet just at that moment.  
(*Geihinkan* / [object] / leave // National Assembly-meeting place / [relation] / direction / [destination] / depart towards / moment / it is / it's that / it seems that)
- 5 By the way, are you going to the parents' conference this month?  
(*by the way* / this month / [relation] / parents' conference / [goal] / go / [question])
- 6 – Yes, I've been meaning to participate.  
(*presence-do* / intention / it is)
- 7 What do you think of the Japanese teacher this year?  
(*this time* / [relation] / national language / [relation] / teacher / [object] / how / [politeness]-think-[goal]-become / [question])
- 8 – According to my daughter, it seems that he's very nice, but he seems to be a tough grader.  
(*my daughter* / [relation] / speech / [goal] / be based on / if // be bright / impression / [relation] / person / it is / it seems that / but // very / be severe / point / [object] / [politeness]-apply-[goal]-become / it seems to me / it is)
- 9 – My daughter only talks about the new science teacher.  
(*at our house* / [relation] / my daughter / [announce] / be new / science / [relation] / teacher / [relation] / thing / [object] / often / speak)
- ▶ bers are seated, which is located in the 千代田 区 district (cf. Lesson 68, note 5), just southwest of the Imperial Palace.
- ⑥ お 思おもい に なります, cf. Lesson 68, note 2.
- ⑦ 方かた, cf. Lesson 48, note 5.
- ⑧ ...みたい. Another way to soften an affirmation. This form is used primarily by women, and is rather close to よう です (cf. Lesson 91, paragraph 5.1). “I present something I believe is deducible from my observations.” It is often used after an adjective describing someone's mood or state: joy, sadness, anger...
- ⑨ 内うち の 娘むすめ . 娘むすめ, alone means *my/our daughter* (cf. Lesson 84, paragraph 1). But very often the emphatic 内うち の is added, meaning “of our home.” It's similar to how we would say *my own daughter*.

- 10 やさしくて、その上、美男子なので、  
娘はすっかり先生のファンになって  
しまいました。
- 11 今年になってから、今まできらいだった  
理科が急に好きになって、将来は理科系  
の仕事がしたいと言っています。⑩
- 12 去年までは、国語の先生がよかったので、  
新聞記者になると言っていました。  
この調子だと、来年は何か他のものにな  
りたがるでしょう。⑪

## Transcription

- 10 yasashikute, sono ue, bidanshi na node, musume wa sukkari sensei no fan ni natte shimaimashita.
- 11 kotoshi ni natte kara, ima made kirai datta rika ga kyū ni suki ni natte, shōrai wa rika kei no shigoto ga shitai to itte imasu.
- 12 kyonen made wa, kokugo no sensei ga yokatta node, shinbun kisha ni naru to itte imashita. kono chōshi da to, rainen wa nanika hoka no mono ni naritagaru deshō.

## Notes

⑩ なって から, cf. Lesson 73, note 10.

⑪ なりたがる. Beginning with なる, *to become*, we build a form that means *I want to become*, になりたい (cf. Lesson 76, note 6). The suffix たい is added to the root of single-root verbs, and to the *i* root of multiple-root verbs (without the usual modifications of suffixes beginning with *t*: we say なって, なった, なったら, but なりたい). Being a statement of volition, one ▶

- 10 She has become a fan of this teacher because he's a nice and, more importantly, handsome man.  
*(be nice / what's more / handsome man / it is / because // my daughter / [announce] / completely / teacher / [relation] / fan / [goal] / become / did to the end)*
- 11 This year, the same girl who used to hate science has all of a sudden begun to love it, and now says she wants to work in the sciences in the future.  
*(this year / [goal] / become / since // now / until / detestable / it was / science / [subject] / sudden / [adverbial] / loved / [goal] / become // future / [announce] / science-link / [relation] / work / [subject] / I want to do / [quotation] / say)*
- 12 Until last year, when she liked the Japanese teacher, she said she wanted to be a journalist. If that's the way it is, next year, she'll want to be something else!  
*(last year / until / [emphasis] / national language / [relation] / teacher / [subject] / was good / because // newspaper-journalist / [goal] / become / [quotation] / said) (this / way of being / it is / if // next year / [emphasis] / something / other / [relation] / thing / [goal] / she wants to become / that must be)*



- ▶ can only use this formula for speaking of oneself, as in Japanese you cannot really affirm someone else's position. I can't simply say *he wants*. The *たい* forms, used alone (in high or low degree) or followed by *と 思っています* first of all mean: *I want + verb*. To say "*s/he wants + verb*," we have to fall back on other constructions... Unless, of course, the person actually said that he or she wants to do something, in which case we can use: ...*たい* followed by *と 言っています*, *s/he says s/he wants...* (cf. end of item 11): ...*したい と 言っています*, *she says that she wants to do...* Otherwise, if it's just my guess, instead of *たい* (which is -don't forget- an adjective), I have to use *たがる/たがります* (which is a verb).

## 練習

## Exercise 1

- ① 一度 <sup>いちど</sup> 瀬戸内海 <sup>せとないかい</sup> で 泳いで <sup>およ</sup> みたい  
と <sup>おも</sup> 思っています。
- ② 一度 <sup>いちど</sup> 瀬戸内海 <sup>せとないかい</sup> で 泳いで <sup>およ</sup> みたい  
と 言っています。
- ③ あんな <sup>せま</sup> 狭くて きたない アパート  
に <sup>す</sup> 住みたくない です よ。
- ④ その 噂 <sup>うわさ</sup> を 聞いて <sup>き</sup> 以来、あの <sup>ひと</sup> 人  
に <sup>あ</sup> 会いたくて、会いたくて、たまらない  
ほど でした。
- ⑤ このごろ、夜 <sup>よる</sup> に なる と、町 <sup>まち</sup> は  
あぶない <sup>ひとびと</sup> ので、人々 は <sup>そと</sup> 外 に  
<sup>で</sup> 出掛けなく なりました。

\*\*\*



## Answers to Exercise 1

① I would like to have a swim one time in the Inner Sea. ② (He said that) He would like to have a swim one time in the Inner Sea. ③ I don't want to live in an apartment so small and so dirty. ④ After hearing such things about him, my desire to meet him was so strong that it was almost unbearable. ⑤ These days, when night falls, the city is so dangerous that people don't go out anymore.

## Transcription

① ichido setonaikai de oyoide mitai to omotte imasu. ② ichido setonaikai de oyoide mitai to itte imasu. ③ anna semakute kitanai apāto ni sumitakunai desu yo. ④ sono uwasa o kiite irai, ano hito ni aitakute, aitakute, tamaranai hodo deshita. ⑤ konogoro, yoru ni naru to, machi wa abunai node, hitobito wa soto ni dekkenaku narimashita.

\*\*\*



## 94 Exercise 2

...に<sup>ことば</sup>言葉を<sup>い</sup>入れなさい

- ① I ask. I asked. I want to ask. I drink. I drank. I want to drink.  
I swim. I swam. I want to swim. I say. I said. I want to say. I  
meet. I met. I want to meet. I win. I won. I want to win. I make.  
I made. I want to make. I go. I went. I want to go. I give. I gave.  
I want to give.

.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

- ② When did you meet the Prime Minister?

..... お .....

- ③ The new science teacher, whom we met for the first time during  
the parents' conference, seemed to me quite strict.

.....  
すごく .....

- ④ I am annoyed because my watch gains half an hour every day.  
I would like you to repair it for me as soon as possible, when  
can you do it?

ぼく の ..... も  
..... しまう .....  
できるだけ .....、..  
.....

\*\*\*

## Answers to Exercise 2

- ① きく。きいた。ききたい。のむ。のんだ。のみたい。  
 およぐ。およいだ。およぎたい。いう。いった。いいたい。  
 あう。あった。あいたい。かつ。かった。かちたい。つくる。  
 つくった。つくりたい。いく。いった。いきたい。わたす。  
 わたした。わたしたい。
- ② いつ そうりだいじん に - あい に なりました か。
- ③ ふけいかい の とき はじめて あった あたらしい  
 りか の せんせい は - きびしい みたい です ね。
- ④ - とけい は いちにち に さん じゅつ ふん -  
 すすんで - ので、とても こまっています。- はやく  
 なおして もらいたい の です が、いつ まで に  
 できる でしょう か。

\*\*\*

かたかな れんしゅう  
 片仮名の練習  
 Katakana Exercises

ヤ  
 YA

ユ  
 YU

ヨ  
 YO

ワ  
 WA

か と  
 書き取り - Dictation

- ① yangu (young) ② yōguruto (yoghurt) ③ mosukuwa (Moscow)  
 ④ yoga (yoga) ⑤ yūmoa (humor) ⑥ daiyamondo (diamond)  
 ⑦ mai-waifu (my wife) ⑧ wā-puro (wo[rd]-pro[cessor]) ⑨ yūro-  
 darā (the Euro [euro-dollar]) ⑩ tawā (tower) ⑪ taiya (tire)

- ① ヤング ② ヨーグルト ③ モスクワ ④ ヨガ ⑤ ユーモア  
 ⑥ ダイヤモンド ⑦ マイ・ワイフ ⑧ ワー・プロ ⑨ ユーロ・  
 ダラー ⑩ タワー ⑪ タイヤ

## Second Wave: 第四十五課 (Lesson 45)

だい きゅうじゅう ご か  
95 第九十五課

ねん 五う  
年号

- 1 - 戸籍抄本を訳してもらうために大使館  
へ行ったのだけれど、「年号は西暦で  
書かなければいけない」と注意書きが  
あるんだ。めんどうくさいよ。ええと、  
大正十三年は何年になるかな。①②③④  
2 - ちょっと待って下さい。

Transcription

nengō

- 1 - kosekishōhon o yaku shite morau tame ni taishikan e itta no da keredo, "nengō wa seireki de kakanakereba ikenai" to chūigaki ga aru n da. mendōkusai yo. eeto, taishō jū san nen wa nan nen ni naru ka na.  
2 - chotto matte kudasai.

Notes

- ① 年号, cf. Lesson 88, notes 4 and 9. To recapitulate the most recent eras, 明治, 1868 - 1912; 大正, 1912 - 1926; 昭和, 1926 - 1989. The beginning of a new era has been linked -since the Meiji- to the crowning of a new emperor, and can actually come in the middle of the year on the Western Calendar. So, to be exact, the Meiji began on September 8, 1869, and ended July 29, 1912. The next day was the beginning of the Taishō era, which ended December 24, 1926, with the Shōwa era beginning December 25, 1926. It ended on the 7th of January, 1989, when the Heisei 平成 era began.
- ② して もらう, cf. Lesson 91, paragraph 3.

## Lesson Ninety-Five 95

### The Eras

- 1 – I went to the embassy to get my family record translated; on the notice it said that I had to convert the dates to fit the Western Calendar. It's really annoying. Uhh... Taishō 13, what year is that?  
*(family history record / [object] / translation-do / get done / in order to//embassy/[destination]/went/it's that/even though///era / [announce] / Western Calendar / [means] / must write / [quotation] / notice / [subject] / exist / it's that) (be annoying / [engagement]) (uhh / Taishō / ten-three-year / [announce] / what-year / [goal] / become / [question] / [reflection])*
- 2 – Wait a minute.  
*(just a little / wait)*



- ▶ ③ 書<sup>か</sup>なければいけない, cf. Lesson 80, note 2 and Lesson 94, note 2.
- ④ めんどくさい, pronounced, in fact, with a short *o*, this adjective is used all the time in Japanese. It is used to describe anything that is negative.

- 3 一九 一二年は大正元年に当たる  
から、大正十三年は、一九 一二年  
に十二年足せばいいんじゃない?⑤
- 4 一九 二 四年になるわ。
- 5 - おれたちが結婚したのは昭和二十三年。  
昭和元年は何年だったかな。
- 6 - 一九 二 六年です。
- 7 - じゃあ一九 二 六年に二十二を足す  
と一九 四 八年になるな。
- 8 おれたちも年を取ったわけだなあ。⑥

## Transcription

- 3 sen kyūhyaku jū ni nen wa taishō gannen ni ataru kara, taishō jū san nen wa, sen kyūhyaku jū ni nen ni jū ni nen taseba ii n ja nai?
- 4 sen kyūhyaku nijū yo nen ni naru wa.
- 5 - oretachi ga kekkon shita no wa shōwa nijū san nen, shōwa gannen wa nan nen datta ka na.
- 6 - sen kyūhyaku nijū roku nen desu.
- 7 - jaa sen kyūhyaku nijū roku nen ni nijū ni o tasu to sen kyūhyaku yonjū hachi nen ni naru na.
- 8 oretachi mo toshi o totta wake da naa.

## Notes

- ⑤ Let's go back to the system of **eras**. The term 元年 designates the first year to use the name of a given era, so 大正 元年 is 1912. The next year, 1913, is year 2 of Taishō. So don't get confused with this mathematical quirk: if you were born in year 2 of Taishō, you were not born in  $1912 + 2$ , because that's 1914. It's not that difficult, of course, but it might take some time getting used to it. There's just one 1 too many. Just remember to subtract one from your total after counting. Example: year 60 of Shōwa =  $1926 + 60$  ▶

- 3 The year 1912 corresponds to the first year of Taishō, so Taishō 13, you have to add 12 to 1912.  
*(thousand-nine hundred-ten-two-year/[announce]/Taishō/first year / [goal] / correspond / because /// Taishō / ten-three-year / [announce] / thousand-nine hundred-ten-two-year / [goal] / ten-two-year / if you add // be good / it's not that)*
- 4 That gives us 1924.  
*(thousand-nine hundred-twenty-four-year / [goal] / become / [softener])*
- 5 – The year we got married, that was Shōwa 23.  
 What year was the first year of Shōwa?  
*(us / [subject] / marriage-did / [replacement] / [announce] / Shōwa / twenty-three-year) (Shōwa / first year / [announce] / what-year / it was / [question] / [reflection])*
- 6 – It's 1926.  
*(thousand-nine hundred-twenty-six-year / it is)*
- 7 – So, 1926 plus 22, that gives us 1948.  
*(so/thousand-nine hundred-twenty-six-year/[goal]/twenty-two / [object] / add / if // thousand-nine hundred-forty-eight-year / [goal] / become / [reflection])*
- 8 My! we sure have taken on the years.  
*(us / also / year / [object] / took / situation / it is / [reflection])*



- ▶ – 1 = 1985. In Japan you'll be able to find concurrence tables, or 年表, listing all years of eras up to the present. The tables will sort the eras or dynasties from Korea, China, and Japan (with the eras being different depending on the country, of course), as well as their correspondences with the Western Calendar. For historians and for those of us who have trouble with math, these tables are priceless... But we don't mention this era counting system just to make things difficult: it's not only the official way of marking dates in Japanese, it's also in very common usage even today.

- ⑥ おれ達<sup>たち</sup>, cf. Lesson 66, note 4; Lesson 76, note 9; and Lesson 87, note 3.

- 9 - お祖父<sup>じい</sup>さんのお父<sup>とう</sup>さんは確か<sup>たし</sup>明治<sup>めい</sup>生<sup>じ</sup>ま  
れだよね。
- 10 西曆<sup>せい</sup>の何<sup>れ</sup>年<sup>き</sup>になるのかしら。⑦
- 11 明治<sup>めい</sup>何<sup>じ</sup>年<sup>なん</sup>の生<sup>う</sup>まれ？
- 12 - 明治<sup>めい</sup>三十<sup>さん</sup>一<sup>じゅう</sup>年<sup>いち</sup>だよ。
- 13 - ということは、明治<sup>めい</sup>元<sup>じ</sup>年<sup>が</sup>んねん<sup>ねん</sup>は確か<sup>たし</sup>  
一<sup>せん</sup>八<sup>は</sup>六<sup>つ</sup>八<sup>びやく</sup>年<sup>ろく</sup>だから、それに三十<sup>さん</sup>年<sup>じゅう</sup>  
を足<sup>た</sup>すと一<sup>せん</sup>八<sup>は</sup>九<sup>く</sup>年<sup>じゅう</sup>だわ。
- 14 - お祖父<sup>じい</sup>さんのお父<sup>とう</sup>さんは、十九<sup>じゅう</sup>世<sup>きゅう</sup>紀<sup>う</sup>に  
生<sup>う</sup>まれたのか。すごいな。

## Transcription

- 9 - ojiisan no otōsan wa tashika meiji umare da yo ne.  
10 seireki no nan nen ni naru no kashira.  
11 meiji nan nen no umare?  
12 - meiji sanjū ichi nen da yo.  
13 - to iu koto wa, meiji gannen wa tashika sen happyaku rokujū  
hachi nen da kara, sore ni sanjū nen o tasu to sen happyaku  
kyūjū hachi nen da wa.  
14 - ojiisan no otōsan wa, jū kyū seiki ni umareta no ka. sugoi na.

\*\*\*



- 9 – Grandpa, your dad, was certainly born during the Meiji era, right?  
*(grandpa, [relation] / father / [announce] / certainly / Meiji-birth / it is / [engagement] / [agreement])*
- 10 – What year would that be in the Western Calendar?  
*(Western Calendar / [relation] / what-year / [goal] / become / it's that / maybe)*
- 11 – What year of the Meiji was he born in?  
*(Meiji / what-year / [relation] / birth)*
- 12 – In Meiji 31.  
*(Meiji / thirty-one-year / it is / [engagement])*
- 13 – The Meiji began in 1868, so add thirty, and that makes 1898.  
*(that means / Meiji-first year / [announce] / certainly / thousand-eight hundred-sixty-eight-year / it is / because /// that / [goal] / thirty-year / [object] / add / if // thousand-eight hundred-ninety-eight-year / it is / [softener])*
- 14 – Grandpa's dad was born in the 19th century?  
 Incredible!  
*(grandpa/[relation]/father/[announce]/ten-nine-century/[time] / was born / it's that / [question]) (be incredible / [reflection])*

## Notes

- ⑦ ...かしら, cf. Lesson 59, note 5.

\*\*\*

## 練習 - Exercise 1

- ① 八<sup>はち</sup> に 七<sup>なな</sup> を 足<sup>た</sup>せば、十<sup>じゅう</sup> 五<sup>ご</sup> に  
なります。
- ② 六<sup>ろっぴやく</sup>百<sup>はち</sup> 八<sup>じゅう</sup> 十<sup>ご</sup> から 六<sup>ろっぴやく</sup>百<sup>なな</sup> 七<sup>じゅう</sup> 十<sup>はち</sup> 八<sup>はち</sup>  
を 引<sup>ひ</sup>くと、七<sup>なな</sup> 残<sup>のこ</sup>ります。
- ③ 四<sup>よん</sup> 十<sup>じゅう</sup> 四<sup>よん</sup> に 十<sup>じゅう</sup> を 掛<sup>か</sup>けると、四<sup>よん</sup>百<sup>ひやく</sup>  
四<sup>よん</sup> 十<sup>じゅう</sup> に なります (四<sup>よん</sup> 十<sup>じゅう</sup> 四<sup>よん</sup> 掛<sup>か</sup>ける  
十<sup>じゅう</sup> は 四<sup>よん</sup>百<sup>ひやく</sup> 四<sup>よん</sup> 十<sup>じゅう</sup> です)。
- ④ 七<sup>ひやく</sup>百<sup>よん</sup> 四<sup>じゅう</sup> 七<sup>なな</sup> を 三<sup>さん</sup> で 割<sup>わ</sup>ると、  
二<sup>に</sup>百<sup>ひやく</sup> 四<sup>よん</sup> 十<sup>じゅう</sup> 九<sup>きゅう</sup> に なります (七<sup>なな</sup>百<sup>ひやく</sup>  
四<sup>よん</sup> 十<sup>じゅう</sup> 七<sup>なな</sup> 割<sup>わ</sup>る 三<sup>さん</sup> は 二<sup>に</sup>百<sup>ひやく</sup> 四<sup>よん</sup> 十<sup>じゅう</sup>  
九<sup>きゅう</sup> です)。
- ⑤ 来<sup>らい</sup>年<sup>ねん</sup> の 六<sup>ろく</sup>月<sup>がつ</sup> に 新<sup>あた</sup>しい 大<sup>たい</sup>使<sup>し</sup>館<sup>かん</sup> を  
建<sup>た</sup>てる 予<sup>よ</sup>定<sup>てい</sup> が ある と 言<sup>い</sup>われました。

\*\*\*

## Answers to Exercise 1

❶ If you add 8 and 7, you get 15. ❷ When you subtract 678 from 685, you have 7 left over. ❸ When you multiply 44 by 10, you get 440 (44 multiplied by 10 equals 440). ❹ When you divide 747 by 3, you get 249 (747 divided by 3 equals 249). ❺ He says that they planned on building a new embassy in June of next year.

## Transcription

❶ hachi ni nana o taseba, jū go ni narimasu. ❷ roppyaku hachijū go kara roppyaku nanajū hachi o hiku to, nana nokorimasu. ❸ yonjū yon ni jū o kakeru to, yonhyaku yonjū ni narimasu (yonjū yon kakeru jū wa yonhyaku yonjū desu). ❹ nanahyaku yonjū nana o san de waru to, nihyaku yonjū kyū ni narimasu (nanahyaku yonjū nana waru san wa nihyaku yonjū kyū desu). ❺ rainen no rokugatsu ni atarashii taishikan o tateru yotei ga aru to iwaremashita.

\*\*\*

## 95 Exercise 2

...に<sup>ことば</sup>言葉<sup>い</sup>を入れなさい

- ① What we call “gannen” is the first year of a given era.  
 .....、<sup>その</sup> ..... .
- ② The first year of Shōwa is the equivalent of the year 1926 in the Western Calendar.  
 ..... .
- ③ Now I will explain to you (the system of) the Japanese eras.  
 ..... <sup>に</sup> <sup>ついて</sup> ..... .
- ④ A Japanese friend explained to me the system of eras, but because I’m bad at math, I didn’t understand anything.  
 ..... <sup>の</sup> <sup>こと</sup> <sup>を</sup> .....  
 .....、..... <sup>ちつとも</sup> <sup>できない</sup>  
<sup>ひと</sup> <sup>です</sup> ..... .
- ⑤ According to this morning’s news, it seemed that the English Prime Minister had the intention of going to China in September.  
 ..... ..... ..... ..... <sup>しゅしょう</sup> .....  
 ..... <sup>と</sup> ..... .

\*\*\*

かたかな れんしゅう

### 片仮名の練習

### Katakana Exercises

In many katakana words, we find repeated consonants. These are the same consonants as in hiragana –K, S (SH), T (CH, TS), and P– as well as a few others never doubled in Japanese words, but which are necessary for foreign loan words– G, J, D, and B.

Anyway, don’t panic! The system of writing here is the same as in hiragana (cf. Lesson 68, page 161): a lower-case ツ (cf. also Lesson 86).

Example: **kukkī** (cookie): クッキー, **beddo** (bed): ベッド

## Answers to Exercise 2

- ① がんねん と は、 - ねんごう の さいしょ の とし の こと です。  
 ② しょうわ がんねん は せいれき の せん きゅう ひやく にじゅう ろくに あたります。  
 ③ いま から にほん の ねんごう - せつめい して あげましょう。  
 ④ にほんじん の ともだち が ねんごう - せつめい して くれました が、 わたし は さんすう が - から、 ぜんぜん わかりません でした。  
 ⑤ けさ の ニュース に よる と、 イギリス の - は くがつ に ちゅうごく に いく つもり だ - いう こと です。

\*\*\*

## か と 書き取り - Dictation

- ① *ressun* (lesson) ② *middo-naito* (midnight) ③ *yōroppa* (Europe)  
 ④ *matchi* (match) ⑤ *guddo* (good) ⑥ *kurashikku* (classic)  
 ⑦ *appuraito-piano* (upright piano) ⑧ *karejji* (college) ⑨ *kasetto*  
 (cassette) ⑩ *doresshingu* (dressing) ⑪ *torakku* (truck) ⑫ *baggu*  
 (bag) ⑬ *rojji* (lodge) ⑭ *sunobbu* (snob) ⑮ *sandouitchi* (sandwich)

- ① レッスン ② ミッド・ナイト ③ ヨーロッパ ④ マッチ  
 ⑤ グッド ⑥ クラシック ⑦ アップライト・ピアノ ⑧ カレッジ  
 ⑨ カセット ⑩ ドレッシング ⑪ トラック ⑫ バッグ ⑬ ロッジ  
 ⑭ スノブ ⑮ サンドウイッチ

## Second Wave: 第四十六課 (Lesson 46)

## ピアノを買う

- 1 – 娘がピアノを習いたいと言うので、  
習わせようと思っています。①②
- 2 – どなたかいい先生を御存知だったら、  
紹介して下さいませんか。③④⑤

### Transcription

#### piano o kau

- 1 – musume ga piano o naritai to iu node, narawaseyō to omotte imasu.
- 2 – donataka ii sensei o go zonji dattara, shōkai shite kudasaimasen ka.

### Notes

- ① ...たい, cf. Lesson 94, note 11.
- ② 習わせよう. 習わせる, cf. Lesson 87, note 6: 習う, *to study, to learn*. 習わせる, *to make study, to make learn*. cf. also Lesson 77, paragraph 3 and Lesson 84, paragraph 2, for 習わせる: Here again, for multiple-root verbs, where the final syllable is a single **u**, add a **waseru** rather than a simple **aseru** to derive the compound “make + verb.” The derivation is a multiple-root verb. 習わせよう, cf. Lesson 75, note 1. This **ō** or **yō** form followed by と 思います expresses a plan. The ensemble is similar to our “I’m thinking of + verb,” “I would like + verb.”
- ③ どなたか high degree version of だれか, *someone*, cf. Lesson 86, note 2 and Lesson 65, note 4. ▶

## Buying a Piano

(piano / [object] / buy)

- 1 – My daughter said she wanted to learn how to play the piano, I think I'll have her take lessons.  
(my daughter / [subject] / piano / [object] / want to study / [quotation] / say / because // let's make study / [quotation] / think)
- 2 If you know a good instructor, couldn't you introduce him to me?  
(someone / be good / teacher / [object] / if you know // introduction-do / not do for me / [question])



- ▶ ④ 御<sup>ご</sup>存<sup>ぞん</sup>知<sup>じ</sup> です, high degree version of 知<sup>し</sup>る, *to know*, with the meaning *you/he (high degree) know(s)*. Literally: ([politeness]-knowing-it is)
- ⑤ 紹<sup>しょう</sup>介<sup>かい</sup> して 下<sup>くだ</sup>さいませ<sup>ん</sup> か, cf. Lesson 91, paragraphs 2 and 3.

- 3 レッスンを始める前に、ピアノを買おう  
 と思いますが、あなたはピアノにくわしい  
 から一緒に見ていただけますか。⑥

みせ  
 店で

- 4 こんなにピアノの種類があるとは知りま  
 せませんでした。
- 5 - グランド・ピアノですか。  
 アップライト・ピアノですか。⑦
- 6 - これから始めるのだからアップライト・  
 ピアノにしましょう。
- 7 - どのメーカーになさいますか。  
 外国製または国産。

## Transcription

- 3 ressun o hajimeru mae ni, piano o kaō to omoimasu ga,  
 anata wa piano ni kuwashii kara issho ni mite itadakemasu  
 ka.

mise de

- 4 konna ni piano no shurui ga aru to wa shirimasen deshita.  
 5 - gurando-piano desu ka. appuraito-piano desu ka.  
 6 - kore kara hajimeru no da kara appuraito-piano ni shimashō.  
 7 - dono mēkā ni nasaimasu ka. gaikokusei mata wa kokusan.

\*\*\*



- 3 Before beginning lessons, I would like to buy a piano, you know anything about pianos, could you go with me?

*(lesson / [object] / begin / before / [time] / piano / [object] / let's buy / [quotation] / think / but /// you / [announce] / piano / [attribution] / be detailed / because // together / [adverbial] / look / I could receive from you / [question])*

### At the shop

*(shop / [place])*

- 4 I didn't think there would be so many.  
*(this way / [adverbial] / piano / [relation] / variety / [subject] / exist / [quotation] / [emphasis] / did not know)*
- 5 – Would you like a grand piano or an upright piano?  
*(grand piano / it is / [question]) (upright piano / it is / [question])*
- 6 – As she's a beginner, I would prefer an upright.  
*(from now on / begin / it's that / because // upright piano / [goal] / let's do)*
- 7 – What make would you like? Foreign-made or Japanese?  
*(what / brand / [goal] / do / [question]) (foreign-made / or else / national product)*

### Notes

- ⑥ 見て いただけます か, cf. Lesson 91, paragraphs 2 and 3. いただく is the high degree equivalent of もらう (cf. note 12). 一緒に 見て もらいます or いただきます: *I ask you to do me the favor of seeing with me.* Moreover, we have here いただけます, derived from いただく with the sense of *to be able to...* (cf. Lesson 84, paragraph 2). 一緒に 見て いただけます か, *may I ask you to do me the favor of seeing with me...?* Lots of nuance in such a short formula!
- ⑦ cf. Lesson 18, note 3.

\*\*\*

- 8 色は黒いのも白いのも茶色のも  
 ございます。⑧⑨
- 9 どれになさいますか。
- 10 - ピアノは外観ではなく、音で決める  
 ものよ。弾いてみないとわからないわよ。⑩
- 11 こちらの深みがある音ね、あちらのは  
 私の好きな音ではないわ。  
 そちらのはどうかしら。⑪
- 12 - どれにしたらいいのかわからないわ。決  
 められないから、今日はやめておきます。

### Transcription

- 8 iro wa kuroi no mo shiroi no mo chairo no mo gozaimasu.  
 9 dore ni nasaimasu ka.  
 10 - piano wa gaikan de wa naku, oto de kimeru mono yo. hiite  
 minai to wakaranai wa yo.  
 11 kochira no wa fukami ga aru oto ne. achira no wa watashi  
 no suki na oto de wa nai wa. sochira no wa dō kashira.  
 12 - dore ni shitara ii no ka wakaranai wa. kimerarenai kara, kyō  
 wa yamete okimasu.

### Notes

- ⑧ 黒い の も 白い の も, cf. Lesson 91, paragraph 4.4.  
 Note (which is also important for what we're about to cover)  
 that の replaces an already mentioned noun (here, ピアノ). If  
 we want to use the word ピアノ, then we get rid of the の: 黒い  
 ピアノ も 白い ピアノ も. の used in this sense can  
 only come after a verb or adjective.

⑨ cf. Lesson 86, note 14.

⑩ で は な く, cf. Lesson 85, note 4.

- 8 As for color, we have black, white, and maroon.  
*(color / [announce] / be black / [replacement] / also / be white / [replacement] / also / tea-color / [relation] / also / exist)*
- 9 Which would you prefer?  
*(which / [goal] / do / [question])*
- 10 – You can't choose a piano based on its appearance, but on its sound. You have to try it out to judge.  
*(piano / [announce] / outward appearance / it is not // sound / [means] / decide / thing / [engagement]) (play an instrument / not try and do / if // not be understandable / [softener] / [engagement])*
- 11 This one has a deep sound. That one over there has a sound that I don't like. And this one?  
*(this side / [relation] / [announce] / depth / [subject] / exist / sound / [agreement]) (that side there / [relation] / [announce] / me / [subject] / liked / it is / sound / it is not / [softener]) (that side / [relation] / [announce] / how / that may be)*
- 12 – I don't know which one to pick. I can't make up my mind. I won't buy anything today.  
*(which / [goal] / if I do / be good / it's that / [question] / not be understandable / [softener]) (not be able to decide / because // today / [emphasis] / give up / do in advance)*



- ▶ ⑪ こちらの の は…。あちらの の は…。そちらの の は…。 Look out! Things are getting tricky! At first glance this looks a lot like what we just covered with note 8. But take a closer look, because appearances can be deceiving: it still refers to piano, but if you re-integrate ピアノ into these phrases, you can't take anything out. Try it. Each time, ピアノ must be put between the の and は: こちらの の ピアノ は…。あちらの の ピアノ は…。こちらの の ピアノ は…。 That means that it's a の of [relation], between two nouns, where the second noun is omitted as understood. That's also what happened to the last color suggested in item 8. Take another look...

- 13 じゃあ今日はカタログだけいただいて帰ります。⑫

### Transcription

13 jaa kyō wa katarogu dake itadaite kaerimasu.

\*\*\*

### れんしゅう 練習

#### Exercise 1

- ① レコードを何枚も聞かせてもらいましたが、やっぱりいいのがなかったので、一枚も買わないで店を出てしまいました。もしいいのが見つかったら知らせて下さいね。
- ② 捕まえたスパイから新しいロケットのことを聞き出そうとしましたが、一言も言いませんでした。
- ③ どれを売ってしまったんですか。私達の子供の時から両親の家の食堂のドアと窓との間にあったものですか。それとも最近スペイン旅行から持って帰ったものですか。
- ④ カタログを見て買うより、実物を手にとって見て買う方

13 Today I'll only take the catalogue.  
(so / today / [emphasis] / catalogue / only / receive // return home).

96

Notes

⑫ いただく, high degree equivalent of もらう, I receive, I was given.

\*\*\*

が 安全<sup>あんぜん</sup> だ と、カメラ屋<sup>や</sup> を 開いて<sup>ひら</sup>  
いる 弟<sup>おとうと</sup> は いつも 言<sup>い</sup>って います。

- ⑤ 一科学<sup>かがく</sup> の 雑誌<sup>ざっし</sup> が あります か。  
一はい、色々<sup>いろいろう</sup> ござ<sup>ご</sup>います。どうぞ  
御覽<sup>ごらん</sup> 下<sup>くだ</sup>さい。

Answers to Exercise 1

① I made myself listen to I don't know how many records, but not even one was good, and I left the store without buying anything. If you find anything good, let me know. ② They tried to make the captured spy talk about the new rockets, but he hasn't said a word. ③ Which one did you sell? The one that was between the door and the window of the dining room at our parents' house since we were kids? Or else the one you recently brought back from your trip to Spain? ④ My younger brother, who owns a camera store, always says that it is always more sure to buy something after having held the object rather than buying it from the catalogue. ⑤ -Do you have any science magazines? -Yes, we have many. Please take a look.

Transcription

① rekōdo o nan mai mo kikasete moraimashita ga, yappari ii no ga nakatta node, ichi mai mo kawanaide mise o dete shimaimashita. moshi ii no ga mitsukattara shirasete kudasai ne. ② tsukamaeta supai kara atarashii roketto no koto o kikidasō to shimashita ga, hitokoto mo iimasen deshita. ③ dore o utte shimatta n desu ka. watashitachi no kodomo no toki kara ryōshin no ie no shokudō no doa to mado to no aida ni atta mono desu ka. soretomo saikin supein ryokō kara motte kaetta mono desu ka. ④ katarogu o mite kau yori, jitsubutsu o te ni totte mite kau hō ga anzen da to, kameraya o hiraite iru otōto wa itsumo itte imasu. ⑤ -kagaku no zasshi ga arimasu ka. -hai, iroiroyo gozaimasu. dōzo goran kudasai.

96 Exercise 2

...に<sup>ことば</sup>言葉<sup>い</sup>を入れなさい

① I make cry. I make come. I make write. I make laugh. I make buy. I make go out. I make drink. I make think.

.....

② I sold all the black ones. Only the brown ones are left.

... .. うりきって しまいました

.....

③ Do you know the writer called John Dos Passos?

..... ご .....

④ Yes, after being solicited by a Japanese editor, I think I will translate his works into Japanese.

はい。... .. たの..., ..  
... .. おもって います

⑤ However, I don't know when I'll finish the translation.

.....

\*\*\*

かたかな れんしゅう  
片仮名の練習  
Katakana Exercises

Certain katakana words are also written with syllables, the likes of which we've seen in hiragana in lessons 74 (p. 207) and 75 (p. 217), which is to say: a consonant (K, G, N, H, B, P M, R) + Y + A, U, O, or else: SH, J, CH + A, U, O. The principle is the same: after the katakana where this consonant is associated with an *i*, add a small *ya*, *yu*, or *yo* — a little ヤ, ユ, or ヨ. You might want to review the explanations on the given pages. But remember, if the U or O of this syllable is elongated, the elongation is noted by a dash, because it is still katakana.

- ⑥ If I begin next month, one could think that I'll have finished by the end of next year.

.....  
.....

## Answers to Exercise 2

- ① なかせる。こさせる。かかせる。わらわせる。かわせる。  
ださせる。のませる。かんがえさせる。  
② くろい の は - 。 ちゃいろ の しか の こって  
いません。  
③ ジョン・ドス・パッソス と いう さつか を -  
ぞんじ でしょう。  
④ - にほん の しゅっぱんしゃ から -まれて、その  
さくひん を にほんご に やくそう と -。  
⑤ けれども いつ まで に その やく が できあがる  
か わかりません。  
⑥ らいげつ から はじめたら、らいねん の おわり  
ごろ まで に は できあがる と おもわれます。

\*\*\*

## か と 書き取り - Dictation

- ① kyanpu (camp) ② nyūsu (news) ③ ryukku-sakku (back-  
pack [rucksack]) ④ konpyūtā (computer) ⑤ channeru (channel)  
⑥ jazu (jazz) ⑦ jogingu (jogging) ⑧ waishatsu (whi[te] shirt)  
⑨ shoppingu-sentā (shopping center) ⑩ shanpen (champagne)  
⑩ chokorēto (chocolate) ⑩ chūrippu (tulip)

- ① キャンプ ② ニュース ③ リュック・サック ④ コンピューター  
⑤ チャンネル ⑥ ジャズ ⑦ ジョギング ⑧ ワイシャツ  
⑨ ショッピング・センター ⑩ シャンペン ⑩ チョコレート  
⑩ チューリップ

## Second Wave: 第四十七課 (Lesson 47)

97 第九十七課

しよくぎよう  
職業

- 1 - 小学校の一年生の時、母とショッピング・センターへ買物に行つて、迷子になりました。その時あまりにもこわくてどうなるかと思つていたら、親切なお巡りさんが交番へ連れていつてくれて、それから家まで送つてくれました。①
- 2 そのことがあまりにもうれしかったので、将来はお巡りさんになりたいと思つてお巡りさんになりました。②
- 3 - それからどうしたの。

Transcription

shokugyō

- 1 - shōgakkō no ichinen sei no toki, haha to shoppingu-sentā e kaimono ni itte, maigo ni narimashita. sono toki amarinimo kowakute dō naru ka to omotte itara, shinsetsu na omawarisan ga kōban e tsurete itte kurete, sorekara uchi made okutte kuremashita.
- 2 sono koto ga amarinimo ureshikatta node, shōrai wa omawarisan ni naritai to omoimashita.
- 3 - sorekara dō shita no.



## Jobs

- 1 – One day when I was in first grade, I went to go shopping with my mother at a shopping-center, and I got lost. I was completely terrified, wondering what would become of me; a very nice police officer brought me to the station, and then drove me home.

*(primary school / [relation] / first-year student / [relation] / time / my mother / with / shopping center / [destination] / purchase / [goal] / go // lost child / [goal] / become) (this / moment / excessively / be frightening // how / become / [question] / [quotation] / while I think /// nice / it is / [familiarity]-police officer / [subject] / police station / [destination] / accompany / go / do for me // then / house / up to / drive / did for me)*

- 2 I was so happy that I promised myself to become a police officer when I grew up.

*(this / fact / [subject] / excessively / was overjoyed / because // future / [announce] / [familiarity]-police officer / [goal] / I want to become / [quotation] / thought)*

- 3 – And then?

*(then / how / did / [question])*

## Notes

- ① For the Japanese school system, cf Lesson 90, note 3 and 6.
- ② その こと が うれしかった。The adjectives that express feelings have a slightly bizarre trait. It's obvious that it is I who feel the joy, sadness, or pain am speaking, but it is the thing that causes the emotion that is the grammatical subject of the adjective (this is true for うれしい, *to be happy*, for 痛い, *to be in pain*, cf. Lesson 46, items 1 and 8; Lesson 54, item 13; Lesson 57, item 12, and many other adjectives).

- 4- 四年生<sup>よんねんせい</sup>だったころ、トラックの運転手<sup>うんてんしゅ</sup>になりたかったので、毎日<sup>まいにち</sup>のように、学校<sup>がっこう</sup>が終わると、近所<sup>きんじょ</sup>の工場<sup>こうば</sup>へ行って、トラックが出たり入ったりするのを見<sup>み</sup>ていました。③
- 5- その次<sup>つぎ</sup>は何<sup>なに</sup>になりたくな<sup>た</sup>ったの。④
- 6- 北海道<sup>ほっかいどう</sup>の伯父<sup>おじ</sup>さんは広い農場<sup>ひろのうじょう</sup>を持<sup>も</sup>っています。
- 7 六年生<sup>ろくねんせい</sup>の夏休み<sup>なつやすみ</sup>を伯父<sup>おじ</sup>さんのところで過<sup>す</sup>ごしました。トラクターを運転<sup>うんてん</sup>したり、牛<sup>うし</sup>の世話<sup>せわ</sup>をしたりしていました。いつも自然<sup>しぜん</sup>のなかで暮<sup>く</sup>らしている伯父<sup>おじ</sup>さんを見て、将来<sup>しやうらい</sup>はお百姓<sup>ひやくしやう</sup>さんになりた<sup>た</sup>いと思<sup>おも</sup>いました。③⑤
- 8- それからどうしたの。

## Transcription

- 4- yonnensei datta koro, torakku no untenshu ni naritakatta node, mainichi no yō ni, gakkō ga owaru to, kinjo no kōba e itte, torakku ga detari haittari suru no o mite imashita.
- 5- sono tsugi wa nani ni naritaku natta no.
- 6- hokkaidō no ojisan wa hiroi nōjō o motte imasu.
- 7 rokunensei no natsu yasumi o ojisan no tokoro de sugoshimashita. torakutā o unten shitari, ushi no sewa o shitari shite imashita. itsumo shizen no naka de kurashite iru ojisan o mite, shōrai wa o hyakushō san ni naritai to omoimashita.
- 8- sorekara dō shita no.

- 4 – One time in fourth grade, I wanted to be a truck driver. Every day when school got out I'd go to the factory next door and watch the trucks going in and out.

*(fourth-grade student / it was / moment //// truck / [relation] / driver / [goal] / wanted to become / because /// each day / school / [subject] / finish / when // next door / [relation] / factory / [destination] / go // truck / [subject] / go out / enter / do / fact of / [object] / watched)*

- 5 – Then what did you want to become?

*(this / next / [emphasis] / what / [goal] / want to become / became / [question])*

- 6 – My uncle from Hokkaidō owns a large farm.

*(Hokkaidō / [relation] / my uncle / [announce] / be wide / farm / [object] / own)*

- 7 In sixth grade I spent my summer vacation at his place. I drove tractors and took care of the cows. To see my uncle live like that, always surrounded by nature, I thought that in the future, I would be a farmer.

*(sixth-grade student / [relation] / summer-vacation / [object] / my uncle / [relation] / place / [place] / spent) (tractor / [object] / drive-do / cow / [relation] / care / [object] / do / did) (always / nature / [relation] / within / [place] / live / my uncle / [object] / see // future / [announce] / [familiarity]-peasant / [goal] / want to become / [quotation] / thought)*

- 8 – And then?

*(then / how / did / [question])*

## Notes

- ③ ...たり...たり, cf. Lesson 76, note 8.
- ④ なりたく なった。なりたく, the く form of the adjective なりたい, which is itself the verb なる + the suffix たい: *to want to become*. Literally: “I arrived at wanting to become.”
- ⑤ For us, summer vacation is a “long break,” dividing two school years from each other. In Japan, the school year starts in April. Summer vacation is, then, only a little break between the first and second trimesters of the school year.

- 9 – 中学生の時、修学旅行で東京まで来て、  
 オリンピックのために建てたスタジアム  
 などを見、建築家とは夢を形に表す  
 ことのできる職業だと思いました。
- 10 – それからどうなったのですか。
- 11 – 高校を卒業するころは、外国旅行が  
 したかったので商社マンか通訳になろうかと  
 思いましたが、遂に、俳優になりました。
- ⑥⑦⑧
- 12 そうすれば、一回でも子供の時から夢  
 に見ていたこれらの職業にみんなつく  
 ことができるからです。

## Transcription

- 9 – chūgakusei no toki, shūgaku ryokō de tōkyō made kite,  
 orinpicchu no tame ni tateta sutajiamu nado o mi, kenchikuka  
 to wa yume o katachi ni arawasu koto no dekiru shokugyō  
 da to omoimashita.
- 10 – sorekara dō natta no desu ka.
- 11 – kōkō o sotsugyō suru koro wa, gaikoku ryokō ga shitakatta  
 node shōshaman ka tsūyaku ni narō ka to omoimashita ga,  
 tsui ni, haiyū ni narimashita.
- 12 sō sureba, ikkai demo kodomo no toki kara yume ni mite ita  
 korera no shokugyō ni minna tsuku koto ga dekiru kara desu.

## Notes

- ⑥ したかった, from する, to do. With the single-root し, add  
 the suffix たい. したい, I want to do, or “(something) is the  
 object of my desire to do.” The suffix is an adjective (like ない, ▶

- 9 – When I was in middle school, we went on a school trip to Tōkyō; when I saw the stadium they had made for the Olympic Games, I thought that architecture was a profession that would be able to give shape to your dreams.  
*(middle-school student / [relation] / time / school trip / [means] / Tōkyō / up to / come /// Olympic Games / [relation] / goal / [goal] / built / stadium / this kind of thing / [object] / see // architect / [quotation] / [announce] / dream / [object] / shape / [goal] / express / fact of / [subject] / be possible / profession / it is / [quotation] / thought)*
- 10 – And then, what happened to that?  
*(then / how / became / it's that / [question])*
- 11 – When I left school I wanted to travel abroad, so I thought about becoming a businessman or an interpreter, but finally I became an actor.  
*(high school / [object] / graduation-do / moment / [emphasis] /// abroad-travel / [subject] / was the object of desire to do / because // businessman / or / interpreter / [goal] / let's become / [question] / [quotation] / thought / but /// finally / [adverbial] / actor / [goal] / became)*
- 12 So as a result, I can do, even if only once, all the jobs I've dreamt of from the time I was a child.  
*(so / if I did // one-time / even / child / [relation] / time / from / dream / [place] / saw / these / [relation] / profession / [goal] / all / join / fact of / be possible / because / it is)*



- ▶ cf. Lesson 64, note 4, and note 4 above). The past tense form is, then したかった (cf. Lesson 35, paragraph 3).
- ⑦ 高校, *high school*, an abbreviation of 高 (等学) 校. Literally: “High level school.”
- ⑧ …なるう か と 思いました, cf. Lesson 96, note 2. Here, the presence of か (which is always a grammatical particle meaning [question]), indicates a hesitancy: *I wondered if I wouldn't become...*

## Exercise 1

- ① 日本にほんの学年がくねんは四月しがつから始まりはじ、  
夏なつ休みやすはフランスよりみじか短みいです。  
② 昨日きのうは休みやすでしたから、子供達こどもたち  
と芝居しばいを見みに行いきましたが、  
子供達こどもたちはその芝居しばいに出でてくる  
熊くまがこわくて、泣ないてしまいました。  
③ だけど、こわくても、一生懸命いっしょうけんめい見みて  
いました。  
④ 熊くまなら、私わたしはこわくないよ。  
⑤ 大きおほくおほなったら、バスバスの運うん転てん手しゅ  
にになりなりたいよ。  
⑥ 僕ぼくが熊くまなら、人ひとに捕つかままえられらない  
ようように高たかい山やまに住すむよ。

\*\*\*

## Answers to Exercise 1

- ① In Japan the school year begins in April, and vacation is shorter than in France. ② Yesterday was a day off, so I went to the theatre with the kids, but because they were afraid of the bear who appeared in the play, they started crying. ③ However, even though they were afraid, they just kept watching as best they could. ④ A bear? I wouldn't be afraid... ⑤ When I grow up, I want to be a bus driver. ⑥ If I were a bear, I'd live on a tall mountain, so as not to get captured by people.

## Transcription

- ① nihon no gakunen wa shigatsu kara hajimari, natsu yasumi wa furansu yori mijikai desu. ② kinō wa yasumi deshita kara, kodomotachi to shibai o mi ni ikimashita ga, kodomotachi wa sono shibai ni dete kuru kuma ga kowakute, naite shimaimashita. ③ dakedo, kowakute mo, isshovenmei mite imashita. ④ kuma nara, watashi wa kowakunai yo. ⑤ ookiku nattara, basu no untenshu ni naritai yo. ⑥ boku ga kuma nara, hito ni tsukamaerarenai yō ni, takai yama ni sumu yo.



97 Exercise 2

...に<sup>ことば</sup>言葉<sup>い</sup>を入れなさい

- ① If I become an architect one day, I'll do as so not to build such horrid buildings.  
 ..... あんな .....  
 .....
- ② If we could meet Fukuzawa Yukichi, we could hear many exciting things about the Meiji era.  
 .....  
 はなし . きかせて .....  
 .....
- ③ When you meet Fujii, ask him the address of the doctor he recommended to me last time.  
 ..... この まえ .....  
 .....
- ④ When you started studying Japanese, you couldn't have imagined you would learn it so quickly.  
 ..... しはじめた ...、こんな に  
 .....

\*\*\*

かたかな れんしゅう  
**片仮名の練習**  
**Katakana Exercises**

There are certain syllables that, while quite common in a number of languages, do not exist at all in Japanese. It is therefore impossible to write them out in the katakana system based on hiragana, which we have studied up till now. So a few inventions have come along to make katakana accommodate these syllables. We'll take a look at each case.

1. SH + vowel. For **shi**, there's no problem: シ. For **sha, shu, sho**, we have the following: シヤ、シユ、シヨ. But **she**? There's no katakana **ye**, so we adapt: maintaining the same principle of a lower-case kana, we use the katakana for **e**: シエ.
2. T or D + vowel. For **ta(da), te(de), to(do)**, it's easy: we have the kana タ (ダ)、テ (デ)、ト (ド). And **tu(du)** can



- ⑤ With the Assimil method, we can learn with joy, quickly, that's why I recommend it highly.

.... たのしく、....、.....、...、...  
... ..

## Answers to Exercise 2

- ① わたくしがけんちくかになれば、- ひどいたてものはたてないようにします。
- ② ふくざわゆきちにあえれば、めいじじだいのいろいろなおもしろい-を-くれるでしょう。
- ③ ふじいさんにあったら、- しょうかいしてもらったいしゃのじゅうしょをきいてください。
- ④ にはんごをべんきょう-とき、- はやくおぼえられるとおもわなかったですね。
- ⑤ アシミルで-、はやく、おぼえられますから、ぜひおすすめます。

\*\*\*

be written approximately as ツ (ズ) . But what about **ti(di)**? Impossible? No, impossible is not Japanese. Again, we have two kana, with the second in lower case: **ti** テイ, and **di** デイ (sometimes just shortened to チ and ズ).

3. W + vowel. Here we really are limited. In Japanese, there's only a **wa** ワ. For the others, **wi**, **we**, **wo**... it's getting redundant, but we follow the same rules. For the *W* we take the kana ウ **u** and add a small イ, エ, or オ: **wi** ウイ, **we** ウエ, and **wo** ウオ. The syllable **wu** is usually written—roughly—as ブ.
4. As long as you're expecting the principle to continue, why let you down? We can even write:  
-a series of F + vowel, beginning with the katakana **fu** フ, and then adding the lower-case vowels, which give us **fa** ファ, **fi** フィ, **fe** フェ, **fo** フォ.  
-and there's even a way to write a series of V + vowel (except for **vu**, which is written ブ), using the katakana ウ with two dots added to it: ヴ = V and -you guessed it- the little vowels following give us **va** ヴァ, **vi** ヴィ, **ve** ヴェ, and **vo** ヴォ (on this last point convention has not quite been reached, and many people prefer to use the B series: **va** バ, **vi** ビ, **ve** ベ, **vo** ボ).

か と  
書き取り – Dictation

- ① wīn (Vienna [Wien]) ② chekku-in (check-in) ③ fashon (fashion) ④ bodī (body [of a camera]) ⑤ reveyion (New Year's Eve [réveillon]) ⑥ fōku (fork) ⑦ sentoraru-hītingu (central heating) ⑧ shēkusupia (Shakespeare) ⑨ kakuteru-pātī (cocktail party) ⑩ romantikku (romantic) ⑩ yū-fō (UFO)

98 だいきゅうじゅうはっ 第九十八課 か

まとめ

Revision and Notes

So here we are at our last pause, our last revision of the series! At this point, we should finally explain the Japanese title of these little chapters we call **Revision and Notes**.

まとめ is in fact a noun, related to the verb まとめる. This designates the act of stopping and reflecting on what one has been doing. This “pause” can take many forms: a review, a reorganization, a conclusion... It's a very nice word, and that's why we've chosen to use it here!

Now it would be nice –wouldn't it?– to take a nice long look at how we got here. And bravo! Your work and perserverance have paid off!

Looking back, there are a few little gaps we still have left to fill in. Don't worry, because we still have this lesson to let you in on the few remaining secrets. There come in all sizes, from little divots in the road to large canyons blocking passage. But we'll take care of it right away! Let's start with the smaller gaps.

- ① ウィーン ② チェック・イン ③ ファッション ④ ボディー  
 ⑤ レヴェイオン ⑥ フォーク ⑦ セントラル・ヒーティング  
 ⑧ シェークスピア ⑨ カクテル・パーティー ⑩ ロマンチック  
 ⑪ ユー・フォー

As you surely have noticed transcriptions of foreign words is one of the great treasures of current Japanese. You sometimes need a good deal of imagination to find the meaning hiding itself behind these katakana. But you must admit it, languages that give you this constant feeling of adventure and discovery are so rare!

## Second Wave: 第四十八課 (Lesson 48)

# Lesson Ninety-Eight 98

**1. Many of the most common words and expressions in daily life** are preceded by お, which we have translated either as [**familiarity**] or as [**politeness**], or else not translated at all, depending on the situation. Until Lesson 90, you will have noticed that sometimes we would leave a space between the お and the word, and sometimes we would not. In fact, it doesn't matter at all in actual writing, because "normal" Japanese texts are written without any spaces between the words, as you've seen (without too much difficulty, we hope) since Lesson 92. But here we'll try to sort it out for you:

- where お is fully integrated into the word or formula, where it is **inseparable**, and
- where the word preceded by お is **independent** and can be used without the お at all.

To take examples from our most recent lessons:

–**case no. 1:** Lesson 78, item 1, おめでとう ございます, item 3, お願ねがい しまたくす; Lesson 80, item 1, おほくほうる; Lesson 82, item 11, お宅; Lesson 85, items 5 and 11, お坊ぼさん; Lesson 86,

item 4, お久し降り. These formulas or words are incomplete without the お.

—**case no. 2:** Lesson 78, items 3 and 4, お世話, item 6, お辞儀, item 12, お見送り; Lesson 83, item 9, お邪魔; Lesson 85, items 2, 3, and 11, お寺; Lesson 86, item 6, お玄関, item 11, お食事; Lesson 88, item 1, お金, items 2, 3, 4, 6, and 8, お札; Lesson 89, item 7, お国, items 11 and 12, お団子; and the expressions where お is used to create a high-degree word: Lesson 86, items 4 and 7, お上がり下さい, item 13, お越し下さった, item 14, お訪ねして; Lesson 88, item 15, お読みになる, お勧めします.

**2.** Another small point concerns **adverbs**. In any language this can become a complex category, because of the number of adverbs and adverbial expressions that come from other grammatical areas, such as the English adjective + suffix “ly,” or preposition + noun... In Japanese we also have a number of diverse forms. All the same, keep in mind that **the vast majority of adverbs is only one word long**. Take, for example, Lesson 90. Here we find: item 1: ぜひ, *absolutely*; item 2: ずっと, *remarkably*, items 8 and 9: よほど, *well*; item 12: さっそく, *immediately*; item 13: ちょっと, *a bit*, まだ, *not yet*, and もっと, *more*.

In some cases, the adverb can be **made from a word (usually an adjective) followed by に**, for which we have listed in the word-for-word translation as [adverbial]: 一緒に, *together* (Lesson 50, item 3; Lesson 65, item 3; Lesson 71, item 4; Lesson 86, item 11; Lesson 87, item 4, Lesson 89, item 10; Lesson 92, item 2; Lesson 96, item 3), たまに, *rarely* (Lesson 73, item 9; Lesson 80, item 10), 特別に, *particularly* (Lesson 83, item 5; Lesson 88, item 13), 別に, *not particularly* (Lesson 83, item 7), 非常に, *extremely* (Lesson 50, item 7).

**Other adverbs**, whose special feature is finishing with the syllable **ri**, have a double use. Either the word is used alone (はつきり, 437 • yon byaku san jū shichi (nana)

clearly, Lesson 55, item 13; ゆっくり, *calmly, slowly*, Lesson 58, item 12; Lesson 86, item 8; すっかり, *completely*, Lesson 74, item 11), or else it is followed by と (the same ゆっくり: ゆっくりと Lesson 72, item 8; Lesson 89, item 4; しっかりと, *firmly*, Lesson 90, item 5), while the meaning remains the same.

3. In Lesson 59, note 4, there was a question about a pair of verbs: 直る/直す, the first being **intransitive**, which means that the act described refers only to the subject, and the second being **transitive**, where the act is carried out on another object or person: 直る, *to fix oneself, to heal*, 直す, *to repair something, to cure a sickness*. The only difference in the form is the R/S switch. There are other pairs with the same distinction: 残る intransitive, *to stay* (Lesson 45, item 6), 残す transitive *to leave something, to put it aside*; 戻る intransitive, *to retrace one's steps* (Lesson 32, item 13), 戻す transitive, *to replace, to replace something*; 通る, *to pass by a place* (Lesson 57, items 3, 4, and 6), 通す, *to make pass, to let something pass*; 渡る, *to cross* (Lesson 36, item 12), 渡す, *to make cross, to make pass, to give something* (Lesson 79, item 8).

With a change of the vowel on top of that, we have the pairs 起きる, *to get up, to rise* (Lesson 11, items 1, 2, and 6) and 起こす, *to raise, to awaken* (Lesson 72, item 10); 落ちる, *to fall* (Lesson 48, item 4), 落とす, *to make something fall, to drop something* (Lesson 73, item 3).

But the largest number of pairs we find –where the meanings are split the same way (one verb concerning only the subject, the other acting upon other objects or people)– is where the difference is between an A or an E before the final syllable **ru**. The intransitive verb ends in ARU and is, therefore, a multiple-root verb, while the transitive verb ends in **eru** and is a single-root verb.

上がる, *to stand, to get up, to go up* (Lesson 86, items 4 and 7), 上げる, *to raise something, to lift something*. 預かる, *to receive*

in trust (Lesson 90, item 4), 預ける, *to entrust* (Lesson 45, item 6). 集まる, *to gather together* (Lesson 47, item 11), 集める, *to gather, to collect (something)*. 当たる, *to correspond to* (Lesson 95, item 3), 当てる, *to make correspond, to apply*. 終わる, *to end* (Lesson 48, item 1), 終える, *to finish something*. 変わる, *to change, to transform oneself* (Lesson 41, item 7), 変える, *to modify, to change something*. かかる, *to be hung* (Lesson 31, item 7), かける, *to hang, to suspend* (Lesson 16, item 12). 決まる, *to become decided/fixed* (Lesson 27, item 2), 決める, *to decide on something* (Lesson 55, item 13). 静まる, *to become calm* (Lesson 85, item 2), 静める, *to appease, to calm someone*. たすかる, *to escape* (Lesson 20, item 11), たすける, *to save someone*. 泊まる, *to stay* (Lesson 57, item 9), 泊める, *to receive someone at one's home, to give hospitality to*. 止まる, *to stop oneself* (Lesson 68, item 1), 止める, *to stop someone or something*. 始まる, *to begin* (Lesson 92, item 15), 始める, *to begin something* (Lesson 47, item 7). みつかる, *to be found* (Lesson 24, item 1), みつける, *to find*.

But **be careful**: don't confuse them, and you cannot create your own **eru** verbs from any random **aru** verb, or vice versa. The Japanese language has enough, and it can't take any more!

**4.** Let's stay with verbs for a while longer and go over the **high degree verb forms** that we've learned since our last revision of high degree verbs (Lesson 70, paragraph 3. For the forms, cf. also Lesson 91, paragraph 2; and don't forget Lesson 49, paragraph 2 for a complete overview). As always, we separate the high degree verbs that go with YOU and S/HE from those that go with I (or those of my family).

—for YOU: おっしゃる/おっしゃいます, *to say, to be called*, equivalent of the verb 言う (cf. Lesson 93, item 4, exercise 1, items 2 and 3, exercise 2, item 2). 御存知です, *to know*, equivalent of the verb 知る (cf. Lesson 96, item 2, exercise 2, item 3).

–for I: *ございます* *to exist, there is*, equivalent of the verb *ある*, for objects that I possess (cf. Lesson 96, item 8, exercise 1, item 5). *いただく*, *to receive*, equivalent of the verb *もらう* (cf. Lesson 73, item 9; Lesson 96, item 13).

With these last four verbs plus the ones we already know, we have now covered all of the most common “high degree” verbs –all we have to do now is use them properly! No doubt you’ll succeed quite well, with a good sense of observation and your good training!

**5.** Here’s the biggest chunk left to fill in before advancing! After this revision chapter, and then Lesson 99, you will be ready to move on to the active phase for volume 2 just like you have been doing for volume 1. You will pass the stage of mere comprehension, and move forward to being fully assimilated into Japanese, which means that you will reach your capacity to use all of what you have learned! During the active phase, going over each Lesson again, we recommend that you be specially attentive to a point we have barely talked about until right now. We have held off until the end because we have ceaselessly been using these words throughout, and we haven’t wanted to interrupt the passive learning with too much emphasis. We’ll explain the point beginning with the examples from Volume 1, which by now you’re sure to know by heart. So this revision will focus on words and phrases that you already know well, without distracting you with other difficulties. So now that you’re well-armed, you can prolong your investigation into this matter throughout the active phase of Volume 2.

The issue is the **SYSTEM OF DEMONSTRATIVES**. That’s the great canyon in our road, and once we fill it in –with great will, as always!– the coast will be clear. **Demonstratives in Japanese are organized along three roots: こ, そ, and あ, from which adjectives, pronouns, and demonstrative adverbs are created.**

Let’s begin right away with *こ*. All terms derived from this root indicate **immediate reality, based on or relevant to ME, the speaker:**

98 objects, people, places, time. Thus the pronouns ここ (Lesson 5, item 8; Lesson 6, item 3; Lesson 40, items 3 and 5; Lesson 46, items 10 and 11) *here*, which is “the place where I exist, the place that I touch or where I put a finger to present to you.” こちら, *of this side here*, means “the direction that I show to you” (cf. Lesson 40, item 4). これ, *this one* means “the object that I hold, which is near ME, the thing that concerns MY mind and which I present to you” (Lesson 22, item 3; Lesson 33, items 2 and 4). For the adjectives: この + noun “this” + noun. This is an object that I hold or that is close to ME (Lesson 18, item 10; Lesson 19, items 1 and 2; Lesson 31, items 9 and 11); the time when I live (Lesson 19, item 13); the place where I exist (Lesson 20, items 1 and 7, Lesson 48, item 3); something that occupies MY mind (Lesson 41, item 13). こんな is more specialized, meaning *of this sort, in this way*, but more specifically, *the way that I show you, that I explain to you, that occupies MY mind* (cf. Lesson 45, item 13; Lesson 48, item 10).

These pronouns and adjectives help construct a great number of expressions, all of which concern time or manner. For time: これから, literally: “from this,” where これ is the moment that I live, thus: *from now* (cf. Lesson 40, item 2); このあいだ, literally: “this interval in which I exist,” thus: *recently, just the other day* (cf. Lesson 31, item 10; Lesson 41, item 10); and このごろ, *this moment, this time* (cf. Lesson 46, item 4). As for manner: こんな に, *as I certify* (cf. Lesson 39, item 4).

The rule, then, is: for everything made up of こ, the reference is “I” the speaker.

For そ, on the contrary, the compounds express **a reality with connections to both of YOU and ME in common, which we are talking about together**; the most common of these compounds has to do with **something just said** by YOU or ME (in the form of a



word, phrase, or many phrases, of what we just said), and which we both know. Less frequently, it designates a **present reality** (place, object) considered **close to both of us**. Let's first take a look at examples of the most common usage, or those phrases where *そ* has to do with something just said.

Pronouns: *そこ*, "there, the place of which we were just speaking": take Lesson 6, item 6. *そこ* refers to the place mentioned in item 4, "Meguro station." Lesson 27, item 5, *そこ* refers, similarly, to "the Hakozaki terminal" of the above phrase. Lesson 30, item 4, *そこ* refers to "Ooshima" mentioned two sentences earlier and explained in the preceding (same for item 5). Lesson 31, item 2, *そこ* refers to "Mitsukoshi," listed earlier in the same phrase. Lesson 43, item 8, *そこ* refers to "the moon," cited in the previous sentence. Another pronoun functions in exactly the same way: *それ* means *what we were just talking about* (cf. Lesson 4, item 7; Lesson 16, item 6 where *それ* refers to what was said from item 3; Lesson 19, item 12; Lesson 23, items 5, 8, and 11; Lesson 24, item 4 and 10; Lesson 26, item 10; Lesson 27, item 11; Lesson 31, item 4 and 8; Lesson 32, item 12; Lesson 43, item 6; Lesson 46, item 3).

In this series, we come across an adverb employed nearly every where, it seems: *そう*, *so, as we have just said*. This is the *そう* of *そう* です: *so it is, it's as we have just mentioned* (cf. Lesson 2, item 6; Lesson 5, item 10; Lesson 9, item 6; Lesson 10, item 4, Lesson 12, item 12; Lesson 17, item 10; Lesson 23, item 4; Lesson 27, item 8; Lesson 36, item 2; Lesson 41, item 7; Lesson 44, item 9). cf. also Lesson 26, item 12; Lesson 36, item 6; Lesson 48, item 12. Adjective: *その* + noun "this..., which refers to what we were saying." cf. Lesson 20, item 10, where *その* stands for *大きい 本屋* of the preceding phrase; Lesson 30, item 8 where *その* takes the place of *六時半* of the above phrase (cf. also item 12); Lesson 31, item 8 where *その* refers to *タオル* of the preceding sentence; Lesson 37, item 8; Lesson 39, item 13; Lesson 47, item 12.

98 The necessity in conversation to recall what was just said explains why *そ* is part of so many adverbial expressions. In order of frequency: *それでは*, *this (of which we're speaking) being* (Lesson 3, item 11; Lesson 18, items 10 and 13; Lesson 19, item 13; Lesson 20, item 14; Lesson 27, item 14; Lesson 44, item 13; Lesson 45, item 4). *それから*, *from the moment of which we speak, then, following* (Lesson 6, item 7; Lesson 18, item 6; Lesson 20, item 8; Lesson 29, item 2; Lesson 39, item 6). *それに*, *what's more (of which we were just speaking)* (Lesson 26, item 9; Lesson 32, items 5 and 10; Lesson 34, item 12; Lesson 36, item 2; Lesson 45, item 11). *それなら*, *if that's so, if it's as we just said* (Lesson 11, item 9; Lesson 29, item 4; Lesson 43, item 12). *そんな に*, *of the manner that we think, of the manner that we just explained* (Lesson 20, item 4; Lesson 34, item 14; Lesson 36, item 5). *それでも*, *despite what we just said* (Lesson 11, item 7; Lesson 37, item 3). *それで*, *so, in the conditions of which we were just speaking* (Lesson 32, item 13; Lesson 46, item 5). *それとも*, *other than what we were just saying* (Lesson 29, item 9). *それほど*, *in the degree of which we were just speaking* (Lesson 24, item 12). *そのご*, *after the moment of which we were just speaking, since* (Lesson 23, item 12). *そのまま*, *in the state of which we were just speaking, as such* (Lesson 32, item 13).

As for when the compounds of *そ* refer to a reality relevant to both of US together, there are only a few examples, and they are truly used only sparingly: *そこ* Lesson 29, item 6; *その* Lesson 17, items 1 and 3; Lesson 46, item 9.

For the final radical, *あ*, which expresses place, we can only find one example in Volume 1 of such a compound: *あそこ* (Lesson 1, item 5; Lesson 12, item 3; Lesson 31, item 7), which implies a **location distant from ME the speaker**: *over there*.

Going over each Lesson of Volume 2 in the active phase, pay special attention to demonstrative words. You will come across new ones, but they will follow the same principles as what we have just covered. The derivations of **こ** designate an immediate reality, in relation to ME the speaker. The only new term is **これら**, in the formula **これらの + noun**, which is something of a plural version of **この**, in case of ambiguity. So, too, with Lesson 97, item 12, where **この 職業** appeared, which we could understand as reference to the last profession mentioned. But here it refers to the all of the professions listed, in plural, as in “these professions.” cf. also Lesson 99, item 15. The derivations of **そ** express a reality which is common to US: **そちら**, *this direction in which WE are both going* (cf. Lesson 96, item 11). **そんな**, *the manner of which WE are speaking* (cf. Lesson 68, exercise 1, item 1; Lesson 76, item 11; Lesson 87, item 13; Lesson 90, item 13).

Let’s spend a bit longer on the derivations from **あ**, which come up more frequently in Volume 2. They express a **reality distant from ME the speaker. This distance is either natural –as in, fact** (cf. **あそこ**) **or voluntary, which means that I want to create the distance with which I speak.**

Remember the first case: natural distance: **あちら**, *from that side, in that direction, away from me* (cf. Lesson 78, item 10; Lesson 96, item 11). **あの + noun** “this” + noun “over there” (cf. Lesson 52, item 1). **あれ**, *that there* (cf. Lesson 52, items 2 and 3). In all these items, the derivation of **あ** designates a place or an object physically separated from ME the speaker. Look now at some other examples: this time, the distance is not physical. I the speaker want to express an implied distance between this object (or person) and myself, due to a feeling in that direction, from anger to misunderstanding, from regret to nostalgia... **あの + noun** “this + noun” in item 13 of Lesson 73: **あの 旅行** suggests a voyage that I keep hearing about over and over again. **あれ** in Lesson 79, item 5: *that*, I’m furious with that

- 99 labyrinthine station. あんな, in Lesson 94, exercise 1, item 3: *in that way*, I don't like the apartment, it scares me. あいつ, *that person*, Lesson 72, items 2, 5, and 8; Lesson 73, item 12; in these two instances, someone is the source of my displeasure.

The derivatives of these three radicals こ, そ, and あ are very important. They are used constantly, and they are terms that allow the speaker to express the specific links, whether subjectively or objectively, between me and the reality surrounding me. Because of this, they can be a bit difficult to master. But then, with good observation skills and a bit of common sense, you'll get the hang of it before long at all.

---

だい きゅうじゅうきゅう か  
99 第九十九課

さい ご  
最後に

- 1 – よく日本語はむずかしいと言われて  
いますが、あなたは正直言<sup>しやうじきい</sup>って、どう  
おも<sup>おも</sup>いますか。①
- 2 アシミルのおかげで日本語を「無理  
なく」覚<sup>おぼ</sup>えたでしょう。②

### Transcription

#### saigo ni

- 1 – yoku nihongo wa muzukashii to iwarete imasu ga, anata wa shōjiki itte, dō omoimasu ka.  
2 ashimiru no o kage de nihongo o “muri naku” oboeta deshō.

### Notes

- ① 言<sup>い</sup>われて います, cf. Lesson 84, paragraph 2. ▶

And so there you are: the gaps in the road are all filled in, and now you can travel along without running into any potholes! You're ready for the active phase of Volume 2.

After that, you'll improve your sense of the Japanese writing system. Hiragana and katakana are no longer obstacles for you, so all that's left are the **Chinese characters** (漢字). These might take some time to master, so we've given an entire volume for you to play with. But don't wait up: jump right into **Writing Japanese with Ease!**

**Second Wave: 第四十九課 (Lesson 49)**

## Lesson Ninety-Nine 99

### To Finish

(last / [adverbial])

- 1 – They often say that Japanese is difficult, but what do you really think?

(often / Japanese language / [announce] / be difficult / [quotation] / be said / but /// you / [announce] / honestly / say // how / think / [question])

- 2 Thanks to Assimil, you have learned it “with ease.”

(Assimil / [relation] / thanks to / Japanese language / [object] / “without pain” / learned / that must be)

- ▶ ② でしょう, cf. Lesson 55, note 4. We often use でしょう in this Lesson (items 3, 4, 5, and 8), because even though we completely believe –thanks to the excellent designs of this series– that you have learned Japanese “with ease” (item 2), that you can speak, read, and write the syllabaries (item 3), that it was exciting (item 4), that you have learned a lot about Japan (item 5) and even learned a large number of kanji (item 8)... we still cannot affirm this in your place. And so we have to use でしょう, over and over again.

- 3 <sup>いま</sup>今は<sup>はな</sup>話す<sup>こと</sup>ことも、<sup>ひらがな</sup>平仮名と<sup>かたかな</sup>万仮名を  
<sup>よ</sup>読む<sup>こと</sup>ことも<sup>か</sup>書く<sup>こと</sup>こともできるでしょう。
- 4 ね！すばらしいでしょう。それに  
<sup>おもしろ</sup>面白いでしょう。
- 5 その<sup>うえ</sup>上、<sup>こと</sup>言葉<sup>ば</sup>だけでなく、<sup>にほん</sup>日本に  
 ついてもいろいろな<sup>こと</sup>事がわかるよう  
 になったでしょう。③
- 6 ですから<sup>いま</sup>今<sup>こと</sup>ここでやめてはいけません。  
 まだ<sup>べんきょう</sup>勉強<sup>こと</sup>する<sup>こと</sup>事がたくさんあります。④

## Transcription

- 3 ima wa hanasu koto mo, hiragana to katakana o yomu koto mo kaku koto mo dekiru deshō.
- 4 ne! subarashii deshō. soreni omoshiroi deshō.
- 5 sono ue, kotoba dake de naku, nihon ni tsuite mo iroiro na koto ga waku yō ni natta deshō.
- 6 desukara ima koko de yamete wa ikemasen. mada benkyō suru koto ga takusan arimasu.

## Notes

- ③ This word <sup>こと</sup> is a bit delicate. We've already seen it in two uses. The normal function is as a noun, where <sup>こと</sup> means *one thing* or *things*, when it is a "thing not apprehensible by the senses." In another function, <sup>こと</sup> becomes a sort of fixed word, allowing a verb to function as a noun (like our gerunds); in this case, we've translated it as *fact of*. In modern Japanese, whenever an element of the language is grammatically fixed like this, it is written in hiragana. We have preserved the kanji (事) for the instances where the word keeps its original meaning. That's what we have practiced here, so you will find two ways of writing the same word in the same sentence (cf. items 11 and 14) where <sup>こと</sup> is used in both its functions. For よう に, cf. Lesson 91, paragraph 5. ▶

- 3 From now on you can speak, read, and write hiragana and katakana.  
*(now / [emphasis] / speak / fact of / also / hiragana / and / katakana / [object] / read / fact of / also / write / fact of / also / be possible / that must be)*
- 4 Fantastic, isn't it? And exciting too...  
*([agreement]) (be magnificent / that must be) (what's more / be interesting / that must be)*
- 5 Besides, not only, you have learned the language, but also many things about Japan.  
*(by above / language / only / it's not // Japan / about / also / of all kinds / it is / thing / [subject] / be understandable / so that / became / that must be)*
- 6 So you must not stop now! There is still a lot left to do.  
*(so / now / here / [place] / must not stop) (still / study-do / thing / [subject] / many / exist)*



- ▶ ④ やめては いけません, cf. Lesson 77, paragraph 4 and Lesson 80, note 2. We have seen formulas where the second part is *ならない* or *なりません* or *いけない* or *いけません*, which express *must*. These formulas are actually double-negatives. For example: *書かなければ いけません*, *must write*, is literally: “if I do not write, that will not work.” So how do we say “must not write”? In English, we add the negation, but in Japanese, we take one away – the first one: *if I do write, that will not work*, *書いて は いけません (なりません)*. From *やめる*, *to stop, to cease*: *I must stop*, *やめなければ いけません (なりません)*. *I (you) must not stop*, *やめて は いけません (なりません)*

- 7 まず、毎日、規則正しく復習をして  
下さい。この二冊目のレッスンを  
ひとつずつやりなおすのです。カセット  
を聞いて、テキストを暗記するくらい  
勉強して下さい。⑤⑥⑦⑧
- 8 ところで、まだ漢字が残っていますね。  
でももうどれがどの字か見ればわかるで  
しょう。

## Transcription

- 7 mazu, mainichi, kisoku tadashiku fukushū o shite kudasai.  
kono ni satsu me no ressun o hitotsu zutsu yarinaosu no desu.  
kasetto o kiite, tekisuto o anki suru kurai benkyō shite kudasai.
- 8 tokoro de, mada kanji ga nokotte imasu ne. demo mō dore  
ga dono ji ka mireba wakarū deshō.

## Notes

- ⑤ For numbers such as first, second, third, etc., there are two possibilities: 第 + number + noun (cf. number of each lesson), or else: number + noun + 目. And sometimes, you can even combine the two: 第 + number + noun + 目.
- ⑥ やりなおす, a verb composed of やる, *to do*, and なおす, *to repair*. なおす is used as the second element of a compound verb to indicate that the same action has been re-begun: *to do again, to do anew, re-do*.
- ⑦ We know くらい or ぐらい, after a number or expression of quantity (cf. Lesson 46, item 13; Lesson 47, item 11; Lesson 57, item 8; Lesson 92, item 15), or else after an interrogative word (cf. Lesson 25, item 13; Lesson 34, item 10; Lesson 47, item 6). ▶



- 7 First, you should follow the Second Wave, every day, regularly. Go over each Lesson of the second volume again, one after another. Listen to the cassettes, know the texts by heart. (first / every day / regularly / revision / [object] / do) (this-here / two-printed object-th / [relation] / Lesson / [object] / one-each / do anew / it's that) (cassette / [object] / listen // text / [object] / memorize-do / to the point of / study-do)
- 8 And then, there are the kanji. But you can already recognize a lot of them. (then / again / Chinese character / [subject] / remain / [agreement]) (but / already / which / [subject] / which / character / [question] / if one looks / be comprehensible / that must be)

次に大切な事は続けることです。



- ▶ In this case, it means *almost*. Here, くらい (never ぐらい) follows a verb. It means: *at the point of*. We've seen another example like this in Lesson 89, item 3. The same works when following an adjective; cf. Lesson 60, item 10: 寒<sup>ひや</sup>いくらい, literally: "at the point that it is cold," or more colloquially: "almost cold."
- ⑧ Tapes, Cds, Cdroms... There is no way you can stop technical progress! The recorded dialogues reach your ears through different media. And you probably have not seen the end of it yet! Remember that what is essential, as we keep saying throughout this lesson, is to study regularly, to revise, to re-read, to re-listen to the dialogues. It is the only way for you to assimilate the Japanese structures that will enable you to talk and express yourself the way you wish. To cut a long story short: be all ears!

- 9 漢字ぬきの日本語は片足で歩こうと  
 するよなものです。⑨
- 10 大丈夫ですよ、三冊目の漢字の本を  
 一緒に勉強しましょう。ゆっくりと、  
 無理なく、しかし完璧に。
- 11 外国語を会得するのは、何語であっても、  
 時間がかかります。一番大切な事は、ま  
 ず、始めることです。
- 12 日本に大変面白い諺があります。  
 「千里の行も一歩より始まる」。⑩

## Transcription

- 9 kanji nuki no nihongo wa kataashi de arukō to suru yō na mono desu.
- 10 daijōbu desu yo. san satsu me no kanji no hon o issho ni benkyō shimashō. yukkuri to, muri naku, shikashi kanpeki ni.
- 11 gaikokugo o etoku suru no wa, nani go de ate mo, jikan ga kakarimasu. ichiban taisetsu na koto wa, mazu, hajimeru koto desu.
- 12 nihon ni taihen omoshiroi kotowaza ga arimasu. "sen ri no kō mo ippo yori hajimaru."

## Notes

- ⑨ The ō form, cf. Lesson 75, note 1. A verb in this form + と する is the equivalent of *to attempt to*, *to try to*. よう な, cf. Lesson 91, paragraph 5. ▶

- 9 Japanese without kanji is like trying to walk with only one foot.  
*(Chinese character-without / [relation] / Japanese language / [announce] / only one foot / [means] / let's walk / [quotation] / do / alike / it is / thing / it is)*
- 10 But don't worry about it! We'll continue working together for the third volume, "Writing." We'll learn kanji with ease, slowly but surely.  
*(no problem / it is / [engagement]) (three-printed object-th / [apposition] / Chinese character / [relation] / book / [object] / together / [adverbial] / study-let's do) (slowly / without pain / but / perfect / [adverbial])*
- 11 Learning a foreign language, whichever it may be, takes time. The first most important thing is to get started.  
*(foreign language / [object] / comprehension-do / fact of / [announce] / whatever language it may be / time / [object] / be used) (the most / important / it is / thing / [announce] / begin / fact of / it is)*
- 12 There is a great proverb in Japan: "Even a journey of a thousand miles must begin with one step."  
*(Japan / [place] / extremely / be interesting / proverb / [subject] / exist) (thousand-mile / [relation] / walk / also / one-step / from / begin)*



- ▶ ⑩ In modern Japanese, より is used almost exclusively for comparing two or more objects (cf. Lesson 19, item 11; Lesson 47, exercise 1, item 1; Lesson 61, item 9 and exercise 1, item 5; Lesson 71, exercise 2, item 1; Lesson 76, item 10). There remain traces of Classical Japanese, however, where より was the equivalent of から, from. This is the case in pre-formed formulas, such as in proverbs.

- 13 一歩一歩、かなり進みましたね。  
 14 次に大切な事は続けることです。  
 15 そのためにはこれらのアシミルの本はあなた  
 の好伴侶にならなくてはなりません。  
 何度でもレッスンを勉強しなおして  
 下さい。問題も書き取りもやりなおして  
 下さい。話す機械を自分からどんどん  
 作って下さい。あなたならできますよ。⑥⑪⑫  
 16 ではがんばって、続けて下さい。  
 さようなら。

## Transcription

- 13 ippo ippo, kanari susumimashita ne.  
 14 tsugi ni taisetsu na koto wa tsuzukeru koto desu.  
 15 sono tame ni wa korera no ashimiru no hon wa anata no  
 kōhanryo ni naranakute wa narimasen. nan do demo ressun  
 o benkyō shinaoshite kudasai. mondai mo kakitori mo  
 yarinaoshite kudasai. hanasu kikai o jibun kara dondon  
 tsukutte kudasai. anata nara dekimasu yo.  
 16 dewa ganbatte, tsuzukete kudasai. sayōnara.

\*\*\*

- 13 One step after the other, we have made progress!  
*(one step-one step / sufficiently / progressed / [agreement])*
- 14 The second most important thing is to continue.  
*(next / [adverbial] / important / it is / thing / [announce] / continue / fact of / it is)*
- 15 For that your two Assimil volumes should remain your trusty companions. You'll come back to the lessons often. You'll refer to the exercises and dictations. You'll create more and more opportunities to speak on your own. You'll prove completely capable on your own!  
*(this/goal/[goal]/[emphasis]/these-here/[relation]/Assimil/[apposition]/book/[announce]/you/[relation]/trusty-companion/[goal]/it must become) (an indeterminate number of times / Lesson / [object] / study-do anew) (exercise / also / dictation / also / do anew) (speak / chance / [object] / yourself / from / freely / create) (you / if it is // be possible / [engagement])*
- 16 Good luck for the following! Goodbye!  
*(so / hold well // continue) (good bye)*

## Notes

- ⑪ ならなくて は なりません Always with the “must”! In the formula we just practiced (cf. Lesson 77, paragraph 4 and Lesson 80, note 2), the first part ends in なければ. We can replace that with another form (still negative), ending in なくて は: *must become*: ならなければ なりません or ならなくて は なりません.
- ⑫ どんどん cf. Lesson 64, note 5.

\*\*\*

Exercise 1

- ① 書き取り を もう 一度 読みなおして  
下さい。間違い が あったら、書き  
なおして 下さい。
- ② どこでも 売って います。
- ③ どこ へ 行って も 買えます。
- ④ いくら に なって も 買います。
- ⑤ だれ に でも できる スポーツ です。
- ⑥ だれ が 来て も、お父さんは  
留守 だ と 言い なさい。
- ⑦ どうでも かまいません。

\*\*\*

Exercise 2

...に 言葉 を 入れ なさい

- ① Must hurry. Must choose. Must not be late. Must give it back.  
Must think it through.  
.....  
.....
- ② Must not speak loudly in a room with sick people.  
びょうにん . . . . .  
.....
- ③ Must not lend to others what one has borrowed from someone else.  
. . . . . また . . . . .



# Appendix I

## Transcription of answers to Exercise 2

### Lesson 85

1. ima demo tōkyō de yoku kaji ga okoru to iwarete imasu ga, sore wa hontō desu ka. 2. sobo wa sen happyaku kyūjū kyū nen jūnigatsu sanjū ichi nichi ni umaremashita. 3. aru sakka ga o tera ni hi o tsuketa obōsan no hanashi o shōsetsu ni shimashita. 4. bijutsukan o kengaku suru tsumori de, ueno ni ikimashita ga, kankōkyaku ga oozei narande ite, boku mo matte iru jikan ga nakatta node, hairemasen deshita.

### Lesson 86

1. – itsu irasshaimasu ka. – kitto saraishū mairimasu. 2. – go shujin no soba ni suwatte iru kata wa donata desu ka. oigosan de irasshaimasu ka. – hai oi desu. 3. hito no namae o oboerarenai kara, totemo komarimasu. 4. akita no oba o tazuneru tsumori de kuruma de ikimashita ga, tochū de kuruma ga koshō shite, akita made ikenaku natte, kisha de modoru koto ni narimashita. 5. – matsumoto san, denwa yo. onesan yo. – a. ane. dōmo. moshi moshi.

### Lesson 87

1. goran no toori, bokutachi no kōjō wa ima abunai jōtai desu. 2. mae ni itta yō ni, watashitachi no kaisha no jōtai wa kyonen kara hijō ni yoku narimashita. 3. tonari no denkiyasan wa, obotchan ga ongakka ni naru yō ni, maiban ichijikan kurashikku ongaku o kikasete imasu. obotchan ga kawaiō desu ne. 4. ani no aru chijin wa issen man en no zeikin o harau sō desu. o kanemochi desu ne. urayamashii. boku mo zeikin o takusan haraitai naa.



## Lesson 88

1. – abunai yo. ki o tsukete. – iya, eda ga jōbu da kara, daijōbu da. 2. mukashi atsumete ita furui kuruma wa sandai shika nokotte imasen. basho ga nai kara, hoka no wa minna utte shimaimashita. 3. kono furui reizōko wa mō sugu koshō shi sō desu kara, atarashii no o kau yō o susume shimasu. 4. meiji jidai no yūmei na shisōka de aru fukuzawa yukichi wa, meiji ishin no mae ni, yōroppa o ryokō shite, furansu de saisho no nihongo no sensei ni aimashita.

## Lesson 89

1. hana o minagara, o sake o nondari, uta o utattari, tanka o yondari, hanashi o shitari shite imasu. 2. ichiban hayaku mankai ni naru no wa, kōkyo no soba ni aru sakura desu. 3. maishū ni san kai toshokan e itte, hon o karimasu. toshokan wa uchi kara chikai node, totemo benri desu. 4. kotoshi no natsu wa atsui desu ne. yoru ni nattemo, sukoshi mo suzushiku naranai no desu. 5. kankō ryokō o shite, bijutsukan e iku yori oishii resutoran o motomeru koto wa “hana yori dango” to iemasu.

## Lesson 90

1. musuko ni doitsugo o hayaku oboesaseta hō ga ii deshō ne. rainen kara doitsu ni sumu yotei da kara desu. 2. niku ga kirai na kodomo ni niku o tabesaseru no wa taihen desu. 3. – michika chan wa ima nannensei desu ka. – shōgakkō rokunensei desu ga, shigatsu kara chūgakkō ichinensei ni narimasu. (nihon de wa gakunen wa shigatsu kara hajimarimasu.) 4. kono tēburu wa yūjin ni tsukutte moraimashita. 5. kono tēburu wa yūjin ga tsukutte kuremashita.

## Lesson 92

1. sonna futsū no mono nara, dokodemo utte imasu yo. 2. kyōiku terebi no bangumi wa naiyō ga hōfu de, iroiro na benkyō ga dekimasu. shakaigaku no benkyō o shitari, kagaku no kōza o kiitari, gakkī no renshū mo shitari dekiru no desu. 3. mina san ni mo yoroshiku. 4. ano o isha san wa rippa na kata de, donna byōki demo naoseru sō desu.

## Lesson 93

1. chotto matte, ima sugu tetsudatte agemasu yo. 2. “raishū no kayōbi wa ensoku da” to sensei ga osshatta toki, ureshikute, ureshikute, odoriagaru hodo deshita. 3. shinpai shinaide kudasai. watakushi ga zenbu haratte oite agemashita. 4. oji wa hontō ni ii hito desu. hoteru no kanjō mo zenbu haratte oite kuremashita. 5. samuku naranai uchi ni sanpo ni demashō yo.

## Lesson 94

1. kiku. kiita. kikitai. nomu. nonda. nomitai. oyogu. oyoida. oyogitai. iu. itta. iitai. au. atta. aitai. katsu. katta. kachitai. tsukuru. tsukutta. tsukuritai. iku. itta. ikitai. watasu. watashita. watashitai. 2. itsu sōridaijin ni o ai ni narimashita ka. 3. fukeikai no toki hajimete atta atarashii rika no sensei wa sugoku kibishii mitai desu ne. 4. boku no tokei wa ichinichi ni san jup pun mo susunde shimau node, totemo komatte imasu. dekirudake hayaku naoshite moraitai no desu ga, itsu made ni dekiru deshō ka.

## Lesson 95

1. gannen to wa, sono nengō no saisho no toshi no koto desu. 2. shōwa gannen wa seireki no sen kyūhyaku nijū roku ni atarimasu. 3. ima kara nihon no nengō ni tsuite setsumei shite agemashō. 4. nihonjin no tomodachi ga nengō no koto o setsumei shite kuremashita ga, watashi wa sansū ga chittomo dekinai hito desu kara, zenzen wakarimasen deshita. 5. kesa no nyūsu ni yoru to, igirisu no shushō wa kugatsu ni chūgoku ni iku tsumori da to iu koto desu.

## Lesson 96

1. nakaseru. kosaseru. kakaseru. warawaseru. kawaseru. dasaseru. nomaseru. kangaesaseru. 2. kuroi no wa urikitte shimaimashita. chairo no shika nokotte imasen. 3. jon dosu passosu to iu sakka o go zonji deshō. 4. hai. nihon no shuppansha kara tanomarete, sono sakuhin o nihongo ni yakusō to omotte imasu. 5. keredomo itsu made ni sono yaku ga dekiagaru ka wakarimasen. 6. raigetsu kara hajimetara, rainen no owari goro made ni wa dekiagaru to omowaremasu.

## Lesson 97

1. watakushi ga kenchikuka ni nareba, anna hidoi tatemono wa tatenai yō ni shimasu. 2. fukuzawa yukichi ni aereba, meiji jidai no iroiro na omoshiroi hanashi o kikasete kureru deshō. 3. fujii san ni attara, kono mae shōkai shite moratta isha no jūsho o kiite kudasai. 4. nihongo o benkyō shihajimeta toki, konna ni hayaku oboerareru to wa omowanakatta desu ne. 5. ashimiru de tanoshiku, hayaku, oboeraremasu kara, zehi o susume shimasu.

## Lesson 99

1. isoganakereba narimasen. erabanakereba narimasen. okurete wa ikemasen. kaesanakereba narimasen. yoku kangaenakereba ikemasen. 2. byōnin no iru heya de wa ooki na koe de hanashite wa ikemasen. 3. hito kara karita mono o mata betsu no hito ni kashite wa ikemasen. 4. deyō to shita toki, kasa o wasureta koto ni ki ga tsukimashita. 5. koronda kodoma wa nakō to shimashita ga, mawari ni daremo inakatta node, yamemashita.



## Appendix II

### Index

For each word listed in the index, you will find two numbers. The first one refers to the lesson where you first encountered this word, and the second one refers to the phrase in which it appeared for the first time (volumes 1 and 2).

When a word is listed with a series of several numbers, these refer to lessons with notes giving further explanations.

Yet this glossary is quite different from that of the first volume. Don't take it too hard if we ask you for a bit more effort! You'll be rewarded for all your extra work!

The main thing here is that the romanization has been phased out. Japanese words are only written with *Hiragana*; words borrowed from West foreign languages are written with *Katakana*. Fair enough, since you can read both! Thus the alphabetization is a bit different from the one in the first volume.

Let's go back to the syllabic alphabet. Refer to pages 333 and 334 in Volume 1. As you have already noticed, the writing of a great deal of syllables is really close, except for two dots on the right of the *Kana* (or for a small circle for the *P* series): *ka* か, *ga* が; *ki* き, *gi* ぎ ... *sa* さ, *za* ざ; *shi* し, *ji* じ, etc.

In the table of syllables, we put those syllable pairs in the same square, without separating them with a vertical stroke. That was because the syllabic alphabet order doesn't focus on those dots and circles; rather, it lists the words according to the *Kana* 'by itself' without any dots. Open your glossary and refer to the け heading. If we read the words according to the transcription, we find: ... *kei*, then *keizai*, then *keisatsukan*, then *geihinkan*, ... *keiyu*, then *geki*, *kesa*, *keshiki*, then *genkan*, *genki*, *kenkyū*, *genkō*, *genjitsuteki*, then *gendai*, *kenchikuka*, *kenbutsu*, *kenpō*. But however, all these words start with the same hiragana: け with or without the dots. Remember that when two words are written the same except for

the dots, the word without any dot is listed first. See the beginning of the し heading. See also かつこう that stands before がっこう; こうこう that stands before こうごう; じき before じぎ; ため before だめ.

In volume 1 since the words were listed according to their transcription, it was a bit tricky mixing the ks with the gs. Thus we had chosen to part them, as if we read the Kana table, a column after the other: KA, KI, KU, KE, KO, then GA, GI, GU, GE, SA, SHI, SU, SE, SO, then ZA, JI, ZU, ZE, ZO, etc. In volume 2, it is as if we took one square after the other: か/が, then き/ぎ, then く/ぐ, then け/げ, then こ/ご.

It will require a bit of an effort early on, but you'll see the benefit soon enough. With the index in the first volume you have already learned the kana order. Now, if you manage with this glossary index, then you will definitely be able to cope with any instance of Japanese alphabetization, such as: bilingual Japanese-English dictionaries (see bibliography), but also any other dictionary, telephone books, all sorts of indices (list of names, bibliography of scientific books, etc.). So a small effort compared to the payoff, eh?

Last remark: as we promised, we mention in the glossary the category to which the listed verbs belong. It's really simple: verbs on which the last syllable RU is underlined are single root verbs, and other verbs have multiple roots.

#### Abbreviations used in this Index:

|       |                   |
|-------|-------------------|
| intro | introduction      |
| par.  | paragraph         |
| ex.   | exercise          |
| sthg  | something         |
| sb    | somebody, someone |

## あ

|             |       |                                 |                 |
|-------------|-------|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| あ           | ..... | Ah! ( <i>astonishment</i> )     | 50.9            |
| ああ          | ..... | Ah! ( <i>acquiescence</i> )     | 52.2            |
| あいきょう (愛嬌)  | ..... | charm                           | 39.8            |
| あいさつ (挨拶)   | ..... | greeting                        | 68.10           |
| アイス・クリーム    | ..... | ice cream                       | 54.11           |
| あいだ (間)     | ..... | interval                        | 37.5            |
| あいだ (間) に   | ..... | while                           | 62.7            |
| あいつ         | ..... | he ( <i>low degree</i> )        | 72.2, 98. par.5 |
| あう (会う)     | ..... | to meet                         | 23.10           |
| あう (合う)     | ..... | to get on well                  | 71.2            |
| あおい (青い)    | ..... | to be blue ( <i>or green</i> )  | 31.7            |
| あおやま (青山)   | ..... | AOYAMA ( <i>place name</i> )    | 34.1            |
| あかい (赤い)    | ..... | to be red                       | 31.7            |
| あがる (上がる)   | ..... | to go up                        | 86.4            |
| あかるい (明るい)  | ..... | to be clear/light/bright        | 94.8            |
| あき (秋)      | ..... | autumn                          | 48. title       |
| あきた (秋田)    | ..... | AKITA ( <i>place name</i> )     | 37.1            |
| あきらめる       | ..... | to abandon/give up              | 34.14           |
| あく (開く)     | ..... | to open                         | 60.8            |
| あげる         | ..... | I do for you                    | 93.2            |
| あさ (朝)      | ..... | morning                         | 11. title       |
| あさくさ (浅草)   | ..... | ASAKUSA ( <i>place name</i> )   | 82.8            |
| あさって        | ..... | the day after tomorrow          | 43.1            |
| あさひ (朝日)    | ..... | sunrise                         | 30.9            |
| あし (足)      | ..... | foot/leg                        | 40.4            |
| あじ (味)      | ..... | flavor                          | 75.11           |
| あしおと (足音)   | ..... | sound of footstep               | 48.2            |
| あした (明日)    | ..... | tomorrow                        | 2.7             |
| アシミル        | ..... | ASSIMIL                         | 99.2            |
| あじわう (味わう)  | ..... | to taste                        | 85.9            |
| あずかる (預かる)  | ..... | to be entrusted with            | 90.4            |
| あずける (預ける)  | ..... | to entrust/deposit              | 45.6            |
| あそこ         | ..... | over there                      | 1.5, 98. par.5  |
| あそぶ (遊ぶ)    | ..... | to play                         | 45.7            |
| あたし         | ..... | I, me ( <i>female speaker</i> ) | 29.12           |
| あたたかい (温かい) | ..... | to be warm                      | 41.13           |
| あたま (頭)     | ..... | head                            | 50.10           |
| あたらしい (新しい) | ..... | to be new                       | 50.1            |
| あたり (辺り)    | ..... | surroundings/vicinity           | 32.12           |

あたる (当たる) .....to correspond to 95.3  
 あちら.....over there 78.10, 98. par.5  
 あっ.....Ah! (*surprise*) 73.2  
 あつい (暑い) ..... to be very hot 1.6  
 アップライト・ピアノ ..... upright piano 96.5  
 あつまる (集まる) .....to gather/meet 47.11  
 あつめる (集める) ..... to get sthg together/gather 88. ex. 2.2  
 あと (後) ..... after/behind 45.5  
 . . . あと ..... after 79.6  
 あなた.....you 29.1  
 あに (兄) ..... my older brother 27.13, 84. par.1  
 あね (姉) ..... my older sister 31.10, 84. par.1  
 あの..... that/those (+noun) 52.1, 98. par.5  
 アパート.....apartment 24.1  
 あぶない (危ない) ..... to be dangerous 54.10  
 アフリカ..... AFRICA 39.7  
 あまい (甘い) .....to be sweet 93.9  
 あまりにも..... too (much) 48.7  
 あみ (網) .....net 52.1  
 あめ (雨) ..... rain 31.5  
 アメリカ..... AMERICA 8.5  
 あら.....oh/hey! 54.11  
 あらわす (表す) ..... to express 36.1  
 ありがとう (ございます) ..... Thanks 9.11, 18.14  
 ある.....to exist (*for inanimate beings*) 4.3, 35, par.5  
 ある..... (+noun) a certain 37.6  
 あるく (歩く) .....to walk 6.4  
 アルゼンチン..... ARGENTINA 41.3  
 アルバイト..... part-time job 80.10  
 あれ..... that/those 52.2, 98, par.5  
 あれ..... oh! (*male speaker*) 64.14  
 あんき (暗記) する..... to learn by heart 83.5  
 あんしん (安心) ..... peace of mind 23.14  
 あんぜん (安全) ..... security/safety 43.10  
 あんな..... such/that 82.8  
 あんない (案内) する.....to guide 40.2

い

い (胃) ..... stomach 46.1  
 いい.....to be good 2.5

|                  |       |   |
|------------------|-------|---|
| いいえ              | ..... | No! 9.8                                 |
| いう (言う)          | ..... | to say, to be called 33.2               |
| いえ (家)           | ..... | house/home 34.1                         |
| いかいよう (胃潰瘍)      | ..... | stomach ulcer 46.2                      |
| いかが              | ..... | how? 16.8                               |
| イギリス             | ..... | ENGLAND 22.5                            |
| いく (行く)          | ..... | to go 1.2                               |
| いくつ              | ..... | how many? (countable) 15.6              |
| いくつか             | ..... | some/several 65.6                       |
| いくら              | ..... | how much? (price) 17.1                  |
| いけ (池)           | ..... | pond 85.2                               |
| いけばな (生け花)       | ..... | flower arrangement 34.6                 |
| いしゃ (医者)         | ..... | doctor 46.1                             |
| ... いじょう (以上)    | ..... | more than 39.3                          |
| いしん (維新)         | ..... | restoration of dynasty 88.10            |
| いす (椅子)          | ..... | chair, seat 60.11                       |
| いず (伊豆)          | ..... | IZU (place name) 67.5                   |
| いぜん (以前)         | ..... | before 57.11                            |
| いそがしい            | ..... | to be busy 41.9                         |
| いそぐ (急ぐ)         | ..... | to be in a hurry 32.9                   |
| いたい (痛い)         | ..... | to be painful 46.1                      |
| いたす              | ..... | to do (high degree, I) 69.11, 70, par.3 |
| いただく             | ..... | to receive (high degree, I) 73.9, 96.13 |
| いち (一)           | ..... | one 11.2, 63, par.1                     |
| いちにち (一日)        | ..... | one day 39.14                           |
| いちにちじゅう (一日中)    | ..... | all day long 30.6                       |
| いちばん (一番)        | ..... | the most 52.9                           |
| いつ               | ..... | when? 12.12                             |
| いっさい (一切)        | ..... | (negative) absolutely not 81.8          |
| いっしょう (一生)       | ..... | the whole life 67.12                    |
| いっしょうけんめい (一生懸命) | ..... | with all one's might 83.2               |
| いっしょ に (一緒 に)    | ..... | together 5.3                            |
| いったい             | ..... | How on earth! 59.11                     |
| いっちょうら (一張羅)     | ..... | one's Sunday best 74.1                  |
| いつつ (五つ)         | ..... | five 59.6, 70, par.1                    |
| いつでも             | ..... | whenever 73.5                           |
| いっぱい (一杯)        | ..... | full 80.5                               |
| いつも              | ..... | always 32.10                            |
| いとう ひろぶみ (伊藤 博文) | ..... | ITŌ Hirobumi<br>(personal name) 88.7    |
| いない (以内)         | ..... | in/inside/within 92, ex. 1.2            |



|                |  |                                 |
|----------------|--|---------------------------------|
| いなか (田舎)       | ..... countryside                                | 36.9                            |
| いぬ (犬)         | ..... dog  | 33.1                            |
| いのち (命)        | ..... life                                       | 48.8                            |
| いはん (違反 (犯))   | ..... violation/infracton                        | 32.7                            |
| いま (今)         | ..... now  | 12.11                           |
| いみ (意味)        | ..... meaning                                    | 36.13                           |
| いもうと (妹)       | ..... my younger sister                          | 39.11, 84, par.1                |
| いや             | ..... No!/Don't mention it!                      | 78.4                            |
| いや (嫌)         | ..... detestable                                 | 93.5                            |
| いらい (以来)       | ..... since                                      | 59.12                           |
| いらいら する        | ..... be annoyed                                 | 92.14                           |
| いらっしゃる         | ..... to go/come/be ( <i>high degree</i> , YOU)  | 12.4, 18.1,<br>47.11, 70. par.3 |
| いりぐち (入口)      | ..... entrance                                   | 79.9                            |
| いる             | ..... to be/exist ( <i>for animate beings</i> )  | 15.4, 35, par.5                 |
| いれる (入れる)      | ..... to put                                     | 1. ex. 2, title, 47.12          |
| いろ (色)         | ..... color                                      | 30.1                            |
| いろいろ (色々)      | ..... all sorts/many                             | 62.6, 77, par.1                 |
| いわ (岩)         | ..... stone/rock                                 | 54.8                            |
| いわい (祝い)       | ..... celebration                                | 46.14                           |
| いわくらともみ (岩倉具視) | ..... IWAKURA Tomomi<br>( <i>personal name</i> ) | 88.14                           |
| いわしぐも (いわし雲)   | ..... cirrus clouds                              | 48.3                            |
| いんしょう (印象)     | ..... impression                                 | 85.10                           |
| インド            | ..... INDIA                                      | 39.7                            |

## う

|             |  |                       |
|-------------|--|-----------------------|
| ウィーク・エンド    | ..... week-end                               | 72.1                  |
| ウィーン        | ..... VIENNA                                 | 78.9                  |
| うえ (上)      | ..... upper part/top                         | 23.1                  |
| うえの (上野)    | ..... UENO ( <i>place name</i> )             | 39.1                  |
| うかがう        | ..... to visit/ask ( <i>high degree</i> , I) | 47.2, 59.4, 70. par.3 |
| うかぶ (浮かぶ)   | ..... to float                               | 48.3                  |
| うけとる (受け取る) | ..... to receive                             | 61.1                  |
| うごかす (動かす)  | ..... to move ( <i>something</i> )           | 40.11                 |
| うし (牛)      | ..... cow                                    | 97.7                  |
| うしろ (後ろ)    | ..... behind                                 | 22.2                  |
| うそ (嘘)      | ..... lie                                    | 85.7                  |
| うた (歌)      | ..... song/poem                              | 19.7                  |
| うたう (歌う)    | ..... to sing                                | 19.7                  |

|              |                   |             |
|--------------|-------------------|-------------|
| うち (家)       | house/home        | 53.12       |
| うち (内)       | inside            | 89.2        |
| うちゅう (宇宙)    | universe          | 43.9        |
| うつくしい (美しい)  | to be beautiful   | 19.1        |
| うつくしさ (美しさ)  | beauty            | 85.5        |
| うまい          | to be clever      | 75.10, 87.5 |
| うまれる (生まれる)  | to be born        | 38.4        |
| うみ (海)       | sea               | 30.7        |
| うら (裏)       | reverse/back-side | 17.13       |
| ウラジオストック     | VLADIVOSTOK       | 55.8        |
| うらやましい       | to be jealous     | 30.14       |
| うる (売る)      | to sell           | 48.12       |
| うるさい         | to be annoying    | 24.5        |
| うれしい         | to be happy       | 93.1        |
| うわさ (噂)      | rumor/gossip      | 73.14       |
| うん           | Yes! (informal)   | 73.4        |
| うんてんしゅ (運転手) | driver            | 97.4        |
| うんてん (運転) する | to drive          | 97.7        |
| うんどう (運動)    | movement          | 58.7        |

## え

|             |                             |                  |
|-------------|-----------------------------|------------------|
| え (絵)       | painting                    | 50.6             |
| え           | What! (surprise)            | 75.12            |
| エア・ターミナル    | airport terminal            | 27.5             |
| えいが (映画)    | film/the movies             | 8. title, note 3 |
| えいご (英語)    | English language            | 64.1             |
| ええ          | Yes (informal)              | 12.11            |
| ええと         | err.../well...              | 58.3             |
| えがく (描く)    | to paint/draw               | 88.4             |
| えき (駅)      | station                     | 6.4              |
| エス・エフ       | science fiction             | 43.3             |
| エスカレーター     | escalator                   | 79.8             |
| えだ (枝)      | branch                      | 39.9             |
| えど (江戸)     | EDO (place name)            | 17.10            |
| えとく (会得)    | understanding/comprehension | 99.11            |
| エヌ・エッチ・ケー   | NHK                         | 92.4             |
| えのしま (江の島)  | ENOSHIMA (place name)       | 16.8             |
| えはがき (絵葉書)  | postcard                    | 39.13            |
| えらびかた (選び方) | way to choose               | 65.13            |
| えらぶ (選ぶ)    | to choose                   | 65. title        |

|           |                  |           |
|-----------|------------------|-----------|
| えん (円)    | .....yen         | 17.4      |
| えんそう (演奏) | .....performance | 29.11     |
| えんそく (遠足) | .....excursion   | 93. title |
| えんりょ (遠慮) | .....reserve     | 86.7      |

## お

|                   |   |                  |
|-------------------|---|------------------|
| お あがり (上がり) ください  | .....Please, enter!                       | 86.7             |
| おい (甥)            | .....my nephew                            | 69.1, 84. par.1  |
| おいごさん (甥御さん)      | .....your nephew                          | 69.2, 84. par.1  |
| おいこす (追い越す)       | .....to overtake                          | 32.6             |
| おいしい              | .....to be tasty                          | 9.12             |
| おうせつま (応接間)       | .....drawing room                         | 66.10            |
| おうべい (欧米)         | .....The West/Europe and America          | 88.10, 92.5      |
| おおい (多い)          | .....to be many/numerous                  | 34.9             |
| おおきい (大きい)        | .....to be big/tall                       | 20.9, 77. par.1  |
| おおさか (大阪)         | .....ŌSAKA (place name)                   | 60.13            |
| おおしま (大島)         | .....ŌSHIMA (place name)                  | 30.3             |
| オーストラリア           | .....AUSTRALIA                            | 38.5             |
| オーストリア            | .....AUSTRIA                              | 78.9             |
| おおぜい (大勢)         | .....numerous (for people)                | 79.7             |
| おおそうじ (大掃除)       | .....a spring-clean                       | 74.5             |
| おおどおり (大通り)       | .....main street                          | 58.8             |
| オーボエ              | .....oboe                                 | 47.5             |
| おおみそか (大晦日)       | .....New Year's Eve                       | 74.11            |
| おおよろこび (大喜び)      | .....great joy                            | 39.2             |
| おかあさん (お母さん)      | .....your mother, my mother (for a child) | 71.4, 84. par.1  |
| お かえり (帰り) なさい    | .....Welcome home!                        | 73.2             |
| お かけ ください         | .....please sit down                      | 46.7             |
| お かげ さま で         | .....thanks to you                        | 23.13            |
| お かげ で            | .....thanks to                            | 60.10            |
| おかし (お菓子)         | .....cake                                 | 12.8             |
| おかしい              | .....to be funny/strange                  | 59.9             |
| おかず               | .....side dish                            | 93.2             |
| おがむ (拝む)          | .....to worship                           | 74.9             |
| おきあがる (起き上がる)     | .....to get up                            | 72.10            |
| おき (気) の どく (毒) に | .....That's so annoying!                  | 23.11            |
| おきる (起きる)         | .....to get up (from bed)                 | 11.1             |
| おく (置く)           | .....to set/put                           | 40.5, 91. par.3  |
| おくさん (奥さん)        | .....madam/Mrs, your wife                 | 59.11, 84. par.3 |

|                        |  |                      |
|------------------------|--|----------------------|
| おくじょう (屋上) .....       | roof   | 52.5                 |
| おくる (送る) .....         | to send off/to accompany                           | 33.9                 |
| おくれる (遅れる) .....       | to be late   | 79.2                 |
| おげんき (元気) で.....       | Take care!/Stay well!                              | 92.15                |
| おこす (起こす) .....        | to set up  | 72.10                |
| おこる (起こる) .....        | to happen  | 43.6                 |
| おじ (伯父) .....          | my uncle   | 32.1, 84, par.1      |
| おじいさん (お祖父さん) .....    | grandfather  | 39.1, 84, par.1      |
| おしえる (教える) .....       | to teach   | 29.4                 |
| おじゃま (邪魔) しました.....    | Sorry for bothering you!                           | 83.9                 |
| おじょうさん (お嬢さん) .....    | your daughter                                      | 15.6, 84, par.1      |
| おす (押す) .....          | to push/to press                                   | 46.10                |
| おすまい (お 住い) .....      | place where one lives ( <i>high degree</i> , YOUR) | 68.7                 |
| おせわ (世話) に になりました..... | Thanks for your help!                              | 78.3                 |
| おそい (遅い) .....         | to be late   | 11.3                 |
| おだいじ (大事) に.....       | Get well soon!/<br>Take care of yourself!          | 53.13                |
| おたく (お宅) .....         | house ( <i>high degree</i> , YOUR)                 | 82.11                |
| おちる (落ちる) .....        | to fall  | 48.11                |
| おっしゃる.....             | to say ( <i>high degree</i> , YOU)                 | 93.4                 |
| おと (音) .....           | noise/sound  | 24.6                 |
| おとうさん (お父さん) ....      | your father, my father ( <i>for a child</i> )      | 71.4, 73.2 84, par.1 |
| おとこのこ (男の子) .....      | little boy   | 15.5                 |
| おとす (落とす) .....        | to drop  | 73.3                 |
| おととい.....              | the day before yesterday                           | 39.1                 |
| おととし (一昨年) .....       | the year before last                               | 89.4                 |
| おとな (大人) .....         | adult  | 44.5                 |
| おとなしい (大人しい) .....     | to be gentle/be quiet/be tame                      | 54.10                |
| おとも (供) する.....        | to accompany ( <i>high degree</i> , I)             | 26.8                 |
| おどる (踊る) .....         | to dance   | 76.10                |
| おどろく (驚く) .....        | to be surprised                                    | 39.11                |
| おなか (お腹) .....         | stomach  | 93.6                 |
| おなじ (同じ) .....         | same   | 36.2                 |
| おにいさん (お兄さん) .....     | your/my older brother ( <i>for a child</i> )       | 71.5, 84, par.1      |
| おにしめ (お煮染) .....       | vegetable ragout                                   | 93.2                 |
| おねがい (願い) します.....     | Please!  | 9.9, 16.13           |
| おばあさん (お祖母さん) .....    | grandmother  | 39.1, 84, par.1      |

|                   |       |   |                              |
|-------------------|-------|---|------------------------------|
| お はよう ございます       | ..... | Good morning!                                       | 3.1                          |
| お ひさしぶり (久し振り) です | ..... | Long time no see!                                   | 30.1                         |
| おふくろ              | ..... | my mother ( <i>low degree, for a male speaker</i> ) | 80.1                         |
| オペラ               | ..... | opera   | 41.8                         |
| おぼうさん (お坊さん)      | ..... | Buddhist monk                                       | 85.5                         |
| おぼえる (覚える)        | ..... | to remember   | 36.14                        |
| おぼっちゃん (お坊ちゃん)    | ..... | your little son                                     | 15.10, 84, par.1             |
| おまえ (お前)          | ..... | you ( <i>low degree, for a male speaker</i> )       | 73.6                         |
| おまわりさん (お巡りさん)    | ..... | police officer                                      | 97.1                         |
| おみあい (お見合)        | ..... | meeting with a view to marriage                     | 69. title                    |
| おめでとう ございます       | ..... | Congratulations!                                    | 23.5                         |
| おめ (目) に かかる      | ..... | to meet ( <i>high degree, l</i> )                   | 68.9, 70. par.3              |
| おも (主)            | ..... | main  | 83.4                         |
| おもい (重い)          | ..... | to be heavy   | 93.5                         |
| おもいだす (思い出す)      | ..... | to remember   | 78.9                         |
| おもいちがい (思い違い)     | ..... | misunderstanding                                    | 74. title                    |
| おもう (思う)          | ..... | to think  | 25.11, 36. note 6, 77, par.3 |
| おもしろい (面白い)       | ..... | to be interesting                                   | 6.9                          |
| おも に (主 に)        | ..... | mainly  | 40.3                         |
| お やすみ (休み) なさい    | ..... | Good night!   | 93.12                        |
| おやつ (お八つ)         | ..... | snack   | 93.7                         |
| およぐ (泳ぐ)          | ..... | to swim   | 30.6                         |
| オランダ              | ..... | THE NETHERLANDS                                     | 94.3                         |
| おり (檻)            | ..... | cage  | 39.11                        |
| おりる (降りる)         | ..... | to go down  | 51.13                        |
| オリンピック            | ..... | the Olympics  | 97.9                         |
| おれ                | ..... | I ( <i>low degree, for a male speaker</i> )         | 66.4                         |
| おわり (終わり)         | ..... | end   | 48.6                         |
| おわる (終わる)         | ..... | to end/finish                                       | 48.1                         |
| おんがく (音楽)         | ..... | music   | 47.2                         |
| おんがっかい (音楽会)      | ..... | concert   | 29.2                         |
| おんな (女)           | ..... | woman   | 41.6                         |
| おんな の こ (女 の 子)   | ..... | little girl   | 15.5                         |

## か

|                |       |            |               |
|----------------|-------|------------|---------------|
| か              | ..... | [question] | 2.1           |
| が (after noun) | ..... | [subject]  | 4.5, 7. par.5 |
| が (after verb) | ..... | but        | 19.10         |
| カーブ            | ..... | curve      | 72.9          |

|                    |                                    |
|--------------------|------------------------------------|
| かい (階)             | floor/storey 24.7, note 2          |
| かい                 | [question] 75.5                    |
| . . . かい (. . . 回) | times 97.12                        |
| かいがん (海岸)          | seashore 30.8                      |
| がいかん (外観)          | outside appearance 96.10           |
| がいこく (外国)          | foreign country 71.4               |
| がいこくご (外国語)        | foreign language 92.9              |
| がいこくじん (外国人)       | foreigner 45.13                    |
| がいこくせい (外国製)       | foreign product 96.7               |
| かいさつぐち (改札口)       | ticket gate 79.8                   |
| かいしゃ (会社)          | company, firm 23.7                 |
| かいぬし (飼い主)         | master (of an animal) 37.1         |
| かいもの (買物)          | shopping 5. title                  |
| かいるい (貝類)          | shellfish 30.11                    |
| かいわ (会話)           | conversation 94. title             |
| かう (買う)            | to buy 5.4, 77. par.3              |
| かう (飼う)            | to raise (an animal) 33.8          |
| ガウン                | robe/gown 31.11                    |
| かえす (返す)           | to return (sthg) 76.12             |
| かえる (帰る)           | to go back/return 31.12, 35. par.5 |
| かお (顔)             | face 50.8                          |
| かがく (科学)           | science 78.7                       |
| かがく (化学)           | chemistry 81.8                     |
| かかる                | to hang/be suspended 31.7          |
| かかる                | to take (time) 32.8                |
| かがやく (輝く)          | to sparkle 48.6                    |
| かき (柿)             | persimmon/kaki tree 48.6           |
| かきとり (書き取り)        | dictation 57. ex. title            |
| かく (書く)            | to write/draw 17.13                |
| かくしゅう (隔週)         | every other week 47.11             |
| がくせい (学生)          | student 78.8                       |
| カクテル・パーティー         | cocktail party 47. title           |
| がくひ (学費)           | school expenses 90.2               |
| かける (でんわ (電話) を)   | to phone 16.12                     |
| かさ (傘)             | umbrella 31.9                      |
| かじ (火事)            | fire 85.7                          |
| かしゅ (歌手)           | singer 19.6                        |
| . . . かしら          | may be 59.10                       |
| かす (貸す)            | to lend 32.1                       |
| かぜ (風邪)            | a cold 81. title                   |
| カセット               | cassette/tape 47.9                 |

|                           |                                      |                   |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------|
| かぞく (家族)                  | family                               | 67.7              |
| かた (方)                    | a person ( <i>high degree</i> )      | 48.9              |
| かたあし (片足)                 | one foot                             | 99.9              |
| かたかな (片仮名)                | katakana                             | 78. ex. title     |
| かたち (形)                   | form                                 | 97.9              |
| かたづける (片付ける)              | to clear up                          | 80.1              |
| カタログ                      | catalogue                            | 96.13             |
| かつ (勝つ)                   | to win                               | 54.9              |
| がっかり する                   | to be discouraged                    | 85. ex. 1.3       |
| がっき (楽器)                  | musical instrument                   | 47.4              |
| かっこう (恰好)                 | appearance                           | 82.6              |
| がっこう (学校)                 | school                               | 82.1              |
| かつどう (活動)                 | activity                             | 47.7              |
| ．．． がてら                   | while                                | 31.3              |
| かない (家内)                  | my wife                              | 18.8, 84. par.1   |
| かなしい (悲しい)                | to be sad                            | 48.4              |
| かなた (彼方)                  | far away                             | 43.10             |
| カナダ                       | CANADA                               | 45.5              |
| かならず (必ず)                 | certainly                            | 27.7              |
| かならずしも (必ずしも) (+negative) | not necessarily                      | 36.6              |
| かね (金)                    | money                                | 31.14             |
| かねもち (金持)                 | rich                                 | 87.11             |
| かのじょ (彼女)                 | she                                  | 71.4              |
| かばん (鞆)                   | bag                                  | 31.1              |
| かぶき (歌舞伎)                 | kabuki ( <i>traditional play</i> )   | 29.9              |
| かぶる (被る)                  | to wear on one's head                | 54.5              |
| かへい (貨幣)                  | money/currency                       | 88. title         |
| かまいません                    | Never mind!                          | 99. ex. title     |
| がまん (我慢)                  | patience                             | 71.10             |
| かみ (紙)                    | paper                                | 88.2              |
| カメラ                       | camera                               | 4.1               |
| カメラ屋さん (カメラ屋さん)           | camera shopkeeper                    | 65.6              |
| ．．． かもしれない                | ... may be                           | 75.11             |
| かよう (通う)                  | to visit frequently                  | 83.3              |
| かようび (火曜日)                | Tuesday                              | 29.1              |
| から (after noun)           | from                                 | 6.3, 7. par.5     |
| から (after verb)           | because                              | 24.10, 31. note 4 |
| (．．． て) から                | ... after having...                  | 61.3              |
| からだ (体)                   | body                                 | 73.9              |
| からっぽ                      | completely empty ( <i>informal</i> ) | 45.9              |
| かりる (借りる)                 | to borrow                            | 54.1              |

|               |                         |       |
|---------------|-------------------------|-------|
| かるい (軽い)      | to be light             | 65.12 |
| ガレージ          | garage                  | 34.7  |
| かれは (枯葉)      | dead leaves             | 48.4  |
| かわ (側)        | side                    | 20.9  |
| かわ (川)        | river                   | 36.12 |
| かわいい (可愛い)    | to be pretty            | 33.11 |
| かわり (代り)      | replacement             | 39.13 |
| かわる (変わる)     | to change               | 41.7  |
| かん (爛)        | warm sake               | 73.5  |
| かんがえ (考え)     | idea                    | 16.6  |
| かんがえる (考える)   | to think                | 66.10 |
| かんかく (感覚)     | sense/feeling           | 55.11 |
| かんけい (関係)     | relationship            | 23.7  |
| かんこう (観光)     | sightseeing             | 26.7  |
| かんこうきゃく (観光客) | tourist                 | 85.9  |
| かんさい (関西)     | KANSAI (place name)     | 32.1  |
| かんじ (感じ)      | impression/sensation    | 71.1  |
| かんじ (漢字)      | kanji                   | 99.8  |
| かんしん (感心)     | admiration              | 33.5  |
| かんたん (簡単)     | simple/easy             | 18.12 |
| がんねん (元年)     | first year of an era    | 95.3  |
| カンパイ          | Cheers!                 | 74.12 |
| がんばる (頑張る)    | to hold out             | intro |
| かんぺき (完璧)     | perfect                 | 85.5  |
| かんぽうやく (漢方薬)  | Chinese herbal medicine | 81.8  |

## き

|             |                             |                 |
|-------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|
| き (木)       | tree                        | 39.9            |
| き (気) が する  | to care                     | 43.13           |
| き (気) が つく  | to notice                   | 81. ex. 2.4     |
| き (気) に いる  | to please                   | 24.11           |
| き (気) に なる  | to have sthg on one's chest | 62.11           |
| き (気) を つける | to pay attention            | 40.4            |
| きいろい (黄色い)  | to be yellow                | 53.9            |
| きかい (機会)    | chance/opportunity          | 19.13           |
| きがえる (着替える) | to change clothes           | 54.3            |
| きぎょう (企業)   | company                     | 92.13           |
| きく (聞く)     | to listen/ask               | 29.8, 42. par.5 |
| きぐ (器具)     | apparatus                   | 59.12           |
| きげん (機嫌)    | mood/temper                 | 87.12           |



|                  |  |                 |
|------------------|--|-----------------|
| きこえる (聞こえる)      | ..... to be audible                        | 24.6            |
| きこく (帰国)         | ..... to return to one's country           | 45.6            |
| きじ (記事)          | ..... article                              | 64.8            |
| きしゃ (汽車)         | ..... long distance train                  | 32.9            |
| きしゃ (記者)         | ..... journalist                           | 69.1            |
| きせつ (季節)         | ..... season                               | 39.5            |
| きそく (規則)         | ..... rule                                 | 99.7            |
| きた (北)           | ..... north                                | 75.4            |
| ギター              | ..... guitar                               | 92.9            |
| きたく (北区)         | ..... KITA-KU (place name)                 | 61.5            |
| きたない             | ..... to be dirty                          | 80.8            |
| きちがい (気違い)       | ..... crazy                                | 82.9            |
| きっかけ             | ..... occasion, opportunity                | 47.7            |
| きっさてん (喫茶店)      | ..... coffee shop                          | 12.3            |
| きっと              | ..... surely                               | 39.11           |
| きっぷ (切符)         | ..... ticket                               | 29.12           |
| きのう (昨日)         | ..... yesterday                            | 8.1             |
| きびしい (厳しい)       | ..... to be severe                         | 94.8            |
| きまる (決まる)        | ..... to be decided on/fixed               | 27.2            |
| きみ (君)           | ..... you (low degree, for a male speaker) | 75.3            |
| きめる (決める)        | ..... to decide                            | 55.13           |
| きもち (気持)         | ..... feeling                              | 48.7            |
| きもの (着物)         | ..... kimono                               | 78.5            |
| きゃく (客)          | ..... customer/guest                       | 34.9            |
| キャンプ             | ..... camp                                 | 75. title       |
| きゅう (九)          | ..... nine                                 | 63. par.1, 81.4 |
| きゅうしゅう (九州)      | ..... KYŪSHŪ (place name)                  | 60.1            |
| きゅうちゅうさんが (宮中参賀) | ..... public homage to the Imperial Palace | 68.10           |
| きゅう に (急に)       | ..... suddenly                             | 94.11           |
| きょう (今日)         | ..... today                                | 11.6            |
| きょういく (教育)       | ..... education                            | 92.11           |
| きょういくか (教育家)     | ..... pedagogue                            | 88.11           |
| きょうじゅ (教授)       | ..... professor                            | 90.6            |
| きょうそう (競争)       | ..... competition                          | 54.8            |
| きょうと (京都)        | ..... KYŌTO (place name)                   | 60.11           |
| きょうみ (興味)        | ..... interest/curiosity                   | 43.13           |
| きよかしょう (許可証)     | ..... license/permit                       | 38.11           |
| きよだい (巨大)        | ..... huge                                 | 52.1            |
| きよねん (去年)        | ..... last year                            | 55.3            |
| きらい (嫌い)         | ..... dislike                              | 81.6            |

|                   |                                 |           |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|-----------|
| きらう (嫌う) .....    | to hate                         | 75.7      |
| きらく (気楽) .....    | easy going/carefree             | 87.6      |
| ギリシャ .....        | GREECE                          | 22.7      |
| きりん .....         | giraffe                         | 39.6      |
| きる (着る) .....     | to wear                         | 54.14     |
| きれい .....         | beautiful                       | 30.1      |
| キロ .....          | kilometer                       | 32.4      |
| きんいろ (金色) .....   | gold                            | 85.2      |
| きんえん (禁煙) .....   | non-smoking                     | 20. title |
| きんかくじ (金閣寺) ..... | KINKAKUJI (name of a monastery) | 85. title |
| ぎんこう (銀行) .....   | bank                            | 31.13     |
| きんし (禁止) .....    | prohibition                     | 82.2      |
| きんじょ (近所) .....   | neighborhood                    | 82.10     |
| きんだい (近代) .....   | modern                          | 88.12     |
| きんぺん (近辺) .....   | neighborhood/vicinity           | 82.2      |
| きんようび (金曜日) ..... | Friday                          | 53.5      |

く

|                          |                                 |       |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|-------|
| く (区) .....              | district                        | 51.6  |
| クイズ .....                | quiz                            | 92.6  |
| くうき (空気) .....           | air                             | 75.2  |
| くうこう (空港) .....          | airport                         | 27.3  |
| くげ (公家) .....            | court noble                     | 36.7  |
| くさる .....                | to decay                        | 67.3  |
| くすり (薬) .....            | medicine                        | 81.5  |
| くたくた .....               | very tired, exhausted           | 80.10 |
| ... ください (... 下さい) ..... | please (give me)                | 9.9   |
| くださる (下さる) .....         | to do for ME (high degree, YOU) | 86.13 |
| くたびれる .....              | to get very tired, exhausted    | 72.11 |
| くだもの (果物) .....          | fruit                           | 53.7  |
| くつ (靴) .....             | shoe                            | 82.7  |
| クッキー .....               | cookie                          | 93.9  |
| くつした (靴下) .....          | sock                            | 5.5   |
| くに (国) .....             | country                         | 38.3  |
| くび (首) .....             | neck                            | 39.6  |
| くびわ (首輪) .....           | collar                          | 82.10 |
| くま (熊) .....             | bear                            | 39.8  |
| くみたてる (組み立てる) .....      | to build/assemble               | 40.13 |
| くも (雲) .....             | cloud                           | 67.6  |

|                    |                             |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|
| くもり (曇り)           | cloudy                      | 93.3            |
| くらい/ぐらい            | around/about                | 25.11           |
| クラシック              | classic                     | 47.3            |
| くらす (暮らす)          | to live                     | 97.7            |
| クラブ                | club                        | 38.13           |
| グランド・ピアノ           | grand piano                 | 96.5            |
| くらべる (比べる)         | to compare                  | 60.5            |
| くりかえす (繰り返す)       | to repeat                   | 58.6            |
| くる (来る)            | to come                     | 8.2, 77, par.2  |
| くるま (車)            | car                         | 34.7            |
| くれる                | to do for ME                | 29.4, 91, par.3 |
| くろい (黒い)           | to be black                 | 96.8            |
| くわしい (詳しい)         | to be detailed              | 51.10           |
| . . . くん (. . . 君) | after boy's name (informal) | 72.4            |

## け

|                            |                          |                 |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------|
| . . . けい (. . . 係)         | related to...            | 94.11           |
| けいざい (経済)                  | economy                  | 69.1            |
| けいさつかん (警察官)               | police officer           | 94.3            |
| げいひんかん (迎賓館)               | GEIHINGAN (place name)   | 94.1            |
| . . . けいゆ (. . . 経由)       | via                      | 55.5            |
| げき (劇)                     | drama/play               | 92.5            |
| けさ (今朝)                    | this morning             | 13.1            |
| けしき (景色)                   | scenery                  | 72.5            |
| げしゆく (下宿)                  | lodging                  | 62.1            |
| げつ (月) (after number + ka) | month                    | 34.11           |
| けっこう                       | all right/perfect/enough | 4.11, 12.9      |
| けっこうん (結婚)                 | marriage                 | 15.3            |
| げつようび (月曜日)                | Monday                   | 26.11           |
| けど                         | informal for keredomo    | 44.12           |
| けれど                        | informal for keredomo    | 45.13           |
| けれども                       | but/however              | 24.3            |
| . . . けん (. . . 軒)         | measure word for house   | 34.2, 63, par.1 |
| けんがく (見学)                  | field trip               | 40. title       |
| げんかん (玄関)                  | front door               | 62.7            |
| げんき (元気)                   | good health              | 23.1            |
| けんきゅう (研究)                 | research                 | 78.7            |
| げんこう (原稿)                  | manuscript               | 76.2            |
| げんじつてき (現実的)               | realistic                | 48.11           |
| げんじ ものがたり (源氏 物語)          | "Tale of Genji"          | 83.2            |

|             |                         |      |
|-------------|-------------------------|------|
| げんだい (現代)   | today/contemporary      | 50.1 |
| けんちくか (建築家) | architect               | 97.9 |
| けんぶつ (見物)   | sightseeing             | 76.7 |
| けんぽう (憲法)   | constitution of a state | 88.5 |

## こ

|                         |                                      |                 |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------------|-----------------|
| こ (五)                   | five                                 | 15.7, 63, par.1 |
| ．．． ．ご (語)              | language of the country              | 26.2, 28, par.1 |
| (after name of country) |                                      |                 |
| ．．． ．ご (後)              | after                                | 31.11           |
| (after time)            |                                      |                 |
| こい (恋)                  | love                                 | 43.11           |
| こういん (工員)               | worker                               | 40.9            |
| こうえん (公園)               | park                                 | 68.12           |
| こうきよ (皇居)               | the Imperial Palace                  | 68.7            |
| こうきょう (公共)              | public                               | 92.4            |
| こうぎょう (工業)              | industry                             | 64.9            |
| こうくう (航空)               | airmail                              | 22.4            |
| こうこう (高校)               | high school                          | 90.3            |
| こうごう (皇后)               | empress                              | 68.8            |
| こうこく (広告)               | advertisement                        | 92.14           |
| こうざ (口座)                | bank account                         | 45.1            |
| こうざ (講座)                | course                               | 92.9            |
| こうしつ (皇室)               | Imperial House                       | 68. title       |
| こうしゅう でんわ (公衆 電話)       | telephone booth                      | 51.10           |
| こうじょう (工場)              | factory                              | 40. title       |
| こうすい (香水)               | perfume                              | 31.1            |
| こうせいぶっしつ (抗生物質)         | antibiotic                           | 81.8            |
| こうそくどうろ (高速道路)          | freeway                              | 32.3            |
| こうつう (交通)               | traffic                              | 23.10           |
| こうとうがっこう (高等学校)         | high school                          | 47.7            |
| こうば (工場)                | factory                              | 97.4            |
| こうばん (交番)               | police box                           | 97.1            |
| こうはんりょ (好伴侶)            | companion                            | 99.15           |
| (おがた) こうりん (尾形 光琳)      | OGATA Kōrin ( <i>personal name</i> ) | 76.5            |
| コート                     | coat                                 | 76.3            |
| コーヒー                    | coffee                               | 3.5             |
| ごがく (語学)                | the study of languages               | 71.3            |
| こがた (小型)                | small size                           | 65.6            |
| ごがつ (五月)                | May                                  | 23.10           |

|                      |  |                  |
|----------------------|--|------------------|
| こくご (国語)             | ..... Japanese (national) language                               | 90.8             |
| こくさいてき (国際的)         | ..... international  | 90.7             |
| こくさいれんごう (国際連合)      | ..... United Nations   | 92. ex. 1.5      |
| こくさん (国産)            | ..... domestic   | 96.7             |
| こくせき (国籍)            | ..... nationality  | 38.2             |
| こくどう (国道)            | ..... national highway   | 32.3             |
| こくみん (国民)            | ..... nation/people  | 68.9             |
| こくりつ (国立)            | ..... national   | 90.1             |
| ごくろう (苦勞)            | さま.... Thank you very much for your trouble!                     | 74.12            |
| ここ                   | ..... here   | 5.8, 98. par.5   |
| ごご (午後)              | ..... afternoon  | 11.8             |
| ... ごこち (. . . 心地)   | ..... mood   | 60.11            |
| ここのつ (九つ)            | ..... nine   | 70. par.1, 90.13 |
| こころ (心)              | ..... spirit/soul  | 85.2             |
| ござ (莫蔭)              | ..... mat  | 89.8             |
| ござる                  | ..... to exist ( <i>high degree</i> , I)                         | 86.14            |
| ごしょう (故障)            | ..... trouble  | 59. title        |
| ごじん (個人)             | ..... individual   | 64.4             |
| こす (越す)              | ..... to pass/go over  | 86.13            |
| こせきしょうほん (戸籍抄本)      | ..... extract copy of one's family register                      | 95.1             |
| ごぜん (午前)             | ..... morning  | 27.3             |
| こそ                   | ..... [emphasis]   | 67.9             |
| ご ぞんじ (御 存知) です      | ....to know ( <i>high degree</i> , YOU)                          | 96.2             |
| こたえる (答える)           | ..... to answer  | 39.5             |
| ごちそう                 | ..... good cheer   | 41.10            |
| ごちそう さま でした          | ..... Thanks for the meal/I've had enough ( <i>high degree</i> ) | 83.11            |
| こちら                  | ..... this way/direction   | 40.4, 98. par.5  |
| こっかい ぎいん (国会 議員)     | ..... member of the Diet   | 69.8             |
| こっかい ぎじ どう (国会 議事 堂) | ..... the Diet   | 94.4             |
| こてん (古典)             | ..... classic  | 83.2             |
| こと                   | ..... fact/event   | 32.3, 42. par.3  |
| こと (琴)               | ..... koto ( <i>musical instrument</i> )                         | 92.9             |
| ことし (今年)             | ..... this year  | 23.2             |
| ことば (言葉)             | ..... word   | 1. ex. title     |
| こども (子供)             | ..... child  | 15.4             |
| ことわざ (諺)             | ..... proverb  | 89.3             |
| ことわる (断る)            | ..... to refuse  | 41.9             |
| この                   | ..... this/these   | 18.10, 98. par.5 |

|                          |   |                         |
|--------------------------|---|-------------------------|
| このあいだ (この間)              | ..... recently                                | <b>31.10, 98. par.5</b> |
| このごろ                     | ..... nowadays                                | <b>46.4, 98. par.5</b>  |
| このまえ (この前)               | ..... last time                               | <b>80.12</b>            |
| ご ぶさた (御無沙汰) して おります.... | I haven't come to see you<br>for a long time! | <b>86.3</b>             |
| こまかい (細かい)               | ..... to be fine/delicate                     | <b>51.11</b>            |
| こまる (困る)                 | ..... to be in trouble                        | <b>13.8</b>             |
| こむ (混む)                  | ..... to be crowded                           | <b>32.3</b>             |
| こむぎ (小麦)                 | ..... wheat                                   | <b>30.1</b>             |
| ごめん ください.....            | Please! (when one calls on sb.)               | <b>86.1</b>             |
| ごめん くださいませ.....          | Excuse me! (when one leaves sb.)              | <b>83.13</b>            |
| ごめん なさい.....             | excuse me/I beg your pardon                   | <b>17.6</b>             |
| ごらく (娯楽)                 | ..... amusement                               | <b>92.8</b>             |
| ごらん (御覧) くださる.....       | to look (high degree, YOU)                    | <b>65.7, 70. par.3</b>  |
| ごらんの とおり (御覧 の 通り) ..... | as you see                                    | <b>87.12</b>            |
| こりこり です.....             | can't stand                                   | <b>79.5</b>             |
| ゴルフ.....                 | golf  | <b>52.2</b>             |
| これ.....                  | this  | <b>17.2, 98. par.5</b>  |
| これから.....                | from now on                                   | <b>40.2, 98. par.5</b>  |
| これら.....                 | these   | <b>97.12, 98. par.5</b> |
| ... ころ/ごろ.....           | about (+ time notion)                         | <b>55.13</b>            |
| ころ (頃)                   | ..... moment                                  | <b>78.9</b>             |
| ころぶ (転ぶ)                 | ..... to fall/slip                            | <b>72.9</b>             |
| こわい.....                 | to be scared/scary                            | <b>39.11</b>            |
| こんかい (今回)                | ..... this time                               | <b>58.13</b>            |
| コンクリート.....              | concrete                                      | <b>66.2</b>             |
| こんげつ (今月)                | ..... this month                              | <b>94.5</b>             |
| コンサート.....               | concert                                       | <b>19.9</b>             |
| こんしゅう (今週)               | ..... this week                               | <b>80.1</b>             |
| こんど (今度)                 | ..... this time                               | <b>19.9</b>             |
| こんな.....                 | of this kind/like this                        | <b>45.13, 98. par.5</b> |
| こんな に.....               | so/like this                                  | <b>39.13, 98. par.5</b> |
| こんにち は.....              | Hello!  | <b>12.1</b>             |
| こんばん (今晚)                | ..... tonight                                 | <b>9.1</b>              |
| こんばん は.....              | Good evening!                                 | <b>73.10</b>            |
| コンピューター.....             | computer                                      | <b>40.11</b>            |
| こんや (今夜)                 | ..... tonight                                 | <b>75.13</b>            |

# さ

|                |                                   |                  |
|----------------|-----------------------------------|------------------|
| さ              | [softener]                        | 80.10            |
| さあ             | here/come on                      | 54.3             |
| サービス           | service                           | 61.7             |
| ．．． さい (．．． 歳) | (after a number) . . . years old  | 15.7, 70. par.1  |
| さいきん (最近)      | recently                          | 47.9             |
| さいご (最後)       | last                              | 43.11            |
| さいこんする (再婚する)  | to remarry                        | 15.9             |
| さいしょ (最初)      | first                             | 32.3             |
| さいふ (財布)       | wallet                            | 45.9             |
| さいほう (裁縫)      | sewing                            | 92.9             |
| さがす (探す)       | to look for                       | 34.1             |
| さかな (魚)        | fish                              | 9.5              |
| さかん (盛ん)       | prosperous                        | 52.7             |
| さき (先)         | before hand                       | 90.13            |
| さけ (酒)         | alcohol, sake                     | 4.9              |
| さくねん (昨年)      | last year                         | 78.3             |
| さくひん (作品)      | work/piece                        | 83.4             |
| さくら (桜)        | cherry                            | 89.1             |
| さそう (誘う)       | to invite                         | 16.5             |
| さつ (札)         | bill/note                         | 88.2             |
| ．．． さつ (．．． 冊) | measure word for books            | 99.7             |
| さっか (作家)       | writer                            | 83.6             |
| さっきょくか (作曲家)   | composer                          | 41.6             |
| ざっし (雑誌)       | magazine                          | 64. title        |
| さっそく (早速)      | at once/immediately               | 50.4             |
| さとう (砂糖)       | sugar                             | 80.7             |
| さびしい (寂しい)     | to be lonely                      | 48.7             |
| ．．． さま         | after personal name (high degree) | 44.3             |
| さむい (寒い)       | to be cold                        | 60.10            |
| さよう で ございます    | Great! (high degree, YOU)         | 86.13            |
| さようなら          | Goodbye!                          | 99.16            |
| さらいしゅう (再来週)   | the week after next               | 46.6             |
| サラリーマン         | salaried workers/office worker    | 52.4             |
| さる (猿)         | monkey                            | 39.9             |
| さん (三)         | three                             | 11.5, 63. par.1  |
| ．．． さん         | (after personal name)             | 12.5, 16.5, 19.4 |
| さんすう (算数)      | arithmetic                        | 90.8             |
| サンドウィッチ        | sandwich                          | 16.10            |

|           |                               |       |
|-----------|-------------------------------|-------|
| サントリー     | SUNTORY ( <i>brand name</i> ) | 51.5  |
| さんねん (残念) | regrettable                   | 19.10 |
| さんぽ (散歩)  | walk                          | 31.3  |

## し

|                    |                                  |                              |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| し (詩)              | poem                             | 48.5                         |
| し                  | and ( <i>between 2 clauses</i> ) | 71.3, 79. note 8, 86. note 7 |
| . . . じ (. . . 時)  | ( <i>number +</i> ) o'clock      | 11.1                         |
| じ (字)              | letter/character                 | 99.8                         |
| しあさって              | two days after tomorrow          | 27.3                         |
| しあつ (指圧)           | acupressure                      | 81.8                         |
| シーズン               | season                           | 10.3                         |
| シーソー               | seesaw                           | 82.3                         |
| しか (+negative)     | only                             | 30.6                         |
| しかし                | but/however                      | 26.5                         |
| しかた (仕方)           | way/method                       | 58.9                         |
| しかた (仕方) が ない      | can do nothing about it          | 44.13                        |
| しがつ (四月)           | April                            | 23.7                         |
| しかも                | and/too/plus                     | 61.6                         |
| じかん (時間)           | time/hour                        | 13.1                         |
| しき (四季)            | the four seasons                 | 66.5                         |
| . . . しき (. . . 式) | . . . style                      | 66.10                        |
| じき (直)             | just/momentarily                 | 64.6                         |
| じぎ (辞儀)            | bow/greeting                     | 78.6                         |
| しききん (敷金)          | (security) deposit               | 34.12                        |
| しきもう (色盲)          | colorblindness                   | 79.13                        |
| しく (敷く)            | to spread/lay                    | 89.8                         |
| じこ (事故)            | accident/incident                | 23.10                        |
| しごと (仕事)           | work                             | 23. title                    |
| じしん (地震)           | earthquake                       | 66.3                         |
| しずおか (静岡)          | SHIZUOKA ( <i>place name</i> )   | 32.12                        |
| しずか (静か)           | quiet/silent                     | 57.6                         |
| しずまる (静まる)         | to become quiet/calm             | 85.2                         |
| しぜん (自然)           | nature                           | 36.10                        |
| しそうか (思想家)         | thinker                          | 88.9                         |
| した (舌)             | tongue                           | 46.9                         |
| した (下)             | lower part/bottom                | 80.8                         |
| じだい (時代)           | age/period                       | 17.10                        |
| したぎ (下着)           | underwear                        | 80.7                         |
| したく (支度)           | preparation                      | 73.3                         |



|                    |                              |                  |
|--------------------|------------------------------|------------------|
| しち (七)             | seven                        | 27.3, 63. par.1  |
| しちがつ (七月)          | July                         | 55.13            |
| しっかりと              | firmly/tightly               | 90.5             |
| しつぎょうしゃ (失業者)      | the jobless/the unemployed   | 40.12            |
| じっさい (実際)          | fact/reality                 | 85.9             |
| じつ (実) は           | really/actually              | 15.9             |
| じつぶつ (実物)          | original/real thing          | 67.3             |
| しつもん (質問)          | question                     | 40.7             |
| しつれい (失礼)          | rudeness                     | 88.13            |
| じてんしゃ (自転車)        | bicycle                      | 57.7             |
| じどうしゃ (自動車)        | car                          | 23.7             |
| しにん (死人)           | dead                         | 75.6             |
| しぬ (死ぬ)            | to die                       | 37.6             |
| しばい (芝居)           | play/theater                 | 29.2             |
| しぶや (渋谷)           | SHIBUYA (place name)         | 6.6              |
| じぶん (自分)           | oneself                      | 18.9             |
| シベリア               | SIBERIA                      | 55.5             |
| しま (島)             | island                       | 30.4             |
| しまう                | to finish/complete           | 31.14, 91. par.3 |
| じまん (自慢)           | boast/brag                   | 72.4             |
| じむしょ (事務所)         | office                       | 40.6             |
| じゃ                 | Well!                        | 54.12            |
| じゃあ                | Well!                        | 81.7             |
| しゃかい (社会)          | society                      | 88.14            |
| しゃかいがく (社会学)       | sociology                    | 92.10            |
| しゃこうせい (社交性)       | sociability                  | 69.5             |
| しゃこうてき (社交的)       | pertaining to sociability    | 71.1             |
| しゃしん (写真)          | photograph                   | 19.2             |
| ジャズ                | jazz                         | 19.8             |
| しゃつきん (借金)         | debt/loan                    | 76.12            |
| しゃない (車内)          | inside of a car              | 60.7             |
| しゃべり               | talk/chat                    | 73.13            |
| しゃみせん (三味線)        | samisen (musical instrument) | 92.9             |
| しゃめん (斜面)          | slope                        | 75.9             |
| シャワー               | shower                       | 62.1             |
| シャンペン              | champagne                    | 47.1             |
| しゅう (周)            | circuit/lap                  | 76.6             |
| じゅう (十)            | ten                          | 11.2, 63. par.1  |
| ．．．じゅう(．．．中)       | during/through               | 59.12            |
| じゅういちがつ (十一月)      | November                     | 67.12            |
| しゅうがく りょこう (修学 旅行) | school excursion             | 97.9             |

|                      |                                   |                   |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------|
| しゅうかん (週間)           | week                              | 46.13             |
| しゅうかん (習慣)           | custom/habit                      | 74.11             |
| じゅうしょ (住所)           | address                           | 38.7              |
| しゅうしょく (就職)          | employment                        | 90.2              |
| ジュース                 | juice                             | 16.11             |
| じゅうにがつ (十二月)         | December                          | 74.1              |
| じゅうぶん (十分)           | sufficient                        | 73.9              |
| しゅうまつ (週末)           | weekend                           | 32.1              |
| しゅじゅつ (手術)           | surgery                           | 53.8              |
| しゅじん (主人)            | my husband                        | 31.10, 84. par.1  |
| しゅじんこう (主人公)         | hero/heroine                      | 25.7              |
| しゅっせき (出席)           | attendance                        | 94.6              |
| しゅっちょう (出張)          | business trip/field trip          | 89.4              |
| しゅっぱつ (出発)           | departure                         | 32.1              |
| しゅっぱん (出版)           | publication                       | 25.4              |
| しゅと (首都)             | capital town                      | 76.7              |
| しゅみ (趣味)             | hobby                             | 47.5              |
| しゅるい (種類)            | kind/sort                         | 92.4              |
| じゅん . . . (純 . . . ) | net/pure                          | 66.4              |
| じゅんび (準備)            | preparation                       | 66.11             |
| . . . じょう (. . . 畳)  | measure word for tatamis          | 34.6              |
| しょうかい (紹介)           | introduction/presentation         | 15. title         |
| しょうがつ (正月)           | New Year                          | 68.10, 74. note 3 |
| しょうがっこう (小学校)        | elementary school                 | 90.9              |
| じょうきょう (上京)          | go to Tokyo                       | 80.12             |
| しょうぐん (将軍)           | shogun                            | 68.11             |
| じょうけん (条件)           | condition/requirement             | 69.6              |
| しょうご (正午)            | noon/midday                       | 44.11             |
| しょうじき (正直)           | honesty                           | 99.1              |
| しょうしゃマン (商社マン)       | trader                            | 97.11             |
| しょうしょう               | a little bit                      | 18.5              |
| しょうしん (昇進)           | promotion                         | 46.14             |
| じょうず (上手)            | good/skillful                     | 69.5              |
| しょうせつ (小説)           | novel                             | 25. title         |
| じょうたい (状態)           | state/condition                   | 87.8              |
| しょうとくたいし (聖徳太子)      | Prince SHŌTOKU<br>(personal name) | 88.5              |
| しょうばい (商売)           | business/trade                    | 48.12             |
| じょうぶ (丈夫)            | strong/well/sturdy                | 88.2              |
| しょうゆ                 | soy sauce                         | 75.11             |
| しょうらい (将来)           | future                            | 94.11             |

|                          |                                  |                  |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------|
| しやうりやう (使用料) .....       | tax                              | 45.12            |
| しやうわ (昭和) .....          | SHŌWA reign period (1926-1989)   | 88.11            |
| じやおう (女王) .....          | queen/regina                     | 94.3             |
| ジョギング .....              | jogging                          | 68.12            |
| しよくぎやう (職業) .....        | profession                       | 38.8             |
| しよくご (食後) .....          | after meal                       | 41.12            |
| しよくじ (食事) .....          | meal                             | 26.11            |
| しよくどう (食堂) .....         | dining room/restaurant           | 66.10            |
| しよくひん (食品) .....         | food                             | 48.12            |
| ショッピングセンター .....         | mall/shopping center             | 97.1             |
| じよゆう (女優) .....          | actress                          | 19.5             |
| じよりゆう (女流) .....         | female                           | 83.6             |
| しよるい (書類) .....          | forms, document                  | 38. title        |
| しらべる (調べる) .....         | to examine/investigate           | 22.9             |
| しりつ (私立) .....           | private                          | 90.10            |
| しる (知る) .....            | to know                          | 6.1              |
| しろ (城) .....             | castle                           | 68.11            |
| しろい (白い) .....           | to be white                      | 31.8             |
| しわ .....                 | wrinkle                          | 39.6             |
| . . . じん (. . . 人) ..... | national                         | 13.1, 28. par.1  |
| (after name of country)  |                                  |                  |
| しんかんせん (新幹線) .....       | SHINKANSEN ( <i>train line</i> ) | 60. title        |
| しんこん りよこう (新婚 旅行) .....  | honeymoon                        | 65.1             |
| しんしつ (寝室) .....          | bedroom                          | 66.10            |
| しんしゅう (信州) .....         | SHINSHŪ ( <i>place name</i> )    | 89.8             |
| しんじゅく (新宿) .....         | SHINJUKU ( <i>place name</i> )   | 65.2, 79. note 1 |
| しんせき (親戚) .....          | relatives                        | 36.5             |
| しんせつ (親切) .....          | kind                             | 97.1             |
| しんせん (新鮮) .....          | fresh                            | 30.12            |
| じんと .....                | strong or deep ( <i>pain</i> )   | 46.8             |
| しんねん (新年) .....          | A happy new year                 | 78.1             |
| あけまして おめでとう ございます        |                                  |                  |
| しんぱい (心配) .....          | worry/anxiety                    | 27.12            |
| じんぶつ (人物) .....          | person/figure                    | 88.4             |
| しんぶん (新聞) .....          | newspaper                        | 69.1             |
| しんりやく (侵略) .....         | invasion                         | 43.9             |

## す

|                         |                  |      |
|-------------------------|------------------|------|
| すいぞくかん (水族館) .....      | aquarium         | 6.8  |
| すいちゆう めがね (水中 眼鏡) ..... | swimming goggles | 54.4 |

|                   |                                   |           |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------|
| ずいぶん (随分)         | very/extremely                    | 13.2      |
| すいへいせん (水平線)      | horizon over the sea              | 30.9      |
| すいみん (睡眠)         | sleep                             | 73.9      |
| すいようび (水曜日)       | Wednesday                         | 46.6      |
| すいり しょうせつ (推理 小説) | crime fiction/<br>detective story | 25.3      |
| すう (吸う)           | to breathe                        | 20.13     |
| ．．． すう (．．． 数)    | number of                         | 66.9      |
| すうがく (数学)         | mathematics                       | 92.10     |
| すうねん (数年)         | some years                        | 76.8      |
| スープ               | soup                              | 9.5       |
| すがた (姿)           | figure/shape                      | 68.10     |
| すき (好き)           | be liked/be loved                 | 10.9      |
| ．．． すぎ            | past/over                         | 62.5      |
| スキー               | skiing                            | 72. title |
| すきま (隙間)          | opening/gap                       | 76.1      |
| すぎる (過ぎる)         | to exceed/pass                    | 48.7      |
| すく                | to be empty                       | 62.5      |
| すぐ                | immediately                       | 16.12     |
| すごい               | to be extraordinary               | 32.12     |
| すこし (少し)          | a bit                             | 26.8      |
| すごす (過ごす)         | to spend/pass                     | 97.7      |
| すし (寿司)           | sushi                             | 16.10     |
| すずしい (涼しい)        | to be cool ( <i>weather</i> )     | 60.10     |
| すすむ (進む)          | to advance/proceed                | 32.4      |
| すすめる (勧める)        | to advise/recommend               | 18.10     |
| スタジアム             | stadium                           | 97.9      |
| ．．． ずつ            | each                              | 39.13     |
| すっかり              | all/completely                    | 74.11     |
| ずっと               | plenty                            | 82.8      |
| すてき               | to be wonderful                   | 74.3      |
| すな (砂)            | sand                              | 54.12     |
| スパイ               | spy                               | 25.8      |
| すばらしい             | wonderful/magnificent             | 30.9      |
| スピーカー             | loudspeaker                       | 58.4      |
| スピード              | speed                             | 32.4      |
| スペイン              | SPAIN                             | 38.6      |
| すべて               | all/every                         | 76.7      |
| スポーツ              | sport                             | 52.6      |
| スポンサー             | sponsor                           | 92.13     |
| すみ (墨)            | ink                               | 89.9      |

|                |                       |                                  |
|----------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| すみません.....     | Excuse me!            | 40.7                             |
| すむ (住む) .....  | to live in            | 15.2                             |
| すむ (澄む) .....  | to be clear           | 75.2                             |
| すもう (相撲) ..... | sumō ( <i>sport</i> ) | 10.1                             |
| する.....        | to do                 | 8.1, 20.12, 42. par.4, 77. par.2 |
| すわる (座る) ..... | to sit                | 54.12                            |

## せ

|                         |  |                 |
|-------------------------|--|-----------------|
| せ (背) .....             | back/stature                             | 71.5            |
| せいかく (正確) .....         | accuracy                                 | 61.9            |
| せいかつ (生活) .....         | life/living                              | 71.4            |
| ぜいかん (税関) .....         | custom                                   | 4. title        |
| せいき (世紀) .....          | century                                  | 88.5            |
| せいげん (制限) .....         | restriction/limit                        | 32.4            |
| せいじか (政治家) .....        | politician                               | 88.6            |
| せい しょうなごん (清 少納言) ..... | Sei Shōnagon<br>( <i>personal name</i> ) | 83.5            |
| せいぞう (製造) .....         | production/manufacture                   | 40.6            |
| せいと (生徒) .....          | pupil/student                            | 82.1            |
| せいひん (製品) .....         | product                                  | 40.3            |
| せいふ (政府) .....          | government                               | 78.7            |
| せいよう (西洋) .....         | west/Occident                            | 88.10           |
| せいれき (西暦) .....         | Common Era/A.D.                          | 95.1            |
| せかい (世界) .....          | world                                    | 76.6            |
| せちりょうり (節料理) .....      | New Year's cooking                       | 74.7            |
| せっかく.....               | rare occasion/especially                 | 72.12           |
| せっかち.....               | impatience                               | 81.11           |
| せっけん.....               | soap                                     | 80.9            |
| せったい (接待) .....         | reception                                | 69.5            |
| せつび (設備) .....          | equipment                                | 62.6            |
| せつめい (説明) .....         | explanation                              | 38.1            |
| せとないかい (瀬戸内海) .....     | SETONAIKAI/<br>the Inland Sea            | 30.4            |
| せなか (背中) .....          | back                                     | 54.13           |
| ぜひ (是非) .....           | at all cost/without fail                 | 19.14           |
| せびろ (背広) .....          | suit ( <i>for a man</i> )                | 74.1            |
| せまい (狭い) .....          | to be narrow/small                       | 24.2            |
| せわ (世話) .....           | care/charge                              | 78.3            |
| せん (千) .....            | thousand                                 | 17.6, 63. par.1 |
| ぜん. . . (全. . . ) ..... | all/whole                                | 76.8            |

|                       |                    |           |
|-----------------------|--------------------|-----------|
| ぜん (善)                | good/virtue        | 89.5      |
| せんきょ (選挙)             | election           | 58. title |
| せんけつ (先決)             | previous decision  | 76.12     |
| せんげつ (先月)             | last month         | 73.12     |
| ぜんじどう (全自動)           | entirely automatic | 65.10     |
| せんしゅう (先週)            | last week          | 29.14     |
| せんせい (先生)             | teacher            | 33.7      |
| ぜんぜん (全然) (+negative) | at all/no          | 24.6      |
| せんそう (戦争)             | war                | 18.2      |
| せんたく (洗濯)             | washing/cleaning   | 59.2      |
| せんたくき (洗濯機)           | washing machine    | 62. title |
| せんとう (銭湯)             | public bath        | 76.1      |
| セントラル・ヒーティング          | central heating    | 31.14     |
| ぜんぶ (全部)              | all/entirely       | 31.14     |
| せんべい (煎餅)             | rice cracker       | 93.8      |

## そ

|                |                     |                            |
|----------------|---------------------|----------------------------|
| そう             | so                  | 1.7, 98. par.5             |
| そう             | to go along/border  | 57.4                       |
| ... そう (です)    | it seems that       | 53.3                       |
| ... そう (です)    | seemingly           | 71.2. note 2, 81.1. note 1 |
| ぞう (象)         | elephant            | 39.6                       |
| そうこ (倉庫)       | warehouse           | 40.5                       |
| そうしき (葬式)      | funeral             | 67.7                       |
| そうじき (掃除機)     | cleaner             | 59.7                       |
| そうりだいじん (総理大臣) | prime minister      | 94.3                       |
| そくたつ (速達)      | special delivery    | 61.9                       |
| そこ             | there               | 6.6, 98. par.5             |
| そして            | and/then            | 30.7                       |
| そちら            | there               | 96.11, 98. par.5           |
| そつぎょう (卒業)     | graduation, diploma | 23.2                       |
| そと (外)         | outside/outdoors    | 60.10                      |
| その             | this, these         | 17.1, 98. par.5            |
| そのあと           | after that          | 72.10                      |
| そのうえ           | besides/in addition | 37.2                       |
| その うちに         | right after         | 23.12, 98. par.5           |
| そのご (その後)      | next/afterward      | 51.5                       |
| その たんび に       | each time/whenever  | 72.10                      |
| そのまま           | just as it is       | 32.13, 98. par.5           |
| そば             | side                | 51.5                       |

|         |                        |                        |
|---------|------------------------|------------------------|
| そふ (祖父) | ..... my grandfather   | 84. par.1, 89.8        |
| そぼ (祖母) | ..... my grandmother   | 84. par.1, 89. par.11  |
| そら (空)  | ..... sky              | 48.3                   |
| それ      | ..... it/those/that    | 4.7                    |
| それから    | ..... then/afterwards  | 6.7, 98. par.5         |
| それじゃ    | ..... Well!            | 64.6                   |
| それで     | ..... and/and so/well  | 52.5, 98. par.5        |
| それでは    | ..... Well!            | 3.11, 98. par.5        |
| それでも    | ..... nevertheless     | 11.7, 98. par.5        |
| それとも    | ..... or else          | 29.9, 98. par.5        |
| それなら    | ..... if so            | 11.9, 98. par.5        |
| それに     | ..... furthermore      | 26.9, 98. par.5        |
| それほど    | ..... at this point    | 24.12, 98. par.5       |
| そろそろ    | ..... slowly/gradually | 48.1                   |
| そんな     | ..... such/so          | 68. ex. 1.1, 98. par.5 |
| そんな に   | ..... that/so          | 20.4, 98. par.5        |

## た

|                  |  |                 |
|------------------|--|-----------------|
| た (田)            | .....ricefield                           | 36.11           |
| だい (第) (+number) | .....(number)... nd, th                  | 1. title        |
| ... だい (. . . 台) | .....measure word for vehicles           | 34.7, 63. par.1 |
| だい (題)           | ..... subject/theme/title                | 50.13           |
| たいいん (退院) する     | ..... to leave hospital                  | 23.13           |
| ダイエット            | ..... diet                               | 12.11           |
| だいがく (大学)        | ..... university/college                 | 23.2            |
| だいがくせい (大学生)     | ..... university student                 | 90.6            |
| たいくつ (退屈)        | ..... boredom/dull-ness                  | 55.11           |
| たいざい (滞在)        | ..... stay/visit                         | 38.11           |
| たいしかん (大使館)      | ..... embassy                            | 95.1            |
| たいしょう (大正)       | ..... TAISHŌ reign period<br>(1912-1926) | 88.11           |
| だいじょうぶ (大丈夫)     | ..... all right/no problem               | 27.6            |
| たいしょく (退職)       | ..... retirement/resignation             | 59.12           |
| だいすき (大好き)       | ..... be liked very much                 | 9.3             |
| たいせつ (大切)        | ..... importance                         | 99.11           |
| たいせん (大戦)        | ..... major war/world war                | 88. ex. 1.2     |
| だいどころ (台所)       | ..... kitchen                            | 34.8            |
| だいなし             | ..... spoiled/ruined                     | 72.12           |
| ダイニング            | ..... dining room                        | 34.5            |
| だいひょうてき (代表的)    | ..... representative/exponent            | 83.8            |

|                     |                           |                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------|-------------------|
| だいぶ (大分)            | considerably/fairly/quite | 53.11             |
| たいへん (大変)           | very/greatly              | 11.10             |
| ダイヤモンド              | diamond                   | 76.3              |
| たいよう (太陽)           | sun                       | 30.5              |
| たえる (耐える)           | to bear                   | 85.5              |
| タオル                 | towel                     | 31.1              |
| たかい (高い)            | to be high/expensive      | 5.9               |
| だから                 | that's why                | 34.13             |
| たくさん                | many                      | 6.10              |
| タクシー                | taxi                      | 51. title         |
| だけ                  | only                      | 4.7               |
| たしか (確か)            | certain/sure              | 60.10             |
| たす (足す)             | to add                    | 95.3              |
| だす (出す)             | to bring out              | 46.9              |
| たすかる                | to be saved               | 20.11             |
| たずねる                | to visit                  | 70. par.3, 86.14  |
| ただ                  | ordinary, common          | 46.12             |
| ただいま                | I'm home!                 | 73.1              |
| ただしい (正しい)          | to be right/proper        | 99.7              |
| たたみ (畳)             | tatami/mat                | 80.5              |
| たたむ (畳む)            | to fold                   | 80.3              |
| . . . たち (. . . 達)  | (plural marker)           | 66.11, 76. note 9 |
| たつ (経つ)             | to pass                   | 46.8              |
| たつ (立つ)             | to stand                  | 24.10             |
| たっしや (達者)           | expert                    | 90.6              |
| だって                 | [quotation]               | 44.12             |
| . . . だて (. . . 建て) | -storied                  | 76.1, 85. note 7  |
| たてもの (建物)           | building                  | 40.6              |
| たてる (建てる)           | to build/construct        | 37.7              |
| たとえば                | for example               | 36.11             |
| たのしい (楽しい)          | to be pleasant            | 39.14             |
| たのしみ (楽しみ) に する     | to be delighted           | 41.10             |
| たのしむ (楽しむ)          | to enjoy                  | 66.5              |
| たのむ (頼む)            | to request                | 29.13             |
| タバコ                 | cigarette                 | 20.13             |
| タバコや (タバコ屋)         | tobacco dealer's          | 20.1              |
| たびたび (度々)           | often                     | 45.1              |
| タヒチ                 | TAHITI                    | 76.10             |
| たべすぎ (食べすぎ)         | to overeat                | 46.12             |
| たべもの (食べ物)          | food                      | 46.13             |
| たべる (食べる)           | to eat                    | 3.3               |



|                        |       |                             |              |
|------------------------|-------|-----------------------------|--------------|
| たま (玉)                 | ..... | ball/bead                   | 51.12        |
| たまご (卵)                | ..... | egg                         | 3.11         |
| たまに                    | ..... | occasionally/at times       | 73.9         |
| たまらない                  | ..... | cannot stand                | 54.13        |
| ため (after noun)        | ..... | for/on account of           | 16.11        |
| ため (after verb)        | ..... | to/in order to              | 38.12        |
| ため                     | ..... | for/because                 | 60.9         |
| だめ (駄目)                | ..... | useless/hopeless/impossible | 67.9, 75.5   |
| ためいき (溜息)              | ..... | sigh                        | 48.5         |
| ... たら                 | ..... | if/when                     | 60.12, 62.9  |
| ... だらけ                | ..... | full of                     | 39.6         |
| ... たり ... たり する (できる) | ..... | enumeration of actions      | 76.10, 92.14 |
| たりる (足りる)              | ..... | to be enough, to suffice    | 32.13        |
| だれ                     | ..... | who?                        | 19.1         |
| だれか                    | ..... | someone/anyone              | 69.1         |
| だれも (+negative)        | ..... | nobody/none                 | 30.8         |
| タワー                    | ..... | tower                       | 6.1          |
| たんか (短歌)               | ..... | tanka (poetical genre)      | 89.9         |
| だんご (団子)               | ..... | dumpling/cake               | 89.11        |
| だんじょ (男女)              | ..... | man and woman               | 62.8         |
| たんじょうび (誕生日)           | ..... | birthday                    | 29.1         |
| だんだん (段々)              | ..... | gradually                   | 36.8         |

## ち

|                             |       |                     |                  |
|-----------------------------|-------|---------------------|------------------|
| ちいさい (小さい)                  | ..... | to be small         | 27.10, 77. par.1 |
| チェック・イン                     | ..... | check in            | 44.11            |
| ちか (地下)                     | ..... | basement/underworld | 79.6             |
| ちかい (近い)                    | ..... | to be near/close    | 6.5              |
| ちかく (近く)                    | ..... | near/vicinity       | 57.12            |
| ちかづく (近づく)                  | ..... | to approach/come    | 58.11            |
| ちかてつ (地下鉄)                  | ..... | subway              | 31.5             |
| ちきゅう (地球)                   | ..... | the Earth           | 43.4             |
| ちじん (知人)                    | ..... | acquaintance        | 67.7             |
| ちち (父)                      | ..... | my father           | 64.11, 84. par.1 |
| ちゃ (茶)                      | ..... | tea                 | 34.6             |
| ちやいろ (茶色)                   | ..... | brown               | 96.8             |
| ちやわん (茶碗)                   | ..... | teacup              | 17.1             |
| ちゃん (after a personal name) | ..... | (very informal)     | 39.11            |
| ちゃんと                        | ..... | correctly/exactly   | 61.5             |

|                           |                                  |           |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------|
| チャンネル.....                | TV channel                       | 92.4      |
| . . . ちゅう (. . . 中) ..... | during/throughout                | 78.3      |
| ちゅういがき (注意書き) .....       | note/warning                     | 95.1      |
| ちゅうがくせい (中学生) .....       | junior high school student       | 97.9      |
| ちゅうがっこう (中学校) .....       | junior high school               | 90.5      |
| ちゅうかりょうり (中華料理) .....     | Chinese food                     | 9. title  |
| ちゅうごく (中国) .....          | CHINA                            | 26. title |
| ちゅうだん (中断) .....          | interruption/break               | 92.14     |
| チューリップ.....               | tulip                            | 53.9      |
| ちよう (腸) .....             | bowel/intestine                  | 53.8      |
| ちようし (調子) .....           | tone/style                       | 41.13     |
| ちようしょく (朝食) .....         | breakfast                        | 3. title  |
| ちようてい (朝廷) .....          | the Imperial Court               | 83.7      |
| ちようど.....                 | just/exactly                     | 24.10     |
| チョコレート.....               | chocolate                        | 93.9      |
| ちよだく (千代田区) .....         | CHIYODA-KU ( <i>place name</i> ) | 68.7      |
| ちよっと.....                 | a bit                            | 17.7      |
| ちりよう (治療) .....           | treatment/remedy                 | 46.4      |
| ちる (散る) .....             | to fall/scatter                  | 89.3      |

つ

|                  |                                     |                  |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------|
| ついたち (一日) .....  | first day of month                  | 65.4, 70. par.1  |
| ついで に.....       | on the same occasion/simultaneously | 59.7             |
| ついに (遂に) .....   | at last/finally                     | 97.11            |
| つうこう (通行) .....  | passage/traffic                     | 82.2             |
| つうやく (通訳) .....  | interpretation/interpreter          | 97.11            |
| つうろ (通路) .....   | passage/aisle                       | 79.6             |
| つかう (使う) .....   | to use                              | 31.14, 77. par.3 |
| つかえる (仕える) ..... | to serve/attend                     | 37.1             |
| つかまる (捉まる) ..... | to trap/seize                       | 32.12            |
| つかる (浸かる) .....  | to be flooded/soak                  | 62.5             |
| つかれ (疲れ) .....   | tiredness/strain                    | 73.3             |
| つかれる (疲れる) ..... | to be tired                         | 75.1             |
| つき (月) .....     | moon                                | 43.7             |
| つき (次) .....     | following/next                      | 19.13, 77. par.1 |
| つく (着く) .....    | to arrive/at                        | 5.6              |
| つく.....          | to stick                            | 31.11            |
| つくえ (机) .....    | desk                                | 80.5             |
| つくる (作る) .....   | to make/produce                     | 18.11            |
| つけっぱなし.....      | working on (radio, TV)              | 47.10            |

|            |       |                       |                 |
|------------|-------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| つける        | ..... | to attach/put         | 36.10           |
| つごう (都合)   | ..... | circumstances         | 19.10           |
| つづき (続き)   | ..... | the following         | 37. title       |
| つづく (続く)   | ..... | to continue/last      | 20.12           |
| つづける (続ける) | ..... | to continue/keep      | 99.14           |
| ..... って   | ..... | [quotation]           | 67.1            |
| つとめ (勤め)   | ..... | to work/be employed   | 23.6            |
| つとめる (勤める) | ..... | to serve/work         | 23.7            |
| つま (妻)     | ..... | my wife               | 34.6, 84. par.1 |
| つまらない      | ..... | to be dull/boring     | 55.6            |
| つまり        | ..... | that is to say/namely | 75.6            |
| つめたい (冷たい) | ..... | to be cold/cool       | 54.7            |
| つもり        | ..... | intention             | 25.4            |
| つよい (強い)   | ..... | to be strong          | 30.5            |
| つらい        | ..... | to be hard/bitter     | 20.13           |
| つる (釣る)    | ..... | to fish               | 30.12           |
| ..... づれ   | ..... | in company of         | 82.5            |
| つれる (連れる)  | ..... | to accompany          | 26.4            |

## て

|             |       |                          |                 |
|-------------|-------|--------------------------|-----------------|
| て (手)       | ..... | hand/arm                 | 64.13           |
| で           | ..... | [means]/[place]          | 6.6, 14. par.3  |
| ていねん (定年)   | ..... | retirement age/age limit | 66.6            |
| テーブル        | ..... | table                    | 82.3            |
| でかける (出掛ける) | ..... | to go/leave              | 67.5            |
| てがみ (手紙)    | ..... | letter                   | 39. title       |
| できあがる       | ..... | to finish/complete       | 40.5            |
| てきこく (敵国)   | ..... | enemy country            | 43.11           |
| テキスト        | ..... | textbook/text            | 99.7            |
| できる         | ..... | to be able/be possible   | 13.9, 42. par.5 |
| できる         | ..... | to be complete           | 40.5, 42. par.5 |
| でぐち (出口)    | ..... | exit/outlet              | 79.8            |
| で ございます     | ..... | it's (high degree, l)    | 44.1, 70. par.3 |
| デザート        | ..... | dessert                  | 93.7            |
| ですから        | ..... | therefore                | 30.6            |
| でつだう (手伝う)  | ..... | to help/assist           | 80.14           |
| テニス         | ..... | tennis                   | 38.13           |
| では          | ..... | now/well                 | 17.11           |
| デパート        | ..... | department store         | 5.2             |
| ..... ても    | ..... | even if                  | 62.8            |

|                     |   |           |
|---------------------|---|-----------|
| でも                  | .....but/however                          | 5.9       |
| ... でも (after noun) | ..... even/even if/however                | 58.12     |
| でら (寺)              | ..... bouddhist, monastery                | 57.4      |
| でる (出る)             | ..... to go out/leave                     | 27.13     |
| テレビ                 | ..... television                          | 10. title |
| ... てん (. . . 展)    | ..... exhibition                          | 2. title  |
| てん (点)              | ..... point/dot                           | 43.7      |
| てんき (天気)            | ..... weather                             | 16.2      |
| でんき (電気)            | ..... electricity                         | 40.3      |
| でんきやさん (電気屋さん)      | ..... electrician                         | 59.1      |
| てんきん (転勤)           | ..... transfer/removal                    | 69.3      |
| てんごく (天国)           | ..... heaven/paradise                     | 82.2      |
| でんしゃ (電車)           | ..... train                               | 6.6, 32.9 |
| テント                 | ..... tent                                | 75.1      |
| てんのう (天皇)           | ..... emperor                             | 68.5      |
| てんぷら                | ..... tempura ( <i>Japanese cuisine</i> ) | 29.3      |
| でんわ (電話)            | ..... phone/call                          | 13.10     |
| でんわちょう (電話帳)        | ..... phone book                          | 36.3      |

## と

|                  |  |                   |
|------------------|--|-------------------|
| と                | .....and ( <i>between two nouns</i> )              | 4.6               |
| と                | .....[quotation]                                   | 15.1, 36.10, 37.9 |
| と (after verb)   | ..... when/if                                      | 46.10             |
| ... ど (. . . 度)  | ..... ( <i>number</i> ) times                      | 58.8, 60.12       |
| ... ど (. . . 度)  | ..... ( <i>number</i> ) degree                     | 81.4              |
| ドア               | ..... door   | 74.1              |
| ドイツ              | ..... GERMANY                                      | 78.7              |
| トイレ              | ..... bathroom/toilet                              | 92.14             |
| ... とう (. . . 頭) | ..... <i>measure word</i><br>for large animals     | 39.6, 63. par.1   |
| とう (十)           | ..... ten  | 61.3, 70. par.1   |
| どう               | ..... how  | 6.3               |
| どう いたしまして        | ..... you are welcome                              | 83.12             |
| とうか (十日)         | ..... ten days                                     | 61.3, 70. par.1   |
| とうきょう (東京)       | ..... TŌKYŌ  | 6. title          |
| どうして             | ..... why/how?                                     | 36.5              |
| とうしょうだいじ (唐招提寺)  | ..... TŌSHŌDAIJI<br>( <i>name of a monastery</i> ) | 57.5              |
| どうぞ              | ..... please/by all means                          | 9.10              |
| どうぞう (銅像)        | ..... bronze statue                                | 33.1              |

|                       |                             |             |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|-------------|
| とうだい (東大) .....       | Tōkyō University            | 23.3        |
| とうだいじ (東大寺) .....     | TŌDAIJI                     |             |
|                       | (name of a monastery)       | 57.5        |
| どうぶつ (動物) .....       | animal                      | 82.9        |
| どうぶつえん (動物園) .....    | zoo                         | 39.1        |
| どうも (ありがとう) .....     | Thanks!                     | 17.12       |
| どうりょう (同僚) .....      | colleague                   | 32.1        |
| とおい (遠い) .....        | to be far                   | 20.3        |
| とおる (通る) .....        | to pass/go along            | 57.3        |
| とき (時) .....          | time                        | 32.9        |
| ときどき (時々) .....       | sometimes                   | 10.6        |
| とくしゅ (特殊) .....       | special/particular          | 92. ex. 1.3 |
| とくに (特に) .....        | especially                  | 47.3        |
| とくべつ (特別) .....       | special                     | 68.2        |
| とけい (時計) .....        | clock/watch                 | 80.9        |
| とこ .....              | place (low degree)          | 87.9        |
| どこ .....              | where?                      | 1.4         |
| どこか .....             | somewhere                   | 29.1        |
| ところ (所) .....         | place/spot                  | 27.13       |
| ところが .....            | but                         | 61.3        |
| ところで .....            | now/by the way              | 50.1        |
| とし (年) .....          | year                        | 95.8        |
| としこし そば (年越 蕎麦) ..... | New Year's Soba (dish)      | 74.9        |
| . . . と して .....      | as/for                      | 78.7        |
| としょかん (図書館) .....     | library                     | 83.3        |
| とちじ (都知事) .....       | the Governor/Mayor of Tōkyō | 58.14       |
| とちゅう (途中) .....       | on the way/halfway          | 75.13       |
| どちら .....             | which/where?                | 10.9        |
| とつぎさき (嫁ぎ先) .....     | in-laws (female)            | 86.8        |
| とつぜん (突然) .....       | suddenly                    | 86.14       |
| どっち .....             | which/where?                | 29.10       |
| とても .....             | very                        | 9.13        |
| ととのう (整う) .....       | to be ready/prepared        | 74.7        |
| どなた .....             | who? (high degree)          | 86.2        |
| どなたか .....            | somebody (high degree)      | 96.2        |
| となり (隣) .....         | neighbor                    | 20.6        |
| どの .....              | which/what?                 | 51.4        |
| どのぐらい .....           | about how much?             | 25.13       |
| とびうつる (飛び移る) .....    | to jump                     | 39.9        |
| とびたつ (飛び立つ) .....     | to fly away                 | 43.8        |
| とまる (泊まる) .....       | to stay/lodge               | 57.9        |

|            |                    |                    |
|------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| とまる (止まる)  | .....to stop/pause | 68.1               |
| ともだち (友達)  | .....              | friend 8.2         |
| どようび (土曜日) | .....              | Saturday 19.9      |
| トラクター      | .....              | tractor 97.7       |
| トラック       | .....              | truck/lorry 32.5   |
| トランク       | .....              | trunk/suitcase 4.4 |
| とり (鳥)     | .....              | bird 93.2          |
| とる (取る)    | .....              | to take 9.5        |
| どれ         | .....              | which? 65.9        |
| とれる (取れる)  | .....              | to come off 59.6   |
| どンドン       | .....              | abundantly 64.12   |
| どんな        | .....              | of what kind? 19.7 |

## な

|                      |                   |  |
|----------------------|-------------------|--|
| な                    | .....[reflection] | 19.12                                    |
| ナイフ                  | .....             | knife 80.8                               |
| ないよう (内容)            | .....             | contents 43.13                           |
| なおす (直す)             | .....             | to repair/correct 59.2                   |
| なおる (直る)             | .....             | to heal/recover 46.4                     |
| なか (中)               | .....             | inside/interior 4.4                      |
| ながい (長い)             | .....             | to be long 25.12                         |
| なかなか (+negative)     | .....             | not at all 47.8                          |
| なかま (仲間)             | .....             | friend/fellow 47.11                      |
| ながめ (眺め)             | .....             | view/scene 24.9                          |
| ...ながら (after verb)  | .....             | ...as/while 58.8                         |
| なく (泣く)              | .....             | to cry 39.11                             |
| なくなる                 | .....             | to pass away/die 37.2                    |
| なさる                  | .....             | to do (high degree, YOU) 46.4, 70. par.3 |
| なす (那須)              | .....             | NASU (place name) 68.8                   |
| なぜ                   | .....             | why? 33.3                                |
| なつ (夏)               | .....             | summer 30. title                         |
| なつかしい                | .....             | to be longing for... 78.9                |
| なつめ そうせき (夏目 漱石)     | .....             | NATSUME Sōseki<br>(personal name) 88.12  |
| ...など (after noun)   | .....             | and so on/etc. 33.3, 36. note 2          |
| なな (七)               | .....             | seven 63. par.1, 88.5                    |
| なにか (何か)             | .....             | something 34.1                           |
| なにも (何も) (+negative) | .....             | nothing 24.10                            |
| なまえ (名前)             | .....             | name (of a person) 36.1                  |
| なみ (波)               | .....             | wave 89. ex. 1.4                         |

|                      |                                 |                 |
|----------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| なら (after noun)..... | if it is                        | 29.8            |
| なら (奈良) .....        | NARA (place name)               | 57.1            |
| ならう (習う) .....       | to learn/study                  | 64.3, 77. par.3 |
| ならす (鳴らす) .....      | to ring/sound                   | 74.1            |
| ならぶ (並ぶ) .....       | to line/queue                   | 39.3            |
| ならべる (並べる) .....     | to arrange/line                 | 82.3            |
| なりた (成田) .....       | NARITA (place name)             | 27.3            |
| なる .....             | to become                       | 22.11           |
| なるべく .....           | as ... as possible/ if possible | 78.11           |
| なん／なに (何) .....      | what?                           | 2.2, 8. note 5  |
| ... なんか .....        | this kind of                    | 80.5            |
| なんて .....            | so-called                       | 43.13           |
| なんでも (何でも) .....     | anything/everything             | 92.7            |
| なんようび (何曜日) .....    | what day of the week?           | 53.4            |

## に

|                         |  |                  |
|-------------------------|--|------------------|
| に.....                  | [place], [goal], [adverbial]                 | 4.3, 14. par.3   |
| に.....                  | [addition]                                   | 16.10            |
| に.....                  | [agent]                                      | 32.12, 35. par.1 |
| に (二) .....             | two  | 24.10, 63. par.1 |
| にあう (似合う) .....         | to suit/match                                | 71.5             |
| にぎやか.....               | usy/lively/cheerful                          | 51.10            |
| にく (肉) .....            | flesh/meat                                   | 9.5              |
| にし (西) .....            | west   | 30.4             |
| にせ (偽) .....            | false/fake                                   | 82.10            |
| にちじょう (日常) .....        | daily/ordinary                               | 94. title        |
| にちようび (日曜日) .....       | Sunday                                       | 16.1             |
| に ついて.....              | about/on/of                                  | 66.1             |
| にっこう (日航) .....         | Japan Air Lines                              | 27.3             |
| につせき (日赤) .....         | Japanese Red Cross                           | 53.3             |
| にっちゅう (日中) .....        | daytime/day                                  | 30.10            |
| にとべ いなぞう (新渡戸 稲造) ..... | NITOBE Inazō<br>(personal name)              | 88.11            |
| にほん (日本) .....          | JAPAN  | 18.7             |
| にもつ (荷物) .....          | baggage/luggage                              | 27.9             |
| にゆういん (入院) する.....      | to be in hospital                            | 23.9             |
| にゆうがく (入学) する.....      | to enter a school,<br>a university/to enroll | 38.12            |
| にゆうきよ (入居) する.....      | to move into (a new house)                   | 34.13            |
| ニュース.....               | news   | 10.8             |

にる (似る) ..... to resemble 39.9  
にお (庭) ..... garden/yard 34.3  
... にん (. . . 人) ..... *measure word for persons*  
**47.11, 63. par.1, 70. par.1**  
人間..... human being 88.14

## ぬ

... ぬき..... without 99.9  
ぬける (抜ける) ..... to fall out/pass through 59.11

## ね

ね..... [agreement] 1.6  
ねえさん (姉さん) ..... my elder sister 84. **par.1, 90.4**  
ねがい (願い) ..... request 45.13  
ねかせる (寝かせる) ..... to bed/put down 75.6  
ねこ (猫) ..... cat 50.9  
ねじ..... screw 59.6  
ねだん (値段) ..... price/cost 65.8  
ねつ (熱) ..... heat/temperature/fever 81.3  
ねむい (眠い) ..... to be sleepy 39.10  
ねむる (眠る) ..... to sleep 60.11  
ねる (寝る) ..... to go to bed 11.4  
... ねん (. . . 年) ..... year 15.3  
... ねんかん (. . . 年間) ..... year (*duration*) 37.5  
ねんごう (年号) ..... name of an era 95. **title**  
ねんし (年始) ..... the New Year 74.9  
... ねんせい (. . . 年生) ..... grade/year 90.5  
ねんだい (年代) ..... period, era 40.5

## の

の..... [relation] 4.4, 91. **par.4**  
の..... [question] 38.3, 91. **par.4**  
の..... [replacement] 38.3, 91. **par.4**  
の..... the fact of 47.7, 91. **par.4**  
の..... [subject] 55.11, 91. **par.4**  
のうぎょう (農業) ..... agriculture 64.11  
のうじょう (農場) ..... farm 97.6  
のこる (残る) ..... to stay 45.6  
のちほど (後ほど) ..... later 69.11





|                    |                                  |                  |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|------------------|
| はた (旗)             | flag/banner                      | 58.3             |
| はだか (裸)            | undressed/naked                  | 62.8             |
| はたけ (畑)            | field                            | 57.4             |
| はたち (二十)           | twenty years old                 | 70. par.1, 83.4  |
| はたらく (働く)          | to work                          | 11.8             |
| はち (八)             | eight                            | 32.4, 63. par.1  |
| はつおん (発音)          | pronunciation                    | 35               |
| はっきり               | clear/vivid/articulate           | 55.13            |
| ばっきん (罰金)          | fine/penalty                     | 32.12            |
| バッグ                | bag                              | 27.10            |
| ハッピー・エンド           | happy ending                     | 43.11            |
| はて (果て)            | extremity/end                    | 43.9             |
| パト・カー              | patrol car                       | 32.12            |
| はな (鼻)             | nose                             | 50.11            |
| はな (花)             | flower                           | 53.7             |
| はなし (話)            | talk/speech/story                | 25.6             |
| はなしあう (話しあう)       | to talk/discuss                  | 66.1             |
| はなす (話す)           | to speak/talk                    | 33.4             |
| はなみ (花見)           | picnic under the cherry blossoms | 89. title        |
| はなれる (離れる)         | to be distant/to leave           | 44.7             |
| はは (母)             | my mother                        | 84. par.1, 97.1  |
| はら (原)             | field/plain                      | 61.5             |
| はらじゅく (原宿)         | HARAJUKU (place name)            | 68.1             |
| はやい (早い)           | to be early                      | 27.5             |
| はやい (速い)           | to be fast/quick                 | 32.9             |
| はやく                | early/fast                       | 1.1              |
| はらう (払う)           | to pay                           | 32.12, 77. par.3 |
| はり (鍼)             | needle                           | 81.8             |
| パリ                 | PARIS                            | 55.7             |
| はる (春)             | spring                           | 26.1             |
| はる (張る)            | to stretch/draw                  | 52.5             |
| はれる (晴れる)          | to clear/lift                    | 93.3             |
| . . . はん (. . . 半) | and a half                       | 30.7             |
| ばん (晩)             | evening                          | 26.11            |
| パン                 | bread                            | 3.3              |
| ばんぐみ (番組)          | program/show                     | 92.4             |
| ばんごはん (晩御飯)        | supper/dinner                    | 83.11            |
| パンダ                | panda                            | 39.12            |
| ばんち (番地)           | house number                     | 61.5             |
| はんとう (半島)          | peninsula                        | 67.5             |
| ハンド・バッグ            | handbag/purse                    | 76.3             |

|           |       |                                     |       |
|-----------|-------|-------------------------------------|-------|
| はんにち (半日) | ..... | half a day                          | 72.10 |
| はんぶん (半分) | ..... | half/halfway                        | 61.4  |
| ばんめし (晩飯) | ..... | supper/dinner ( <i>low degree</i> ) | 75.3  |

## ひ

|                |       |                             |                  |
|----------------|-------|-----------------------------|------------------|
| ひ (日)          | ..... | sun/day                     | 30.12            |
| ひ (火)          | ..... | fire                        | 85.5             |
| び (美)          | ..... | beauty                      | 85.8             |
| ピアノ            | ..... | piano                       | 29.6             |
| ピーナッツ          | ..... | peanut                      | 39.8             |
| ビール            | ..... | beer                        | 3.7              |
| ヒーロー           | ..... | hero                        | 43.10            |
| ビオロン           | ..... | violin                      | 48.5             |
| ひかえる (控える)     | ..... | to abstain/hold back        | 46.13            |
| ひがし (東)        | ..... | east                        | 79.11            |
| ひからびる          | ..... | to dry up/shrivel           | 80.9             |
| ひかり (光)        | ..... | light                       | 30.5             |
| ひく (引く)        | ..... | to pull/draw/lead/subtract  | 81.2             |
| ひく (弾く)        | ..... | to play (an instrument)     | 96.10            |
| ピクニック          | ..... | picnic                      | 16.3             |
| ひぐれ (日暮れ)      | ..... | sunset                      | 48.6             |
| ひこうき (飛行機)     | ..... | plane                       | 27.2             |
| ひこうじょう (飛行場)   | ..... | airport                     | 27.4             |
| ひさしぶり (久しぶり) に | ..... | after a long separation     | 73.8             |
| びじゅつかん (美術館)   | ..... | art museum                  | 50. title        |
| ひしょ (避暑)       | ..... | escaping the summer heat    | 76.2             |
| ひじょう に (非常に)   | ..... | very/greatly                | 50.7             |
| ひだり (左)        | ..... | left                        | 17.3             |
| びだんし (美男子)     | ..... | handsome boy                | 94.10            |
| びっくり する        | ..... | to be surprised/amazed      | 80.13            |
| ひつよう (必要)      | ..... | necessary                   | 34.7             |
| ビデオ            | ..... | video                       | 82.1             |
| ひと (人)         | ..... | person                      | 19.1             |
| ひどい            | ..... | to be terrible/dreadful     | 80.13            |
| ひどい め (目) に あう | ..... | to have a bad/terrible time | 72.2             |
| ひとごみ (人込み)     | ..... | crowd                       | 94.2             |
| ひとつ (一つ)       | ..... | one                         | 65.1, 70. par.1  |
| ひとびと (人々)      | ..... | people                      | 37.7             |
| ひとり (一人)       | ..... | one person                  | 44.3, 70. par.1  |
| ひとりで (一人で)     | ..... | alone/by oneself            | 47.12, 70. par.1 |

|                    |                               |                   |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------|
| ひので (日の出)          | sunrise                       | 74.9              |
| ひま (暇)             | free time/leisure             | 26.9              |
| ひゃく (百)            | hundred                       | 22.10, 63. par.1  |
| ひゃくしょう (百姓)        | farmer                        | 97.7              |
| ひやけ (日焼け)          | sunburn                       | 54.13             |
| ひやす (冷やす)          | to cool/refrigerate           | 74.4              |
| びよういん (美容院)        | beauty salon                  | 82.10             |
| びよういん (病院)         | hospital                      | 46.7              |
| びょうき (病気)          | sickness/disease              | 41.12             |
| ひょうし (表紙)          | cover/binding                 | 85.1              |
| ひょうじばん (表示板)       | sign/sign board               | 79.12             |
| ひらがな (平仮名)         | hiragana                      | 57. ex. title     |
| ひらく (開く)           | to open/undo                  | 45.1              |
| ビル                 | building                      | 24.12, 32. note 5 |
| ひるね (昼寝)           | nap                           | 30.6              |
| ひろい (広い)           | to be large/big/wide          | 52.5              |
| ひろびろ と する          | to be spacious/open/broad     | 62.4              |
| . . . びん (. . . 便) | (after numbers) flight/number | 27.3              |

## ふ

|                    |                                     |                  |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------|
| ファッション・モデル         | fashion model                       | 25.7             |
| ファン                | fan                                 | 94.10            |
| . . . ふう (. . . 風) | style/manner                        | 48.10            |
| ふうけい (風景)          | scenery/landscape                   | 85.9             |
| ふうとう (封筒)          | envelope                            | 61.4             |
| ふえる (増える)          | to increase                         | 45.7             |
| フォーク               | fork                                | 9.8              |
| ふかい (深い)           | to be deep                          | 62.4             |
| ふかみ (深み)           | depth                               | 96.11            |
| ふく (吹く)            | to blow                             | 47.8             |
| ふくげん (復元)          | restoration                         | 85.4             |
| ふくざわ ゆきち (福沢 諭吉)   | FUKUZAWA<br>Yukichi (personal name) | 88.9             |
| ふくしゅう (復習)         | review                              | 99.7             |
| ぶけ (武家)            | warrior                             | 36.7             |
| ふけいかい (父兄会)        | parents reunion                     | 94.5             |
| ふさい (夫妻)           | Mr. and Mrs./couple                 | 66.1             |
| ふしぎ (不思議)          | strange                             | 50.7             |
| ふじさん (富士山)         | Mt. FUJI                            | 67. title        |
| ふたつ (二つ)           | two (items)                         | 27.10, 70. par.1 |

|               |                  |  |
|---------------|------------------|--|
| ふたり (二人)      | .....two persons | <b>15.4, 70. par.1</b>                 |
| ふち (縁)        | .....            | edge <b>31.11</b>                      |
| ふつう (普通)      | .....usual       | <b>45.3, 77. par.1</b>                 |
| ふつか (二日)      | .....two days    | <b>45.5, 70. par.1</b>                 |
| ふとい (太い)      | .....            | to be thick <b>71.9</b>                |
| ふどうさんや (不動産屋) | .....            | real estate agency <b>34. title</b>    |
| ふとん (布団)      | .....            | futon <b>80.3</b>                      |
| ふね (船)        | .....            | ship/boat <b>55.9</b>                  |
| ふべん (不便)      | .....            | inconvenience/disadvantage <b>62.2</b> |
| ふもと           | .....            | foot/root <b>72.6</b>                  |
| ふゆ (冬)        | .....            | winter <b>45.7</b>                     |
| ブラジル          | .....            | <b>BRAZIL 69.3</b>                     |
| ブランコ          | .....            | swing <b>82.3</b>                      |
| フランス          | .....            | <b>FRANCE 13.1</b>                     |
| ふりそで (振り袖)    | .....            | long-sleeved kimono <b>71.9</b>        |
| ふる (降る)       | .....            | to fall (rain, snow...) <b>31.5</b>    |
| ふるい (古い)      | .....            | to be old <b>17.9</b>                  |
| フルート          | .....            | flute <b>92.9</b>                      |
| ふろ (風呂)       | .....            | bath/bathroom <b>62.1</b>              |
| フロア           | .....            | floor, storey <b>44.12</b>             |
| ふろば (風呂場)     | .....            | bathroom <b>66.10</b>                  |
| ふん/ぶん (分)     | .....            | minute <b>24.3</b>                     |
| ぶん (分)        | .....            | share/part <b>34.12</b>                |
| ふんいき (雰囲気)    | .....            | atmosphere/mood <b>85.9</b>            |
| ぶんか (文化)      | .....            | culture <b>82.1</b>                    |
| ぶんかい (分解)     | .....            | resolution/decomposition <b>59.12</b>  |
| ぶんがく (文学)     | .....            | literature <b>83. title</b>            |
| ぶんがくしゃ (文学者)  | .....            | man of letters <b>67.8</b>             |
| ぶんかじん (文化人)   | .....            | intellectual <b>88.8</b>               |

へ

|           |                    |   |
|-----------|--------------------|---|
| へ         | .....[destination] | <b>1.4, 7. par.5</b>                      |
| ペア        | .....              | pair <b>31.7</b>                          |
| へいあん (平安) | .....              | HEIAN reign period (794-1185) <b>83.4</b> |
| へいか (陛下)  | .....              | Her Majesty <b>68.5</b>                   |
| へいき (平気)  | .....              | calm/cool/indifferent <b>62.10</b>        |
| へいみん (平民) | .....              | a commoner <b>36.8</b>                    |
| へいわ (平和)  | .....              | peace <b>18.2</b>                         |
| へえ        | .....              | What/Well/Huh! <b>64.10</b>               |
| ページ       | .....              | page <b>25.10</b>                         |

|                    |                       |           |
|--------------------|-----------------------|-----------|
| べそ を かく            | to hang one's lip/sob | 72.6      |
| べっそう (別荘)          | cottage/villa         | 76.2      |
| ペット                | pet                   | 82. title |
| ベッド                | bed                   | 46.9      |
| べつ に (別に)          | separately/apart      | 83.7      |
| べつべつ (別々)          | discrete/separate     | 62.8      |
| ベル                 | bell                  | 74.1      |
| へや (部屋)            | room                  | 44.2      |
| へん (辺)             | surroundings          | 20.1      |
| へん (変)             | strange               | 58.1      |
| . . . へん (. . . 編) | (number +) times      | 67.4      |
| べんきょう (勉強)         | study/work            | 64.1      |
| へんじ (返事)           | answer/reply          | 61. title |
| べんとう (弁当)          | lunch                 | 93.1      |
| べんり (便利)           | convenient            | 24.4      |

## ほ

|                     |                                 |                 |
|---------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| . . . ほ/ぽ (. . . 歩) | (number +) step/pace            | 99.13           |
| ほう (方)              | direction/way                   | 32.9            |
| ほうえい (放映)           | broadcasting                    | 92.5            |
| ぼうけん (冒険)           | adventure                       | 43.4            |
| ほうこう (方向)           | direction/way                   | 67.6            |
| ぼうし (帽子)            | hat/cap                         | 54.5            |
| ほうせき (宝石)           | jewel/gem/jewelry               | 82.10           |
| ほうそう (放送)           | broadcasting                    | 92.4            |
| ほうふ (豊富)            | abundance/richness              | 92.4            |
| ほうめん (方面)           | direction/hand                  | 64.11           |
| ほうりゅうじ (法隆寺)        | ...HŌRYŪJI (name of monastery)  | 57.5            |
| ほえる (吠える)           | to bark                         | 39.11           |
| ホーム                 | platform                        | 79.6            |
| ホーム・ドラマ             | "home drama", television series | 10.8            |
| ほか (他)              | other                           | 41.9, 77. par.1 |
| ぼく (僕)              | me, I (for a male speaker)      | 20.13           |
| ほこうしゃ (歩行者)         | pedestrian                      | 82.2            |
| ほし (星)              | star                            | 43.8            |
| ほしい (欲しい)           | to be wanted                    | 34.6            |
| ポスト                 | mailbox                         | 61.2            |
| ぼち (墓地)             | graveyard                       | 67.8            |
| ほっかいどう (北海道)        | HOKKAIDŌ (place name)           | 97.6            |
| ボディ                 | body                            | 65.11           |

|              |  |                 |
|--------------|--|-----------------|
| ホテル          | hotel                                      | 44. title       |
| ．．．ほど        | so... that...                              | 67.3            |
| ほとんど         | almost                                     | 36.9            |
| ほぼ           | just about/almost                          | 83.4            |
| ポルトガル        | PORTUGAL                                   | 71.3            |
| ほん (本)       | book                                       | 4.6             |
| ．．．ほん (．．．本) | measure word for long<br>and round objects | 53.9, 63. par.1 |
| ぼんさい (盆栽)    | bonsai                                     | 66.6            |
| ほんとう (本当)    | true/real                                  | 19.12           |
| ほんねん (本年)    | this year                                  | 78.3            |
| ほんや (本屋)     | bookstore                                  | 18. title       |

## ま

|                     |   |                  |
|---------------------|---|------------------|
| マーじゃん               | mahjong                                   | 41.9             |
| ．．．まい (．．．枚)        | measure word for<br>flat objects          | 22.10, 63. par.1 |
| まいあさ (毎朝)           | every morning                             | 30.7             |
| まいご (迷子)            | lost child                                | 97.1             |
| まいしゅう (毎週)          | every week                                | 60.13            |
| まいど (毎度) ありがとうございます | Thank you very much!<br>(for salespeople) | 18.14            |
| まいとし (毎年)           | every year                                | 55.3             |
| まいにち (毎日)           | every day                                 | 37.3             |
| まいばん (毎晩)           | every night                               | 62.3             |
| まいる (参る)            | to go/come (high degree, I)               | 86.10            |
| まえ (前)              | before/front                              | 13.1, 15.3       |
| まがる (曲がる)           | to turn                                   | 20.8             |
| まくら (枕)             | pillow                                    | 75.4             |
| まくらの そうし (枕 草子)     | The Pillow book                           | 83.2             |
| まご (孫)              | grandchild                                | 60.1, 84. par.1  |
| まさか                 | no kidding!/really/indeed                 | 82.8             |
| まじめ                 | seriousness/earnest/soberness             | 64.10            |
| まず (先ず)             | firstly                                   | 6.4              |
| ますます (益々)           | more and more                             | 73.13            |
| また (又)              | again/also                                | 9.14             |
| まだ (+ negative)     | not yet                                   | 2.4              |
| また は                | or, again                                 | 50.3             |
| まちがえる (間違える)        | to mistake/stumble                        | 88.4             |
| まつ (待つ)             | to wait                                   | 13.1             |

|           |                       |                 |
|-----------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| まっすぐ      | straight/ahead        | 20.7            |
| まったく (全く) | completely/quite      | 48.5            |
| マッチ       | match                 | 75.11           |
| まで        | until                 | 6.4, 7. par.1   |
| まど (窓)    | window                | 60.8            |
| ままごと      | to play doll's house  | 89.10           |
| まもる (守る)  | to guard/keep         | 43.10           |
| まわり (回り)  | rotation/surroundings | 57.3            |
| まん (万)    | ten thousand          | 17.4, 63. par.1 |
| まんいん (満員) | full house/crowded    | 62.5            |
| まんが (漫画)  | comic/cartoon         | 83.2, 92.6      |
| まんかい (満開) | full bloom            | 89.1            |
| まんなか (真中) | middle/center         | 68.11           |

## み

|                  |                                  |                  |
|------------------|----------------------------------|------------------|
| み (身)            | human body/person                | 90.5             |
| みあたる (見当たる)      | to find                          | 75.11            |
| みえる (見える)        | to be visible                    | 8.10             |
| みおくる (見送る)       | to see off                       | 78.12            |
| みかん              | mandarin orange                  | 16.10            |
| みぎ (右)           | right                            | 17.1             |
| みじかい (短い)        | to be short/little               | 92. ex. 1.1      |
| みしま ゆきお (三島 由紀夫) | MISHIMA Yukio<br>(personal name) | 85.8             |
| みず (水)           | cold water                       | 31.11            |
| みずぎ (水着)         | swimsuit                         | 54.3             |
| みせ (店)           | store/shop                       | 6.10, 29. note 6 |
| みせる (見せる)        | to show                          | 17.7             |
| ... みたい          | seems, looks like                | 48.2             |
| みち (道)           | road/street/way                  | 20.7             |
| みっか (三日)         | three days                       | 20.12, 70. par.1 |
| みつかる             | to be found                      | 24.1             |
| みつこし (三越)        | MITSUKOSHI (proper noun)         | 31.2             |
| みつつ (三つ)         | three                            | 59.9, 70. par.1  |
| みどりいろ (緑色)       | green                            | 50.6             |
| みな/みんな           | all                              | 36.5             |
| みなと (港)          | port/harbor                      | 51.6             |
| みなと く (港区)       | MINATO-KU (place name)           | 51.6             |
| みなみ (南)          | south                            | 75.8             |
| みほん (見本)         | sample                           | 90. ex. 1.2      |



|              |                        |                |
|--------------|------------------------|----------------|
| みまい (見舞)     | visit                  | 53. ex. 1.2    |
| みみ (耳)       | ear                    | 39.7           |
| みやげ          | souvenir/gift          | 6.10           |
| みょうごにち (明後日) | the day after tomorrow | 53.5           |
| みょうじ (苗字)    | family name            | 36. title      |
| みる (見る)      | to see/look            | 2.1, 91. par.3 |
| みんかん (民間)    | private/citizen        | 92.4           |
| ミンク          | mink                   | 76.3           |
| みんしゆく (民宿)   | tourist home           | 75.13          |

## む

|                 |                                     |                        |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------|
| むかい (向かい)       | opposite                            | 24.10                  |
| むかう (向かう)       | to face                             | 94.4                   |
| むかえる (迎える)      | to meet/welcome                     | 27.4                   |
| むかし (昔)         | a long time ago                     | 36.7                   |
| むける (向ける)       | to turn/direct/aim                  | 75.7                   |
| むこう (向こう)       | on the other side/opposite          | 39. ex. 1.5            |
| むしあつい (蒸暑い)     | to be muggy/sultry                  | 60.10                  |
| むしゃむしゃ          | munching (sound)                    | 39.8                   |
| むずかしい           | to be difficult                     | 32.6                   |
| むすこ (息子)        | my son                              | 26.4, 84. par.1        |
| むすこさん (息子さん)    | your son                            | 23.1, 84. par. 1       |
| むすび (結び)        | riceball                            | 93.4                   |
| むすめ (娘)         | my daughter/girl                    | 76.10, 84. par.1, 86.8 |
| むなしい (空しい)      | to be vain                          | 48.3                   |
| むら (村)          | village                             | 30.10                  |
| むらさき しきぶ (紫 式部) | Murasaki Shikibu<br>(personal name) | 83.6                   |
| むり (無理)         | unreasonable/excessive              | 19.12                  |

## め

|                    |  |                 |
|--------------------|--|-----------------|
| . . . め (. . . 目)  | (number +) ...nd, th                   | 6.10            |
| め (目)              | eye                                    | 39.10           |
| . . . めい (. . . 名) | measure word for persons<br>(official) | 44.5, 63. par.1 |
| めいじ (明治)           | MEIJI reign period (1868-1912)         | 88.7            |
| めいぶつ (名物)          | specialty                              | 30.4            |
| めいろ (迷路)           | maze/labyrinth                         | 79.5            |
| メーカー               | manufacturer/maker                     | 65.10           |

|          |                               |      |
|----------|-------------------------------|------|
| めがね (眼鏡) | eyeglasses                    | 8.9  |
| めぐろ (目黒) | MEGURO ( <i>place name</i> )  | 6.4  |
| めずらしい    | to be rare                    | 41.6 |
| めんどくさい   | to be troublesome/complicated | 95.1 |

## も

|                   |  |                  |
|-------------------|--|------------------|
| も                 | also                                       | 6.10             |
| もう                | already                                    | 25.13            |
| もうしわけ (申し訳) ありません | Excuse me!                                 | 86.14            |
| (ごさいま せん)         |  |                  |
| もうす (申す) ...      | to say/be called ( <i>high degree</i> , I) | 15.1, 70. par.3  |
| もえる (燃える)         | to burn/flare                              | 85.7             |
| もくぞう (木造)         | wooden                                     | 85.7             |
| もくようび (木曜日)       | Thursday                                   | 39.1             |
| もし                | if/even if                                 | 76.2             |
| もしもし              | hello                                      | 27.1             |
| モスクワ              | MOSCOW                                     | 55.7             |
| モダン               | modern                                     | 66.10            |
| もちろん (勿論)         | of course/certainly                        | 67.2             |
| もつ (持つ)           | to hold/have                               | 4.1              |
| もっと               | more                                       | 19.11            |
| もっぱら              | mainly                                     | 47.9             |
| モデル               | model                                      | 65.7             |
| もと (元)            | basis/origin                               | 40.4             |
| もとめる (求める)        | to look for/seek/ask                       | 85.5             |
| もどる (戻る)          | to retrace one's steps                     | 32.13, 35. par.5 |
| もの (物)            | thing/object                               | 17.10            |
| ものがたり (物語)        | story/tale                                 | 43.6             |
| もらう               | to receive/get                             | 31.10, 91. par.3 |
| もり (森)            | forest/wood                                | 50.14            |
| もんだい (問題)         | question/problem                           | 46.4             |

## や

|            |  |           |
|------------|--|-----------|
| やきゅう (野球)  | baseball                               | 52.9      |
| やくしじ (薬師寺) | YAKUSHIJI ( <i>name of monastery</i> ) | 57.5      |
| やく (訳) する  | to translate                           | 95.1      |
| やくそく (約束)  | promise/appointment                    | 13. title |
| やくひん (薬品)  | medicine/drug                          | 81.8      |
| やける (焼ける)  | to burn                                | 30.1      |

|              |                    |                  |
|--------------|--------------------|------------------|
| やさい (野菜)     | vegetable          | 80.7             |
| やさしい         | to be gentle/kind  | 94.10            |
| やすい (安い)     | cheap/low          | 31.9             |
| やすみ (休み)     | rest/holiday       | 30. title        |
| やすむ (休む)     | to rest            | 46.13            |
| やちん (家賃)     | rent               | 24.11            |
| やっと          | at last            | 24.1             |
| やっとのおもいで     | barely/only just   | 79.10            |
| やはり/やっぱり     | as expected        | 67.9             |
| やぶれる (破れる)   | to tear/lose       | 88.3             |
| やま (山)       | mountain           | 36.11            |
| やまごや (山小屋)   | mountain hut/lodge | 72.11            |
| やまなかこ (山中湖)  | lake YAMANAKA      | 76.2             |
| やまのてせん (山手線) | YAMANOTE line      | 68.1             |
| やめる          | to stop/give up    | 5.11             |
| やりかた         | way/manner         | 58.10            |
| やる           | to do (informal)   | 17.13, 91. par.3 |

## ゆ

|               |                    |       |
|---------------|--------------------|-------|
| ゆ (湯)         | hot water          | 73.7  |
| ゆうがた (夕方)     | evening            | 33.10 |
| ゆうしょく (夕食)    | dinner/supper      | 73.3  |
| ゆうじん (友人)     | friend             | 69.8  |
| ゆうびん (郵便)     | mail/post          | 22.4  |
| ゆうびんきょく (郵便局) | post office        | 22.1  |
| ゆうべ (夕べ)      | evening/last night | 61.1  |
| ゆうめい (有名)     | famous             | 37.8  |
| ゆうやけ (夕焼け)    | evening glow       | 48.3  |
| ゆうりょう (有料)    | not for free       | 32.10 |
| ゆき (雪)        | snow               | 72.11 |
| ゆっくり/ゆっくりと    | slowly             | 39.10 |
| ゆでたまご (茹で卵)   | boiled egg         | 93.2  |
| ゆびわ (指輪)      | ring               | 76.3  |
| ゆぶね (湯槽)      | bathtub            | 62.4  |
| ゆめ (夢)        | dream              | 50.14 |

## よ

|       |              |      |
|-------|--------------|------|
| よ     | [engagement] | 2.5  |
| よ (世) | world        | 48.3 |

よう.....way/manner 48.5  
 . . . よう (. . . 用) ..... used for 82.8  
 ようこそ いらっしゃいました..... Welcome! 40.1  
 . . . よう (です) ..... it seems that... 81.3, 91. par.5  
 . . . よう (に する) ..... to do so that... 78.11, 91. par.5  
 . . . よう (に なる) .... it becomes possible to... 64.5, 91. par.5  
 ようじ (用事) ..... business/engagement 86.9  
 ようちえん (幼稚園) ..... kindergarten 24.6  
 ようふく (洋服) ..... clothes 4.6  
 ヨーロッパ..... Europe 73.12  
 よく..... well 8.10  
 よく..... often 10.5  
 よくじつ (翌日) ..... the next day 45.8  
 よこ (横) ..... side 31.8  
 よこはま (横浜) ..... YOKOHAMA (*place name*) 60.11  
 よさん (予算) ..... budget 32.13  
 よっぱらう (酔っ払う) ..... to get drunk/soak 48.11  
 よてい (予定) ..... plan/schedule 45.9  
 よなか (夜中) ..... night/midnight 11.5  
 よほう (予報) ..... forecast/prediction 93.3  
 よほど..... much, greatly 90  
 よむ (読む) ..... to read 64.5  
 よむ (詠む) ..... to write/compose 89.9  
 よめ (嫁) ..... bride 86.10  
 よやく (予約) ..... reservation 44.2  
 よゆう (余裕) ..... time/leeway 80.10  
 よよぎ (代々木) ..... YOYOGI (*place name*) 68.1  
 より..... more than (+ *adjective*) 19.11  
 よる (夜) ..... night/evening 11.4  
 よる..... to drop in/by 31.13, 55.11  
 よろしい..... to be good (*high degree, YOU*) 23.8  
 よろしく..... at one's own discretion 65.5, 92.15  
 よん/よ (四) ..... four 24.8, 46.6, 63. par.1

## ら

ライオン.....lion 39.11  
 らいげつ (来月) ..... next month 44.6  
 らいしゅう (来週) ..... next week 23.13  
 らいねん (来年) ..... next year 26.1

らく (楽) ..... comfortable/easy **90.2**  
らくだ ..... camel **39.10**  
ラジオ ..... radio **47.9**

## り

り (里) ..... a Japanese mile **99.12**  
りか (理科) ..... science **94.9**  
りかい (理解) ..... understanding/knowledge **92. ex. 1.3**  
りし (利子) ..... interest (financial) **45.7**  
りそう (理想) ..... ideal **69.5**  
りっこうほしや (立候補者) ..... candidate **58.8**  
りっぱ (立派) ..... excellent/magnificent **62.4**  
リビング ..... living room **34.5**  
リフト ..... lift **72.5**  
リムジン・バス ..... limousine bus **27.5**  
りゆうがくせい (留学生) ..... exchange student **78.7**  
リュック・サック ..... rucksack/backpack **93.5**  
りよう (利用) ..... use/application **92.14**  
りよう (両) ..... both **68.9**  
りようきん (料金) ..... price **22.4**  
りようしん (両親) ..... both parents, mother and father **39. title**  
りょうり (料理) ..... cooking/food **9. title, note 2**  
りょこう (旅行) ..... travel/journey **31.1**  
りんご ..... apple **3.9**

## る

るす (留守) ..... absence **18.8**

## れ

れいえん (霊園) ..... cemetery/graveyard **67.7**  
れいきん (礼金) ..... reward **34.12**  
れいぞうこ (冷蔵庫) ..... refrigerator **59.10**  
れいとう (冷凍) ..... freezing **48.12**  
れいぼう (冷房) ..... air conditioner **60.10**  
レヴェイヨン ..... Christmas, New Year's Eve **74.11**  
れきし (歴史) ..... history/past **57. title**  
レコード ..... record **47.9**  
レストラン ..... restaurant **46.14**  
れっしゃ (列車) ..... train **68.7**

レッスン.....lesson 64.4  
れんしゅう (練習) .....practice/exercise ex. 1. ex. title, 47.12  
れんしゅうじょう (練習場) .....practice field 52.2  
れんらく (連絡) .....connection/contact/communication 69.11

## ろ

ろく (六) .....six 30.7, 63. par.1  
ロケット.....rocket 43.7  
ロック.....rock music 64.14  
ロボット.....robot 40.10  
ロマンティック.....romantic 48.9

## わ

わ.....[softener] 27.8  
わあ.....Oh!/Wow! 54.7  
ワイシャツ.....shirt 80.7  
わかい (若い) .....to be young 83.1  
わかす (沸かす) .....to boil/heat 73.7  
わがはい (我輩) .....I/me (old usage) 88.13  
わかる.....to be understandable/known 1.3  
わかれる (別れる) .....to be separated 34.5  
わくせい (惑星) .....planet 43.8  
わけ.....reason/cause 36.6  
わざわざ.....on purpose/taking the trouble to 53.14, 61. note 5  
わしつ (和室) .....Japanese-style room 34.6  
わすれる (忘れる) .....to forget 8.9  
わたくし/わたし (私) .....me, I 9.4, 12.6  
わたくしども (私共) .....us, we (very formal) 40.2  
わたしたち (私達) .....us, we 39.2  
わたす (渡す) .....to ferry/hand 79.8  
わたる (渡る) .....to cross 36.12  
わに (鱷) .....crocodile 76.3  
わらう (笑う) .....to laugh/smile 89.13  
わるい (悪い) .....to be bad 19.10  
わるもの (悪者) .....bad guy 43.9

## を

を.....[object] 2.2, 7. par.5

## Appendix III

### Recapitulation of Revision Lessons

#### Lesson 7

1. Verb forms
2. The verb ある/あります
3. Japanese language and the subject
4. How to say “yes” and “no”
5. The particles: を、が、に、へ、で、から、まで
6. A few notes on writing

#### Lesson 14

1. Writing complex syllables
2. The two commas and the period
3. The particles に and で
4. そう です

#### Lesson 21

1. Chinese characters (kanji)
2. Adjectives: several forms
3. The particles は and より
4. Verbs: three degrees: middle, high, low

#### Lesson 28

1. From a country: how to say inhabitants, the word indicating the language, adjective for nationality
2. Interrogative words
3. Constructions for all ways to specify a noun
4. Verbs: use of middle and low degree

#### Lesson 35

1. Particles: other uses of に and は
2. Interrogative words
3. Adjective forms
4. Verbs: middle degree and low degree forms
5. Notes on certain verbs: ある/いる—帰る/戻る
6. Problems of transcription

## Lesson 42

1. Problems of transcription
2. Kanji
3. The word こと: construction: …こと + particle + verb
4. Verbs: different forms of the verb
5. Notes on certain verbs: 聞く、できる

## Lesson 49

1. Verbs: forms: root + suffix. Middle degree, low degree.  
Verbs with one root, verbs with many roots
2. Verbs: high degree

## Lesson 56

1. Verbs: forms て and た for verbs with one root and for verbs with many roots

## Lesson 63

1. Digits and numbers: the system of Chinese origin
2. Writing: use of syllabaries and kanji
3. About kanji: 月

## Lesson 70

1. Digits and numbers: the system of Japanese origin
2. Forms of です
3. Verbs: high degree

## Lesson 77

1. The other kind of adjectives: invariable adjectives
2. Verbs: irregular forms of the verbs する and くる
3. Verbs: negative form (in ない) of verbs where the final syllable ends in U
4. Verbs: the expression …なければ ならない

## Lesson 84

1. Terms used to indicate family members
2. Derivative verbs: “to be possible…” and passive
3. Verbs: question forms

## Lesson 91

1. Verbs: special forms for high degree
2. Verbs: form in て + auxiliaries みる、おく、しまう、くれる、もらう、やる



3. The particle の
4. The word よう and its uses

### Lesson 99

1. The words preceded by お [politeness] or [familiarity]
2. Adverbs
3. Verbs: verb pairs: transitive/intransitive
4. Verbs: high degree
5. The system of demonstrative words, derived from こ、そ and あ



## Appendix IV

### Bibliography

#### General

*Japan: Profile of a Nation*. Revised edition. Tokyo: Kodansha International, 1999.

*The Japan Book*. Tokyo: Kodansha International, 2002.

#### Art

Penelope MASON. *History of Japanese Art*. 2nd ed. Upper Saddle River: Prentice Hall, 2004.

*Japanese Modern Art: Painting from 1910 to 1970*. New York: Edition Stemmler and the Japan Foundation, 2000.

#### Economics

Michael E. PORTER. *Can Japan Compete?*. New York: Basic Books, 2000.

Craig FREEMAN. *Economic Reform in Japan: Can the Japanese Change?*. Cheltenham, UK; Northampton, MA: Edward Elgar Publishing, 2001.

Shotaro ISHINOMORI. *Japan, Inc.: An Introduction to Japanese Economics*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1988.

Richard KATZ. *Japan, the System That Soured: The Rise and Fall of the Japanese Economic Miracle*. New York: M. E. Sharpe, 1998.

Penelope FRANCK. *Japanese Economic Development: Theory and Practice*. London: Brunner-Routledge, 1999.

Aiko IKEO. *Japanese Economics and Economists Since 1945*. London: Brunner-Routledge, 2000.

Robert M. MARCH. *Working for A Japanese Company: Insights into the Multicultural Workplace*. Tokyo: Kodansha International, 1996.

#### Film

Donald RICHIE. *A Hundred Years of Japanese Film: A Concise History, with a Selective Guide to DVDs and Videos*. Tokyo: Kodansha International, 2005.

Isolde STANDISH. *A New History of Japanese Cinema: A Century of Narrative Film*. New York: Continuum International Publishing Group, 2005.

Joseph L. ANDERSON, Donald Richie. *The Japanese Film: Art and Industry*. expanded edition. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1983.

## Geography

Peter J. WOOLLEY. *Geography And Japan's Strategic Choices: From Seclusion To Internationalization*. Washington, DC: Potomac Books, 2005.

## History

R. H. P. MASON, J. G. CAIGER. *A History of Japan*. Rutland: Tuttle, 1997.

George SANSOM. *A History of Japan to 1334*. Stanford: Stanford University Press: 1958.

George SANSOM. *A History of Japan, 1334 – 1615*. Stanford: Stanford University Press, 1991.

George SANSOM. *A History of Japan, 1615 – 1857*. Stanford: Stanford University Press, 1963.

Kenneth G HENSHALL. *A History of Japan: From Stone Age to Superpower*. New York: Palgrave Macmillan, 2001.

Wm. Theodore de BARY, Donald KEENE, George TANABE, and Paul VARLEY. *Sources of Japanese Tradition*. Vol. 1. New York: Columbia University Press, 2002.

Wm. Theodore de BARY, Carol GLUCK, Donald KEENE. *Sources of Japanese Tradition: 1600 to 2000*. Vol 2. New York: Columbia University Press, 2005.

Andrew GORDON. *The Modern History of Japan: From Tokugawa Times to the Present*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2003.

## Language

Seiichi MAKINO, SEIICHI Nakada, MIEKO Ohso. *Kodansha's Basic English-Japanese Dictionary*. Edited by Wesley M. JACOBSEN. Tokyo: Kodansha International, 2003.

*Kodansha's Effective Japanese Usage Dictionary: A Concise Explanation of Frequently Confused Words and Phrases*. Tokyo:

Kodansha International, 2001.

*Kodansha's Elementary Kanji Dictionary*. Tokyo: Kodansha International, 2001.

Yoshikatsu NAKAMURA, Masatoshi YOSHIDA. *Kodansha's Furigana English-Japanese Dictionary*. Tokyo: Kodansha International, 2001.

## **Law**

Hiroshi ODA. *Japanese Law*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2001.

J. Mark RAMSEYER and Minoru NAKAZATO. *Japanese Law: An Economic Approach*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 2000.

## **Literature**

### **Histories and Studies**

Shuichi KATO. – *A History of Japanese Literature: The First Thousand Years* / translated by David CHIBBETT. Tokyo: Kodansha International, 2003.

– *History of Japanese Literature: The Modern Years*.

Tokyo: Kodansha International, 1991.

– *History of Japanese Literature: The Years of Isolation*. Tokyo: Kodansha International, 1991.

### **Translations**

Donald KEENE. *Modern Japanese Literature: An Anthology*. New York: Grove Press, 1956.

Leith MORTON. *An Anthology of Contemporary Japanese Poetry*. New York; London: Garland, 1993.

Donald KEENE. *Anthology of Japanese Literature from the Earliest Era to the Mid-Nineteenth Century*. New York: Grove Press, 1960.

Edith SHIFFERT. *Anthology of Modern Japanese Poetry*. Rutland: Tuttle, 1985.

Howard HIBBETT. *Contemporary Japanese Literature: An Anthology Of Fiction, Film, And Other Writing Since 1945*. Boston: Cheng & Tsui, 2005.

Haruo SHIRANE. *Early Modern Japanese Literature: An Anthology, 1600-1900*. New York: Columbia University Press, 2002.

Ivan MORRIS. *Modern Japanese Stories: An Anthology*. Rutland: Tuttle, 2005.

Murasaki Shikibu. *The Tale of Genji* / translated by Royall Tyler. New York: Penguin, 2002.

Steven D. CARTER. *Traditional Japanese Poetry: An Anthology*. Stanford: Stanford University Press, 1993.

## Religion

*A History of Japanese Religion* / edited by Kazuo KASAHARA. Tokyo: Kosei Publishing Company, 2002.

## Social Sciences

R. P. DORE. *City Life In Japan: The Sociology Of East Asia*. London: Routledge, 2003.

Jennifer ROBERTSON. *Companion to the Anthropology of Japan*. Malden; Oxford: Blackwell Publishers, 2005.

John CLAMMER. *Contemporary Urban Japan: A Sociology of Consumption*. Malden; Oxford: Blackwell Publishers, 1997.

Gordon MATHEWS, Bruce WHITE. *Japan's Changing Generations: Are Young People Creating a New Society?*. London: Routledge/ Curzon, 2003.

## Travel Guides

June KINOSHITA and Nicholas PALEVSKY. *Gateway to Japan*. Tokyo: Kodansha International, 1998.

Also guidebooks on Japan and various Japanese cities by Lonely Planet and Rough Guide.



A series of horizontal dotted lines for writing practice, starting from the pen nib and extending across the page.



A series of horizontal dotted lines for writing practice, starting from the pen nib icon and extending across the page.



*Aubin Imprimeur*

LIGUGÉ, POITIERS

Achévé d'imprimer en février 2007  
N° d'édition 2533 / N° d'impression P 70704  
Dépôt légal, février 2007  
Imprimé en France

Reliure : BRUN à Malesherbes